

# Understanding Quranic Arabic & Beyond



**A**chieve **N**oble **C**haracter

**Understanding Quranic Arabic & Beyond**

**ShaykhPod Books**

**Published by ShaykhPod Books, 2024**

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

Understanding Quranic Arabic & Beyond

**First edition. September 30, 2024.**

Copyright © 2024 ShaykhPod Books.

Written by ShaykhPod Books.

# Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Acknowledgements

Compiler's Notes

Introduction

Nahw – Syntax

Different Types of Words

Ism (Noun) – اِسْمٌ

Status – اِلْعَرَابُ

Rafa (the Doer) – رَفْعٌ

Nasab (the Detail) – نَصْبٌ

Jar – جَرٌّ

Finding the Status of the Ism

Status: Heavy vs Light

Status: Flexibility

Fully Flexible - مُنْصَرَفٌ/مُعَرَّبٌ

Non-Flexible - مَبْنِيٌّ

Partly Flexible - مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ

Some Groups of Partly Flexible Words

Non-Arab Names

Feminine Names and Unique Masculine Names

Proper Names of Places

Pronouns

Independent Pronouns - الضَّمَايِرُ الْمُنْفَصِلَةُ

Attached Pronouns - الضَّمَايِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ

## Determining Nasab or Jar Status

Jaar and Majroor Fragment - جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ

Harf Nasab and its Ism Fragment - حَرْفُ النَّصَبِ وَإِسْمُهَا

Eedhafa Fragment - الإِضَافَةُ

Special Mudhafs - Zharf - ظَرْفٌ

Five Special Isms that appear as Mudhafs

## Gender – الْجِنْسُ

### 6 Categories of Feminine Isms

Biologically Feminine

Isms that End in ة or اء or ى

Body Parts in Pairs

Specific Names of Places

Non-Humans Plurals

Feminine Set by Arabs

## Number – الْعَدَدُ

### 4 Plural Types

Sound Masculine Plural

Sound Feminine Plural

Broken Plural

Plural by Meaning

### Plurals in Arabic Grammar

## Type – الْقَسَمُ

Common

Proper

### 7 Categories of Proper Isms

## Fragments

Mawsoof Siffa - الْمَوْصُوفُ وَالصِّفَةُ

Pointers - اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ وَالْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ

Referee (Independent) Pronoun

## Complex Pointer Fragment

### Pointing to Eedhafa

Connector Letters - حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ

Noun Sentences - الْجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ

Grammatical Labelling - إِعْرَابُ الْجُمْلَةِ الْاسْمِيَّةِ

### Sentence Level Labels

Noun Sentence - الْجُمْلَةُ الْاسْمِيَّةُ

### Abnormal Noun Sentence Structure

2 Abnormal Patterns

2 More Abnormal Noun Sentence Structures/Order

### Complex Sentences

Fi'l (Verb) - فِعْلٌ

### 3 Parts of Verb Sentence

The Doer – الْفَاعِلُ

The Detail – الْمَفْعُولُ

Mafool Beehee - الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ

Mafool Feehee - الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ

Mafool LaHoo - الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ

Mafool Haal - الْمَفْعُولُ الْحَالُ

Mafool Mutlak - الْمَفْعُولُ الْمُطْلَقُ

Verb Sentence: Past Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي

Verb Sentence: Present/Future Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ

Light Version مَنصُوبٌ Chart

Lightest Version مَجْزُومٌ Chart

Verb Sentence: Imperative – Command - فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ Prohibition - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ

Forbidding - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ

Negation vs Forbidding

Direct and Indirect Forbidding

Commanding - فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ

نُونُ التَّوَكِيدِ - Nun of Emphasis

الفِعْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ - Passive Fi'l

2 Parts of Passive Fi'l

Past Passive Fi'l

Present Passive Fi'l

نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ - Naeedul Far'il

Transitivity

الفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ (Intransitive) - Fi'l Lazim

الفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي (Transitive) - Fi'l Mootaadee

فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ - Incomplete Verbs

Complex Sentence Structure

Negating كَانَ Sentences

Ism vs Fi'l

Question Words

Negation

Negating Verb Sentences

Past Tense Negation

Present Tense Negation

Future Tense Negation

Negating Noun Sentences

Absolute Categorical Negation

Negating Tools for Noun and Verb Sentences

The Compound Ism

Miscellaneous Words

الاسْمُ الْمَوْصُولُ وَصِلَتُهُ - Ism Mowsool

الْجُمْلَةُ الشَّرْطِيَّةُ - Conditional Statement

أَدَوَاتُ الشَّرْطِ الْجَازِمَةِ - Tools that change Grammar

أَدَوَاتٌ غَيْرُ جَازِمَةٍ - Tools that do not change Grammar

الْأَمْرُ وَجَوَابُ الْأَمْرِ - Command and Response of Command

فاء السببية - فاء Sababiya

Condition/State - Haal – الحال

Haal as an Ism

Verb Sentence as a Haal

Noun Sentence as a Haal

The Clarifier – Tamyeez – التَّمْيِيزُ

Substitute - Badl – البدل

Sarf – Morphology

Understanding Sarf – صَرْفٌ

Small Families – الْمُجَرَّدُ

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 5 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 6 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Determining the Sub Family

Extra Family Parts in Small Sub Families

Big Families - الْمَزِيدُ فِيهِ

Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Family 9 - اِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Irregular Verbs



## Irregular Verbs - Mahmuzun مَهْمُوزٌ

### In Big Families

Family 3 - فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلٌ يُفْعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

### Small Families

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is a Hamza

2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is a Hamza

## Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Mithalun مِثَالٌ

### Small Families

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is و

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is ي

### Big Families

Family 4 - أَفْعَلٌ يُفْعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

## Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Ajwafun أَجَوَفٌ

### Big Families

Families - 4 أَفْعَلٌ يُفْعِلُ and 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Families - 7 اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ and 8 اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

### Small Families

#### General Rules

#### Family Specific Rules

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

#### Other Changes in Sub Families

#### Past Tense

Sub Family 1 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Present Tense

Sub Family 1 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Ism Tafdeel (Comparative/Superlative)

Ism Siffa (Adjectives for Permanent Qualities)

Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Naqisun نَاقِصٌ

Big Families

General Rules

Family Specific Rules

Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Other Changes in Big Families

Past Tense

Family 3 – Past Tense Chart - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Present Tense

Family 3 – Present Tense Chart - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Families – 5 تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ and 6 تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Passive Past Tense

Family 3 – Passive Past Tense Chart - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Passive Present Tense

## Family 3 – Passive Present Tense Chart - فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

### Commanding and Forbidding Forms

## Family 3 – Commanding and Forbidding Chart - فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

### Ism Far'il

## Masculine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

## Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

### Ism Mafool

## Masculine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

## Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

### Zharf

## Zharf Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

### Masdar

## Masdar Chart for Family 5 – فَعْلٌ يَنْفَعِلُ

### Small Families

#### Past Tense/Present Tense

## Sub Family 1 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

## Sub Family 2 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

## Sub Family 3 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

## Sub Family 4 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

### Passives

### Ism Far'il

### Ism Mafool

### Zharf

### Ism Alatun

## Sub Family 1 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

## Sub Family 2 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

## Sub Family 3 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

## Sub Family 4 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

## Sub Family 5 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 6 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Other changes in Small Families

Sub Family 1 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Irregular Verbs - Matalun مُعْتَلٌ - Lafeefun لَفِيفٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Sub Family 2 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Lafeefun Makrunun لَفِيفٌ مَكْرُونٌ

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Sub Family 2 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Irregular Verbs - Moodaarefun مُضَاعَفٌ

Big Families

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يِفْتَعِلُ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Other Changes in all Families

Family 4 – Past Tense Chart - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 4 – Present Tense Chart - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Small Families

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Other Changes in all Families

Sub Family 1 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 1 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Making Moodaarefun Light and Lightest

Light and Lightest Present Tense Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Commanding and Forbidding Versions

Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Four Letter Roots - الْفِعْلُ الرَّبَاعِيُّ

Small Families with 4 Root Letters

Big Families with 4 Root Letters

Using a Dictionary

Analysis of Some Surahs

Surah 114 An Nas

Surah 113 Al Falaq

Surah 112 Al Ikhlas

Surah 111 Al Masad

Surah 110 An Nasr

Vocabulary List

Nouns

General Isms

Ism Siffa – Descriptions

Ism Tafdeel – Comparatives

Ism Charts

Masculine Chart

Feminine Chart

Independent and Attached Pronoun Chart

Common Jaars (Harf of Jars)

Harf of Nasab Table

Special Mudhaf (Zharf) Chart – 1

Special Mudhaf Chart – 2

Five Special Isms that appear as Mudhafs

Body Parts in Pairs

Feminine Set by Arabs

Some Broken Plurals

Plural by Meaning Examples

Pointer Table for Close/Near

Pointer Table for Far

Chart for Dual Pointers

Light Version Chart

Lightest Version Chart

Some Harfs of Ataf

Some Question Words

Ism Mowsool Chart

Expressing Wish/Desire Words

Numbers in the Quran

Ordinal Numbers in the Quran

Fractions in the Quran

## Verbs

Family Parts

Small Families – Regular Verbs

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Sub Family 5 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Sub Family 6 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Small Families – Irregular Verbs

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

### Big Families – Regular Verbs

Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يِفْتَعِلُ

Family 9 - اِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

### Big Families – Irregular Verbs

Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلٌ يَفْعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ



#### Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

#### Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

#### Family 9 - اِفْعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

#### Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

#### Verbs and Prepositions

#### Incomplete Verbs which make Noun Sentences

#### Some Fi'l Shuruee

#### Some Fi'ls that use a Tamyeez

Conclusion

Over 400 Free eBooks on Good Character

Other ShaykhPod Media

## **Acknowledgements**

All praises are for Allah, the Exalted, Lord of the worlds, who has given us the inspiration, opportunity and strength to complete this volume. Blessings and peace be upon the Holy Prophet Muhammad whose path has been chosen by Allah, the Exalted, for the salvation of mankind.

We would like to express our deepest appreciation to the entire ShaykhPod family, especially our little star, Yusuf, whose continued support and advice has inspired the development of ShaykhPod Books. And a special thanks to our brother, Hasan, whose dedicated support has elevated ShaykhPod to new and exciting heights which seemed impossible at one stage.

We pray that Allah, the Exalted, completes His favour on us and accepts each letter of this book in His august court and allows it to testify on our behalf on the Last Day.

All praise to Allah, the Exalted, Lord of the worlds and endless blessings and peace be upon the Holy Prophet Muhammad, on his blessed Household and Companions, may Allah be pleased with them all.

## **Compiler's Notes**

We have tried diligently to do justice in this volume however if there are any short falls found then the compiler is personally and solely responsible for them.

We accept the possibility of faults and shortcomings in an effort to complete such a difficult task. We might have unconsciously stumbled and committed errors for which we ask for indulgence and forgiveness of our readers and the drawing of our attention thereto will be appreciated. We earnestly invite constructive suggestions which can be made to [ShaykhPod.Books@gmail.com](mailto:ShaykhPod.Books@gmail.com).

## **Introduction**

The aim of this book and curriculum is twofold:

1. Learning the foundations of Arabic grammar so that one can easily recite the Holy Quran and read the Hadiths of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, in Arabic and with understanding, with the hope this leads to acting on these two sources of guidance.
2. Taking a first strong step in understanding Arabic grammar so that one can study Arabic texts, such as interpretations of the Holy Quran and the Hadiths of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him.

Therefore, this curriculum has been structured to achieve these two aims. Anything beyond the scope of these two aims has been omitted and should be pursued by those interested, after completing this curriculum.

A Video series has been created which goes through this curriculum in detail and can be viewed with the following link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

We highly recommend using the Table of Contents Sidebar in order to switch between the relevant chapters throughout the book and the Vocabulary List chapter at the end.

## **Nahw – Syntax**

“The Arrangement of words and phrases to create a well-formed sentence”

## Different Types of Words

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

There are 3 word types in Arabic:

1. Ism (Noun) - اِسْمٌ
2. Fi'l (Verb) - فِعْلٌ
3. Harf (Particle) - حَرْفٌ

Ism (Noun) - اِسْمٌ

Noun – including idea, place, thing, adverb and adjective

Can be:

1. Common e.g. Garden
2. Specific - Yusuf (name of a person)

Idea – intangible things e.g. information, knowledge, education

Adverb – describes a verb e.g. quickly, badly,



Adjective – describes a noun e.g. cold, tall, loud, angry

### Fi'l (Verb) - فَعْلٌ

A doing Verb – Past, Present or Future tense used (Present and Future tense combined in Arabic)

### Harf (Particle) - حَرْفٌ

A word which is completed when an Ism or a Fi'l comes after it.

e.g. if, until, unless, from

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## إِسْمٌ - Ism (Noun)

Ism has 4 properties

1. Status - الإِعْرَابُ

2. Number - العَدَدُ

3. Gender - الْجِنْسُ

4. Type - الْقِسْمُ

## الإِعْرَابُ - Status

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

The Status is connected to the role the Ism is playing in the sentence

Ism - has 3 Statuses

1. Rafa (the Doer) – رَفْعٌ
2. Nasab (the Detail) – نَصَبٌ
3. Jar – جَرٌّ

Rafa (the Doer) – رَفْعٌ

It is the Default Status of Ism – must have a reason to be Nasab or Jar Status otherwise it is Rafa

If an Ism is in Rafa status it is called Marfooun - مَرْفُوعٌ

Rafa refers to the one who does the action – the Doer

### Examples

I bought a house – the Doer is “I”

She carried a bucket – the Doer is “She”

Yusuf went to school – the Doer is “Yusuf”

### Nasab (the Detail) – نَصَبٌ

Gives information/details about the Action

If an Ism is in Nasab status it is called Mansoobun - مَنصُوبٌ

### Example

Yusuf      went      to school      yesterday      angrily

(Doer) (Action)      (Detail)      (Detail)      (Detail)

### Jar – جَرٌّ

If an Ism is in Jar status it is called Majroorun - مَجْرُورٌ

This Status is used after the word “of” in the English translation

Example:

Owner of the house

“the house” is the word after “of” – then “the house” would be in Jar status

Sometimes rearranging the sentence to observe the “of” in the sentence is required

Example

My house

“My house” is arranged to – “house “of” mine” – the word “mine” is therefore after “of” and will be in Jar status

When possession observed within a sentence e.g. my, our, his, her, etc, then it can be rearranged to show the “of”

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Finding the Status of the Ism

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Two Markers to indicate Status of Ism:

1. Ending Sounds
2. Ending Combinations

Both markers change depending on:

1. Gender – Male or Female
2. Number – Single, Dual or Plural

Unlike English, Arabic has separate words for Dual and Plural

Example charts below is using مُؤْمِنٌ (a believer) as a starting point.

Anything after the last letter - ن – is part of the status marker - whether it is a Harakat or extra letters

### Masculine Chart

| Plural      | Dual         | Singular | Status         |
|-------------|--------------|----------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنُونَ | مُؤْمِنَانِ  | مُؤْمِنٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ | مُؤْمِنَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنٌ | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ | مُؤْمِنَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

NOTE: The Dual and Plural for Masculine & Feminine Ism Chart is the same for Nasab and Jar Status (Blue highlight) – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on.

### Feminine Chart

| Plural      | Dual           | Singular   | Status         |
|-------------|----------------|------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَاتُ | مُؤْمِنَتَانِ  | مُؤْمِنَةٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ | مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنَةٌ | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ | مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنَةٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

NOTE: The Dual and Plural for Masculine & Feminine Ism Chart is the same for Nasab and Jar Status (Blue highlight) – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on

### Deeper Look

#### Singular Masculine

| Singular | Status         |
|----------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنٍ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Status Marker is on the last letter - ن – this is called “Ending Sounds”  
(Blue highlight)

#### Singular Feminine

| Singular   | Status         |
|------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنَةٍ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنَةٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |



Singular Ism becomes Feminine by adding ة at end of the Masculine version (Purple highlight)

The letter before the addition of ة - the ن - gets a Fatah on it (Blue highlight)

Status marker is on the last letter - the ة - this is called “Ending Sounds” (Red highlight)

### Dual Masculine

The base is مُؤْمِنٌ - everything after the base is the Status marker

The base is still present in the below table – only the last letter in the base - ن - has been given a Fatah (Blue highlight)

| Dual         | Status         |
|--------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَانِ  | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنَيْنِ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنَيْنِ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Status marker – is made up of more than one letter – so it is called “Ending Combination” (Purple highlight)

Rafa – اِنِ

Nasab – اِنِ

Jar – اِنِ

NOTE: The Dual is the same for Nasab and Jar Status – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on

### Dual Feminine

The base is مُؤْمِنَةٌ everything after the base is the Status marker

The base is present in the below table – only the last letter in the base - ت - has been given a Fatah (Blue highlight)

ة has become a ت also

| Dual           | Status         |
|----------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَتَانِ  | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Status marker – is made up of more than one letter – so it is called “Ending Combination” (Purple highlight)

Rafa – اِنِ

Nasab – يُنِ

Jar – يُنِ

NOTE: The Dual is the same for Nasab and Jar Status – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on

### Plural Masculine

The base is مُؤْمِنٌ everything after the base is the Status marker

The base is still present in the below table – only the Harakat on the last letter of the base - ن - changes (Blue highlight)

| Plural      | Status         |
|-------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنُونَ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Status marker – is made up of more than one letter – so it is called “Ending Combination” (Purple highlight)

Rafa – وَنَ

Nasab – يُنَ

Jar – يَنْ

NOTE: The Plural is the same for Nasab and Jar Status – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on

### Plural Feminine

The base is مُؤْمِنَةٌ everything after the base is the status marker

The ن in the base has Fatah on it in all 3 statuses (Blue highlight)

ة has become a ت also

| Plural      | Status        |
|-------------|---------------|
| مُؤْمِنَاتُ | رَفْعُ - Rafa |

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Status marker – is made up of more than one letter – so it is called “Ending Combination” (Purple highlight)

Rafa – اُتْ

Nasab – اِتْ

Jar – اِتْ

NOTE: The Plural is the same for Nasab and Jar Status – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on – Quick Tip - when determining status – look for Ending Combinations before looking for Ending Sounds

### Questions

Decide if the following Isms are رَفْعٌ (Rafa) , نَصَبٌ (Nasab) and/or جَرٌّ (Jar) status

NOTE: in some cases نَصَبٌ and جَرٌّ look the same

And decide if the Ism is Masculine or Feminine

And decide if the Ism is Singular, Dual or Plural

Key

R: Rafa - N: Nasab - J:Jar

M: Masculine - F: Feminine

S: Singular - D: Dual - P:Plural

| Ism            | R/N/J | M/F | S/D/P |
|----------------|-------|-----|-------|
| مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ |       |     |       |
| مُؤْمِنَانِ    |       |     |       |
| مُؤْمِنَةٍ     |       |     |       |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ    |       |     |       |
| مُؤْمِنَاتُ    |       |     |       |
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ     |       |     |       |
| مُؤْمِنُونَ    |       |     |       |
| مُؤْمِنَاتِ    |       |     |       |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ    |       |     |       |
| مُؤْمِنٍ       |       |     |       |

|               |  |  |  |
|---------------|--|--|--|
| مُؤْمِنَتَانِ |  |  |  |
| مُؤْمِنٌ      |  |  |  |
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ    |  |  |  |
| مُؤْمِنٍ      |  |  |  |

Answers:

| Is m           | R/N/J  | M/F | S/D/P |
|----------------|--------|-----|-------|
| مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | N or J | F   | D     |
| مُؤْمِنَانِ    | R      | M   | D     |
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ     | J      | F   | S     |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ    | N or J | M   | P     |
| مُؤْمِنَاتٌ    | R      | F   | P     |
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ     | R      | F   | S     |
| مُؤْمِنُونَ    | R      | M   | P     |
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ    | N or J | F   | P     |

|               |        |   |   |
|---------------|--------|---|---|
| مُؤْمِنِينَ   | N or J | M | P |
| مُؤْمِنٍ      | J      | M | S |
| مُؤْمِنَتَانِ | R      | F | D |
| مُؤْمِنٌ      | R      | M | S |
| مُؤْمِنَةً    | N      | F | S |
| مُؤْمِنًا     | N      | M | S |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.



## Status: Heavy vs Light

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Whether Ism is Heavy or Light is connected to its Status (not a property of Status – only a sub topic)

Heavy is the Default for an Ism

Ism only becomes Light for specific reasons – which will be discussed later

Heavy words make a “n” sound at the end – e.g. ظَالِمٌ (a wrongdoer) –  
Zaleemun – end sound is “n”

To make Ism Light – remove the “n” sound at the end

### 2 ways to make Ism Light

1. If the Ism ends with double Harakat at end (which is heavy state -  
Purple highlight) – then remove one Harakat only.

| Heavy       | Light       |
|-------------|-------------|
| مُؤْمِنَاتٌ | مُؤْمِنَاتُ |

|             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ | مُؤْمِنَاتِ |
| مُؤْمِنٌ    | مُؤْمِنُ    |
| مُؤْمِنِ    | مُؤْمِنِ    |
| مُؤْمِنَةً  | مُؤْمِنَةً  |

2. In Isms with Ending Combinations (not Ending Sounds) that have

a ن at the end – remove the ن to make it Light.

Ending Combination with a ن has been highlighted purple

| Heavy          | Light         |
|----------------|---------------|
| مُؤْمِنَتَانِ  | مُؤْمِنَتَا   |
| مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنَتَيَّ |
| مُؤْمِنَانِ    | مُؤْمِنَا     |
| مُؤْمِنَيْنِ   | مُؤْمِنَيَّ   |
| مُؤْمِنُونَ    | مُؤْمِنُو     |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ    | مُؤْمِنِيَّ   |

## ال - The

When ال is added to an Ism – it is no longer called Heavy or Light

Tanween (Double Harakat) and ال never come together

### Example

المُؤْمِنُ - The believer - is wrong

المُؤْمِنُ – The believer – is correct

When ال is added only single Harakat remains (Yellow highlight)

In Ending Combinations with a ن – it stays on even when ال is added to it

### Example

المُؤْمِنُونَ – The believer – is correct – the ن at end stays on

## Questions

Decide whether the following Isms are Light, Heavy or Neither (because of ال)

Key:

L: Light – H: Heavy – N: Neither (because of ال)

| Isim                        | L/H/N |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| يُقِيمُونَ (they establish) |       |
| ضَيْرٌ (harm)               |       |
| الضَّلَالَةُ (misguidance)  |       |
| إِكْرَاهٌ (compulsion)      |       |
| سَوَاءٌ (equal)             |       |
| عَذَابٌ (punishment)        |       |
| مَسَاجِدَ (Mosques)         |       |

Answers

| Isim | L/H/N |
|------|-------|
|------|-------|

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| يُقِيمُونَ (they establish) | H |
| ضَيْرٌ (harm)               | L |
| الضَّلَالَةُ (misguidance)  | N |
| إِكْرَاهٌ (compulsion)      | L |
| سَوَاءٌ (equal)             | H |
| عَذَابٌ (punishment)        | H |
| مَسَاجِدَ (Mosques)         | L |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Status: Flexibility

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Flexibility of an Ism is connected to its Status (not a property of Status – only a sub topic)

The Flexibility which will be discussed is connected to Ending Sounds (not Ending Combinations)

### Masculine Chart

| Singular  | Status         |
|-----------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنٌ  | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنًا | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنٍ  | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### Feminine Chart

| Singular | Status |
|----------|--------|
|----------|--------|

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### 3 Types of Flexibility

1. Fully Flexible - مُنْصَرِفٌ / مُعْرَبٌ
2. Non-Flexible - مَبْنِيٌّ
3. Partly Flexible - مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ

### Fully Flexible - مُنْصَرِفٌ / مُعْرَبٌ

Default State is Fully flexible

Fully flexible – Single Ism has 3 different endings (appearances) for 3 different Statuses – see table below

### Example

مُؤْمِنٌ – A Fully flexible Ism

| Singular | Status         |
|----------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنٍ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Non-Flexible - مَبْنِيٌّ

They do not show their Status in all 3 appearances i.e. in all 3 statuses they look the same

Words ending in Alif Maksura ى or a Alif ا are Non-flexible

Examples

مَتَّى – عَيْسَى

In all 3 statuses it appears the same

| Ism     | Status         |
|---------|----------------|
| عَيْسَى | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| عَيْسَى | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |



|         |             |
|---------|-------------|
| عَيْسَى | جَرُّ - Jar |
|---------|-------------|

| Ism   | Status         |
|-------|----------------|
| مَتَى | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مَتَى | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| مَتَى | جَرُّ - Jar    |

How to determine the Status of Non-flexible Isms will be discussed later on

### مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ - Partly Flexible

Status is shown in 2 appearances only (not 3 appearances like Fully flexible)

Only shows – dhamma ٩ or Fatah ٠

Never shows Tanween– as they are Light (not Heavy)

### Example

| Ism          | Status         |
|--------------|----------------|
| إِبْرَاهِيمُ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| إِبْرَاهِيمَ | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| إِبْرَاهِيمَ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah (Blue highlight)

Differentiating between Nasab and Jar will be discussed later on

### 2 Ways to Turn Partly Flexible into Fully Flexible Isms:

1. By adding ال (which means “the”) on it

#### Example

ثَمُودُ is Partly flexible but can become Fully flexible when putting ال on it

الْثَمُودُ – Fully Flexible

2. By making the Ism a Mudhaf (this will be discussed later on)

## Some Groups of Partly Flexible Words

1. Non-Arab Names (Arabic names are Fully flexible)
2. Feminine Names and Unique Masculine Names
3. Proper Names of Places

### Non-Arab Names

Arabic names are Fully flexible

Non-Arab names are Partly flexible

Exception = Three letter name with Sukoon in the middle = Fully flexible

even if it is non-Arab name e.g. لُوطٌ

### Examples

| Non-Arabic Name | Status         |
|-----------------|----------------|
| سُلَيْمَنُ      | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| سُلَيْمَنَ      | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| سُلَيْمَنْ      | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah َ on last letter (Blue highlight)

And never have a Tanween because they are Light (not Heavy)

| Arabic Name<br>(Fully Flexible) | Status         |
|---------------------------------|----------------|
| مُحَمَّدٌ                       | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُحَمَّدًا                      | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| مُحَمَّدٍ                       | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

| Non-Arabic<br>Name (Fully<br>flexible<br>example) | Status         |
|---|----------------|
| لُوطٌ   | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| لُوطًا  | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| لُوطٍ   | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Non-Arabic names made of 3 letters with Sukoon in middle = Fully flexible

### Feminine Names and Unique Masculine Names

All Feminine Names are Partly Flexible

Unique Masculine Names –have no female counterpart = Partly flexible

Exception = Three letter name with Sukoon in the middle = Fully flexible even if it is female or unique masculine name

| Feminine Name | Status         |
|---------------|----------------|
| حَفْصَة       | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| حَفْصَة       | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| حَفْصَة       | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah َ on last letter (Blue highlight)

And never have a Tanween because they are Light (not Heavy)

| Unique Masculine Name | Status         |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| عُمَرُ                | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| عُمَر                 | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| عُمَر                 | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah َ on last letter (Blue highlight)

And never have a Tanween because they are Light (not Heavy)

## Proper Names of Places

Proper (not Common)

If it has **ال** on it = Fully flexible

Exception = Three letter name of place with Sukoon in the middle = Fully flexible

### Examples

| Proper Name of Place | Status         |
|----------------------|----------------|
| ثَمُودُ              | رَفْعُ - Rafa  |
| ثَمُودَ              | نَصَبُ - Nasab |
| ثَمُودِ              | جَرُّ - Jar    |

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah **َ** on last letter (Blue highlight)

And never have a Tanween because they are Light (not Heavy)

| Name of Place<br>with <b>ال</b> on it<br>(Fully Flexible) | Status        |
|---|---------------|
| العِرَاقُ   | رَفْعُ - Rafa |

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| العِرَاقَ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| العِرَاقِ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### Questions

What are the following Isms – Fully Flexible (F), Partly Flexible (P) or Non-Flexible (N) and Why? (the last Harakat has been removed from each Ism)

| Ism        | Flexibility – F/P/N | Why? |
|------------|---------------------|------|
| العِرَاقَ  |                     |      |
| ثَمُودَ    |                     |      |
| عُمَرَ     |                     |      |
| حَفْصَةَ   |                     |      |
| عُمَرَ     |                     |      |
| لُوطَ      |                     |      |
| سُلَيْمَنَ |                     |      |
| مُحَمَّدَ  |                     |      |

|             |  |  |
|-------------|--|--|
| مُؤْمِن     |  |  |
| عَيْسَى     |  |  |
| إِبْرَاهِيم |  |  |
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ  |  |  |

### Answers

| Isim      | Flexibility – F/P/N | Why?                                |
|-----------|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| العِرَاق  | F                   | ال on it                            |
| ثُمَّود   | P                   | Proper Name of Place                |
| عُمَر     | P                   | Unique Masculine Name               |
| حَفْصَة   | P                   | Feminine Name                       |
| لُوط      | F                   | 3 Letter Name with Sukoon in Middle |
| سُلَيْمَن | P                   | Non Arabic Name                     |
| مُحَمَّد  | F                   | Masculine Arabic Name               |



|             |   |                                    |
|-------------|---|------------------------------------|
| مُؤْمِن     | F | No reason to be Partly or Non-Flex |
| عِيسَى      | N | Alif Maksura at End                |
| إِبْرَاهِيم | P | Non Arabic Name                    |
| مُؤْمِنَةٌ  | F | No reason to be Partly or Non-Flex |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Pronouns

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Pronouns do not follow the rules of Status discussed earlier

They do not show their 4 Ism properties (Gender, Number, Type and Status) in the standard way.

They are always Proper (Ism Type)

2 Types of Pronouns (the others will be discussed later)

1. Independent Pronouns - الضمائر المنفصلة

2. Attached Pronouns - الضمائر المتصلة

Independent Pronouns - الضمائر المنفصلة

They are a Ism by themselves

Do not attach to other words

Always Rafa رَفَعُ in status

Table below for Independent Pronouns shows Gender, Number and Grammatical Person

Independent Pronoun Chart

| Grammatical Person | Plural                          | Dual                          | Singular              | Gender    |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>They                    | هُمَا<br>Both of them         | هُوَ<br>He/It         | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هُنَّ<br>They (Women)           | هُمَا<br>Both of them (Women) | هِيَ<br>She/It        | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>All of You          | أَنْتُمَا<br>You Two          | أَنْتَ<br>You         | Masculine |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُنَّ<br>All of You (Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>You Two (Women)  | أَنْتِ<br>You (Woman) | Feminine  |
| First Person       | نَحْنُ<br>We                    |                               | أَنَا<br>I            | Both      |

Masculine Plural - Third Person هُمْ and Second Person أَنْتُمْ - is used for a group (more than 2) including Males and Females

Feminine Plural - Third Person هُنَّ Second Person أَنْتُنَّ only used for a group (more than 2) of Females only

### الضمائر المتصلة - Attached Pronouns

Each Independent Pronoun comes in the form of an Attached Pronoun

They attach to: Harf, Fi'l or Ism

The Attached pronoun is always: Nasab نَصَبٌ or Jar جَرٌّ Status (never Rafa رَفْعٌ)

Determining if Attached Pronoun is Nasab or Jar will be discussed later on

### Independent and Attached Pronoun Chart

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|                      |   |   |   |                  |
|----------------------|---|---|---|------------------|
| <p>Third Person</p>  | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>Attached Pronouns</p> <p>هُمْ</p> <p>هِمْ</p> <p>They</p>            | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Attached Pronouns</p> <p>هُمَا</p> <p>هِمَا</p> <p>Both of them</p>         | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>Attached Pronouns</p> <p>هُوَ</p> <p>هُوَ</p> <p>He/It</p> | <p>Masculine</p> |
| <p>Third Person</p>  | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>Attached Pronouns</p> <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>هِنَّ</p> <p>They (Women)</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Attached Pronouns</p> <p>هُمَا</p> <p>هِمَا</p> <p>Both of them (Women)</p> | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>Attached Pronoun</p> <p>هَا</p> <p>She/It</p>              | <p>Feminine</p>  |
| <p>Second Person</p> | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>Attached Pronoun</p> <p>كُمْ</p> <p>All of You</p>               | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Attached Pronoun</p> <p>كُمَا</p> <p>You Two</p>                        | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>Attached Pronoun</p> <p>كَ</p> <p>You</p>                | <p>Masculine</p> |

|               |  |   |   |          |
|---------------|--|---|---|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>Attached Pronoun<br>كُنَّ<br>All of You (Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>Attached Pronoun<br>كُمَا<br>You Two (Women) | أَنْتِ<br>Attached Pronoun<br>لِي<br>You                  | Feminine |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>Attached Pronoun<br>نَا<br>We                      |   | أَنَا<br>Attached Pronouns<br>نِي (Nasab)<br>ي (Jar)<br>ا | Both     |

Attached Pronouns look the same in Nasab and Jar Status – except أَنَا version (Yellow highlight)

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Determining Nasab or Jar Status

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Fragments are more than a word but less than a sentence

Understanding the following 3 Fragments will help in identifying whether the Status of an Ism is Nasab **نَصَبٌ** or Jar **جَرٌّ**

1. Jaar and Majroor - **جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ** (Fragment between Ism and Harf)
2. Harf Nasab and its Ism - **حَرْفُ النَّصَبِ وَإِسْمُهَا** (Fragment between Ism and Harf)
3. Eedhafa - **الإِضَافَةُ** (Fragment between Ism and Ism)



## جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ - Jaar and Majroor Fragment

Jaar (aka Harf of Jar) is a Farf which makes the next Ism in the Jar status (this Ism is now called Majroor)

The Jaar and Majroor are always next to each other

Jaar only works on Ism – not a Fi'l or Harf

Table of Common Jaars (Harf of Jars)

| Jaar (Harf of Jar) | Meaning                                 | Jaar (Harf of Jar) | Meaning         |
|--------------------|---|--------------------|-----------------|
| بِ                 | With                                    | عَنْ               | About/Away From |
| تَ                 | I Swear by<br>(used for Allah SWT only) | عَلَى              | Upon/On/Against |
| كَ                 | Like<br>(comparison)                    | حَتَّى             | Until           |
| لِ / لَ            | For (possession)                        | إِلَى              | To/Towards      |
| وَ                 | I Swear by                              | مُنْذُ             | Since/For       |
| مِنْ               | From                                    | مُذْ               | Since           |
| فِي                | In                                      | خِلَا              | Except          |
| رُبَّ              | Maybe                                   | حَاشَا             | Except          |

|       |        |
|-------|--------|
| عَدَا | Except |
|-------|--------|

All of these Harfs – make the next Ism in Jar Status

بِ – وَ – لَ – كَ – تَ – بِ – attach directly to next word

لِ – usually with a Kasra – but takes a Fatah – لَ – when it comes before an Attached Pronouns – except for يِ

### Examples

إِلَيْكَ – To/towards you

إِلَى – Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

لَكَ – Majroor – it is an Attached pronoun - so attached pronoun لَكَ is in Jar Status - even with the Fatah on it!

عَلَى هُدًى – Upon guidance

عَلَى - Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

هُدًى – Majroor - An Ism which is in Jar Status

لَهُمْ – For them/they have

لَ - Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

هُمْ – Majroor - An Attached pronoun – so attached pronoun is in Jar status

فِي الْأَرْضِ – In the Earth

فِي - Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

الْأَرْضِ – Majroor - An Ism which is in Jar status

كَعَصْفٍ – Like straw

كَ - Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

عَصْفٍ – Majroor - An Ism which is in Jar status

## حَرْفُ النَّصْبِ وَإِسْمُهَا - Harf Nasab and its Ism Fragment

Fragment between Ism and Harf

Harf of Nasab puts its Ism in the Nasab status (it always needs an Ism to act on – it will never be alone)

Harf of Nasab and its Ism can have other words in between them (unlike the Jaar/Harf of Jar and Majroor which are always next to each other)

Harf of Nasab only connects to an Ism (not a Fi'l)

Harf of Nasab Table

| Harf of Nasab | Meaning            | Harf of Nasab | Meaning                     |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| إِنَّ         | Certainly/No Doubt | لَكِنَّ       | However                     |
| أَنَّ         | That               | لَعَلَّ       | Perhaps, So that, Hopefully |
| كَأَنَّ       | As Though          | لَيْتَ        | If Only                     |
| بِأَنَّ       | Because            | لِأَنَّ       | Because                     |

Examples

إِنَّهُمْ – Certainly, they

إِنَّ - Harf of Nasab – makes its Ism in Nasab status

هُم - Ism of the Harf of Nasab – It is an Attached pronoun – so it is in Nasab status

أَنَّ لَهُمْ جَنَّاتٍ – that, for them, are gardens

أَنَّ - Harf of Nasab – makes its Ism in Nasab status

جَنَّاتٍ - Ism of the Harf of Nasab – It is an Ism – so it is in Nasab status

As this Ism is a Feminine Plural Ending combination (Yellow highlight) – it can be in Nasab or Jar status – as both look the same – but as it is an Ism of the Harf of Nasab – it is Nasab in status

Gap between Harf of Nasab أَنَّ and its Ism جَنَّاتٍ (which is Nasab)

Unlike Jaar/Harf of Jar and Majroor – which always come next to each other

لَيَتَنِي – If only, I

لَيْتَ Harf of Nasab - makes its Ism in Nasab status

نِي - Ism of the Harf of Nasab – It is an Attached pronoun – so it is in Nasab status

## الإضافة – Eedhafa Fragment

Fragment between Ism and Ism

Eedhafa indicates possession

Example: Book of Allah (SWT)

Sometimes sentence needs to be rearranged to see the “of” possession word

Example: Yusuf’s House – becomes – House of Yusuf

Eedhafa made up of 2 parts:

Mudhaf – مُضَافٌ (NOTE: Partly Flexible Ism can become Fully Flexible when it becomes a Mudhaf) – can be any Status

Mudhaf Alai – مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ – is in Jar Status

Mudhaf and Mudhaf Alai always come next to each other (like Jaar/Harf of Jar and Majroor)

Conditions for Eedhafa Fragment

Mudhaf - مُضَافٌ – must be Light

Mudhaf - مُضَافٌ – must not have ال on it

## Examples

أَصَابِعُهُمْ – their fingers

أَصَابِع - Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

هُمْ - Mudhaf Alai – it is an Attached pronoun - it is in Jar Status

عَهْدَ اللَّهِ – Covenant of Allah (SWT)

عَهْد - Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

اللَّهُ - Mudhaf Alai – It is an Ism – it is in Jar Status

NOTE: When speaking about the word اللَّهُ care should be taken to say “the name of Allah (SWT)” لَفْظُ الْجَلَالَةِ - instead of saying “Allah (SWT)”

زَوْجُكَ – Your wife

زَوْج - Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

كَ - Mudhaf Alai – it is an Attached pronoun - it is in Jar Status

ذِكْرُ رَحْمَتِ رَبِّكَ – a mention of the mercy of your Master

This is an Eedhafa chain (multiple eEedhafas connected together)

ذِكْرُ – 1<sup>st</sup> Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

رَحْمَتِ – 1<sup>st</sup> Mudhaf Alai – It is an Ism – it is in Jar Status

Also it is the 2<sup>nd</sup> Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

رَبِّ – 2<sup>nd</sup> Mudhaf Alai – It is an Ism – it is in Jar Status

Also it is the 3<sup>rd</sup> Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

لَكَ – 3<sup>rd</sup> Mudhaf Alai – it is an Attached pronoun - it is in Jar Status

Special Mudhafs - Zharf - ظَرْفٌ

Some Mudhafs that do not always create the meaning of possession

Zharf ظَرْفٌ is connected to Time and Place (will be discussed in more detail later on)

The Special Mudhaf (Zharf) Chart – 1

| Special Mudhaf | Meaning | Special Mudhaf | Meaning | Special Mudhaf | Meaning |
|----------------|---------|----------------|---------|----------------|---------|
|                |         |                |         |                |         |



|                |                        |         |                       |          |                                      |
|----------------|------------------------|---------|-----------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| بَيْنَ         | Between                | مَعَ    | With                  | قَدَّامَ | Right in Front of                    |
| حَوْلَ         | Around/<br>Surrounding | أَمَامَ | In Front of           | لَدَى    | In the<br>Presence of                |
| عِنْدَ         | With/By/At             | خَلْفَ  | Behind                | فَوْقَ   | Above                                |
| مِنْ<br>لَدُنْ | Especially<br>From     | وَرَاءَ | Far Beyond/<br>Behind | تَحْتَ   | Below                                |
| قَبْلَ         | Before                 | بَعْدَ  | After                 | دُونَ    | Besides/<br>Other Than/<br>Less Than |

NOTE: These Special Mudhafs keep a Fatah at the end (Nasab status) unless a Harf of Jar comes before it (then the last letter of the Special Mudhafs will take a Kasra - Jar Status)

If they do not have a Mudhaf Alai – then they keep a Dhamma (Rafa status)

## The Special Mudhaf Chart – 2

These Special Mudhaf do not refer to Time or Place (not Zharf) – so appear in any Status

| Special Mudhaf | Meaning             | Special Mudhaf | Meaning       | Special Mudhaf | Meaning       |
|----------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| بَعْضُ         | Some of/<br>Part of | أَيُّ          | Any/<br>Which | كُلُّ          | All/<br>Each/ |

|        |         |        |          |        |                    |
|--------|---------|--------|----------|--------|--------------------|
|        |         |        |          |        | Every              |
| مِثْلُ | Similar | نَفْسُ | The Same | غَيْرُ | Other than/<br>Non |

NOTE:

كُلُّ

If Mudhaf Alai is – Singular and Common – Meaning is “Each and Every”

Example: كُلُّ كِتَابٍ – Each and every book

If Mudhaf Alai is – Singular and Proper – Meaning is “Entire”

Example: كُلُّ الْكِتَابِ – The entire book

If Mudhaf Alai is – Plural and Proper – Meaning is “All”

Example: كُلُّ الْكُتُبِ – All of the books

Five Special Isms that appear as Mudhafs

Do not show their Status through Ending Sound

Show Status through a specific ending letter

Rafa Status – Normally ends with Dhamma – in this case word ends in –

و (waw)

Nasab Status – Normally ends with Fatah – in this case word ends in ا

(Alif)

Jar Status – Normally ends with Kasra – in this case word ends in ي (Yah)

| As Mudhaf                      |              |            |               |              |
|--------------------------------|--------------|------------|---------------|--------------|
| Non Mudhaf<br>(Normal Version) | Meaning      | جَرّ - Jar | نَصَب - Nasab | رَفْع - Rafa |
| أَبٌ                           | Father       | أَبِي      | أَبَا         | أَبُو        |
| أَخٌ                           | Brother      | أَخِي      | أَخَا         | أَخُو        |
| حَمٌ                           | In-Law       | حَمِي      | حَمَا         | حَمُو        |
| فَمٌ                           | Mouth        | فِي        | فَا           | فُو          |
| N/A (only comes as a Mudhaf)   | Possessor of | ذِي        | ذَا           | ذُو          |

Understanding and recognizing these fragments help to differentiate between the Status of Isms, especially in certain cases where the Jar and Nasab status look the same

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Gender - الجنس

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Second of four properties of Ism (Status, Gender, Type, Number)

Default Gender for Ism is Masculine

Ism must fall within 6 categories to make it Feminine otherwise it is Masculine

### 6 Categories of Feminine Isms

1. Biologically Feminine
2. Isms that End in ة or اء or ى
3. Body Parts in Pairs
4. Specific Names of Places
5. Non-Human Plurals
6. Feminine Set by Arabs

### Biologically Feminine

Isms that are Feminine naturally

Examples:

Mother أُمُّ

Sister أُخْتُ

### Isms that End in ة or اء or ى

An Ism which contains 3 letters and then followed by اء or ى = Feminine

Most Isms end with ة = Feminine

But biology will always override any ending letters

Example: Angels are considered Males even though the word ends with

المَلَائِكَةُ - ة

Examples:

خَضْرَاءُ – Green (Colour)

الكُبْرَى – The Biggest (Feminine version)

الزَّكَاةُ – Obligatory Charity

### Body Parts in Pairs

Both Singular and Dual Forms are Feminine

| Ism     | Meaning | Ism    | Meaning | Ism      | Meaning  |
|---------|---------|--------|---------|----------|----------|
| شَفَّةٌ | Lips    | أُذُنٌ | Ear     | يَدٌ     | Hand     |
| قَدَمٌ  | Foot    | رِجْلٌ | Leg     | عَيْنٌ   | Eye      |
| سَاقٌ   | Shin    | خَدٌ   | Cheek   | مِرْفَقٌ | Elbow    |
| كَعْبٌ  | Ankle   | عَقِبٌ | Heel    | مَنْكِبٌ | Shoulder |

### Specific Names of Places

Most Specific names of places are Feminine

Examples:

مَكَّةُ - Makkah

عِرَاقُ - Iraq

### Non-Humans Plurals

All Non-Human Plurals are Feminine

Even if the Singular Version is Masculine

Examples:

أَصْنَامٌ - Idols (the Singular version is Masculine)

بُيُوتٌ - Houses (the Singular version is Masculine)

### Feminine Set by Arabs

Arabic Term: مُؤَنَّثٌ سَمَاعِيٌّ

Some Isms are Feminine because the Arabs referred to them in that way

| Isms      | Meaning  | Isms     | Meaning  |
|-----------|--|----------|----------|
| أَرْضٌ    | Land   | رِيحٌ    | Wind     |
| حَرْبٌ    | War  | دَارٌ    | House    |
| بَيْرٌ    | Water Well   | كَاسٌ    | Cup      |
| خَمْرٌ    | Alcohol  | سَعِيرٌ  | Hellfire |
| جَهَنَّمَ | Hellfire (Partly Flexible – name of a Proper place – so it is Light) | سَّمَاءٌ | Sky      |
| نَفْسٌ    | Self   | شَمْسٌ   | Sun      |
| نَارٌ     | Fire   | دَلْوٌ   | Bucket   |



|         |                            |         |      |
|---------|----------------------------|---------|------|
| سَبِيلٌ | Path                       | طَرِيقٌ | Path |
| عَصَا   | Staff/Stick (non-Flexible) |         |      |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## العَدَدُ - Number

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Third of Four Ism Properties (Gender, Type, Number and Status)

Isms have

1. Singular Version: مَفْرَدٌ
2. Dual Version: مُثَنَّى
3. Plural Version (more than 2): جَمْعٌ

Single and Dual are easy to recognise – shown below from the Muminun chart

Masculine Chart

| Dual        | Singular | Status        |
|-------------|----------|---------------|
| مُؤْمِنَانِ | مُؤْمِنٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa |

|              |          |                |
|--------------|----------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنٍ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ  | مُؤْمِنٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### Feminine Chart

| Dual           | Singular   | Status         |
|----------------|------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَتَانِ  | مُؤْمِنَةٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنَةٌ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنَةٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### 4 Plural Types

1. Sound Masculine Plural - الْجَمْعُ الْمَذَكَّرُ السَّالِمُ
2. Sound Feminine Plural - الْجَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثُ السَّالِمُ
3. Broken Plural - جَمْعُ تَكْسِيرٍ
4. Plural by Meaning - اِسْمُ جَمْعٍ

### Sound Masculine Plural

Sound = Original makeup (Singular version) of the Ism does not change  
– only extra letters added at end (see table below)

Only used for Humans, Angels and Jinn

Used for a Group including Males and Females

### Example

Singular - مُؤْمِنٌ

| Plural      | Status         |
|-------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنُونَ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### Sound Feminine Plural

Sound = Original makeup (Singular version) of the Ism does not change  
– only extra letters added at end (see table below)

Refers to Beings with Intellect e.g. Humans and Inanimate Objects

### Example

Singular - مُؤْمِنَةٌ

| Plural      | Status         |
|-------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَاتٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### Broken Plural

Original makeup of Ism is changed (Broken) – Looks different from Singular version

Look like Singular Words

There are some patterns followed when an Ism becomes a Broken Plural

Otherwise the Broken Plurals must be memorized in order to recognize them

Some examples of Broken Plurals

| Plural    | Singular   | Meaning       | Plural    | Singular | Meaning  |
|-----------|------------|---------------|-----------|----------|----------|
| أَزْوَاجٌ | زَوْجٌ     | One of a Pair | نِعَمٌ    | نِعْمَةٌ | Blessing |
| نِسَاءٌ   | إِمْرَأَةٌ | Woman         | شُهَدَاءُ | شَاهِدٌ  | Witness  |

|           |         |                 |             |         |         |
|-----------|---------|-----------------|-------------|---------|---------|
| أَفِيدَةٌ | فَوَادُ | Emotional Heart | أَنْبِيَاءُ | نَبِيٌّ | Prophet |
|-----------|---------|-----------------|-------------|---------|---------|

NOTE: Broken Plurals can be Fully Flexible and Partly Flexible

Broken Plural with an Alif in the middle usually Partly Flexible Example:

أَنْبِيَاءُ – Prophets (PBUT)

### Plural by Meaning

Isms which refer to a group so are considered plural

Some examples

| Isim   | Meaning                | Isim   | Meaning      |
|--------|------------------------|--------|--------------|
| خَصْمٌ | An Argumentative Group | آلٌ    | A Family     |
| جُنْدٌ | An Army                | نَاسٌ  | A People     |
| قَوْمٌ | A People               | قَرْنٌ | A Generation |
| حِزْبٌ | A Group                | أَهْلٌ | A Family     |

### Plurals in Arabic Grammar

All Non-Human Plurals – treated as Single Feminine:

- Non-Human Feminine Plural
- Non-Human Broken Plural

Sound Masculine Human Plural – treated as Plural Masculine

Sound Feminine Human Plural – treated as Plural Feminine

Plural by Meaning – treated as Plural Masculine

Human Broken Plurals – treated as Plural Masculine or Single Feminine

Human – refers to Human, Angels and Jinn

Examples:

All Non-Human Plurals – treated as Single Feminine

السَّمَاوَاتُ خَلَقَهَا – the skies, He created them

السَّمَاوَاتُ – Non-Human Feminine Plural

خَلَقَهَا – the attached pronoun هَا represents the skies – as they are considered single and feminine – just like the attached pronoun is single and feminine

نِعَمٌ خَلَقَهَا – Blessings, He created them

نِعَمٌ – Non-Human Broken Plural

خَلَقَهَا – the attached pronoun هَا represents the blessings – as they are considered single and feminine – just like the attached pronoun is single and feminine

#### Sound Masculine Human Plural – treated as Plural Masculine

الْمُؤْمِنُونَ خَلَقَهُمْ – The believers, He created them

الْمُؤْمِنُونَ – Sound Masculine Human Plural

خَلَقَهُمْ – the attached pronoun هُمْ represents the believers – as they are considered masculine and plural – just like the attached pronoun is masculine and plural

#### Sound Feminine Human Plural – treated as Plural Feminine

الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ خَلَقَهُنَّ – The believing women, He created them

الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ – Sound Feminine Human Plural

خَلَقَهُنَّ – the attached pronoun هُنَّ represents the believing women – as they are considered feminine and plural – just like the attached pronoun is feminine and plural

#### Plural by Meaning – treated as Plural Masculine



الْقَوْمُ خَلَقَهُمْ – The people, He created them

الْقَوْمُ – Plural by Meaning

خَلَقَهُمْ – the attached pronoun هُمْ represents the people – as they are considered masculine and plural – just like the attached pronoun is masculine and plural

Human Broken Plurals – treated as Plural Masculine or Single Feminine

الْأَنْبِيَاءُ خَلَقَهُمْ – The Prophets, He created them

الْأَنْبِيَاءُ – Human Broken Plurals

خَلَقَهُمْ – the attached pronoun هُمْ represents the Prophets – as they are considered masculine and plural – just like the attached pronoun is masculine and plural

Or

الْأَنْبِيَاءُ خَلَقَهَا – The Prophets, He created them

الْأَنْبِيَاءُ – Human Broken Plurals

خَلَقَهَا – the attached pronoun هَا represents the Prophets – as they are considered single and feminine – just like the attached pronoun is single and feminine

## Questions

Identify how the following Isms are treated grammatically

Key:

SM: Sound Masculine Plural

SF: Sound Feminine Plural

BP: Broken Plural

PBM: Plural by meaning

| Gender | Which type of Plural | How is it treated Grammatically | Ism          | Meaning      |
|--------|----------------------|---------------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| M / F  | SM / SF / BP / PBM   |                                 | أَنْبِيَاءُ  | Prophets     |
| M / F  | SM / SF / BP / PBM   |                                 | آيَاتٍ       | Signs        |
| M / F  | SM / SF / BP / PBM   |                                 | أَنْهَارًا   | Rivers       |
| M / F  | SM / SF / BP / PBM   |                                 | السُّفَهَاءُ | Fools        |
| M / F  | SM / SF / BP / PBM   |                                 | الصَّوَاعِقِ | Thunderclaps |

|       |                       |  |              |        |
|-------|-----------------------|--|--------------|--------|
| M / F | SM / SF /<br>BP / PBM |  | الْحِجَارَةُ | Stones |
|-------|-----------------------|--|--------------|--------|

### Answers

| Gender | Which type of Plural | How is it treated Grammatically           | Ism          | Meaning      |
|--------|----------------------|---|--------------|--------------|
| M      | BP – Human type      | Single Feminine<br>Or<br>Plural Masculine | أَنْبِيَاءُ  | Prophets     |
| F      | SF – Non-Human type  | Single Feminine                           | آيَاتٍ       | Signs        |
| M      | BP – Non-Human type  | Single Feminine                           | أَنْهَارًا   | Rivers       |
| M      | BP – Human type      | Single Feminine<br>Or<br>Plural Masculine | السُّفَهَاءُ | Fools        |
| M      | BP – Non-Human type  | Single Feminine                           | الصَّوَاعِقِ | Thunderclaps |

|   |                     |                 |              |        |
|---|---------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------|
| F | BP – Non-Human type | Single Feminine | الْحِجَارَةُ | Stones |
|---|---------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------|

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## القَسَمُ - Type

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Fourth of Four Ism Property is Type (Gender, Status, Number and Type)

Words are Either:

1. Common - نَكْرَةٌ
2. Proper - مَعْرِفَةٌ

Common

Default for Arabic Words

General Isms/Words

Do not refer to something specific

Examples:

A car (not a specific car)

A house (not a specific house)

## Proper

Specific Isms/Words

Refer to a specific thing

Examples:

The car

The house

Ali

Yusuf

## 7 Categories of Proper Isms

Anything outside these categories is considered Common

1. Words with ال (the) on them
2. Specific Names - اِسْمٌ عَلِيٌّ e.g. Names of people or places
3. Pronouns – الضَّمَايِرُ e.g. He, She, You
4. Pointers - اَسْمَاءُ الْاِشَارَةِ (will be discussed later)
5. Ism Mawsool - اَلْاَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُولَةُ (will be discussed later)

6. The One Being Called – **الْمُنَادِي** e.g. Calling Harf is **يَا** – the

thing called is Proper - Example: **يَا أَبَتِ** - O Father

7. If Mudhaf Alai is Proper – Mudhaf is Proper (if Mudhaf Alai is Common so is Mudhaf)

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Fragments

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

There are 5 Fragments

3 out of 5 have been discussed in “[Determining Nasab or Jar Status](#)” chapter

Remaining 2 will be discussed in this chapter

### 5 Fragments

1. Jaar/Harf of Jar and Majroor - **الجارُ والمَجْرُورُ** (Fragment between Ism and Harf)
2. Harf Nasab and its Ism - **حَرْفُ النَّصَبِ واسْمُهَا** (Fragment between Ism and Harf)
3. Eedhafa – **الإِضَافَةُ** (Fragment between Ism and Ism)



4. Mawsoof Siffa - المَوْصُوفُ وَالصِّفَةُ (Fragment between Ism

and Ism)

5. Pointers - إِسْمُ الإِشَارَةِ وَالْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ (Fragment between

Ism and Ism)

### Mawsoof Siffa - المَوْصُوفُ وَالصِّفَةُ

Made of 2 Parts:

1. Mawsoof – An Ism
2. Siffa – An Adjective which comes after it (a describing word) –  
adjective comes after the Ism in Arabic (unlike English)

Mawsoof and Siffa must match in all 4 Properties (Type, Gender, Status and Number)

Whether an Ism is Heavy or Light is ignored in Mawsoof Siffa

### Examples

وَلَدٌ صَالِحٌ (A Righteous Boy not “the righteous boy” as it is common -  
has no ال on it)

وَلَدٌ – “Boy” Mawsoof (Common, Masculine, Rafa, Single)

صَالِحٌ – “Righteous” Siffa (Common, Masculine, Rafa, Single)

All 4 Ism Properties Match (Type, Gender, Status and Number) =  
Mawsoof Siffa

بَشَرًا رَّسُولًا (A Human Messenger) •

بَشَرًا – “Human” Mawsoof (Common, Masculine, Nasab, Single)

رَّسُولًا – “Messnger” Siffa (Common, Masculine, Nasab, Single)

All 4 Ism Properties Match (Type, Gender, Status and Number) =  
Mawsoof Siffa

قَدَرًا مَّقْدُورًا (A Decree Destined)

قَدَرًا – “Decree” Mawsoof (Common, Masculine, Nasab, Single)

مَّقْدُورًا – “Destined” Siffa (Common, Masculine, Nasab, Single)

All 4 Ism Properties Match (Type, Gender, Status and Number) =  
Mawsoof Siffa

الْقَوْمَ الظَّالِمِينَ (The Wrongdoing People – “The” because of ال)

الْقَوْمَ – “The People” Mawsoof (Proper, Masculine, Plural, Nasab)

الظَّالِمِينَ – “The Wrongdoers” Siffa (Proper, Masculine, Plural, Nasab)

Assumed Nasab – no reason for being Jar (both Nasab and Jar look the same)

All 4 Ism Properties Match (Type, Gender, Status and Number) = Mawsoof Siffa

إِسْمُ الإِشَارَةِ وَالْمُشَارِ إِلَيْهِ - Pointers

Made of 2 Parts:

1. Pointing Word - إِسْمُ الإِشَارَةِ
2. What is Pointed to - الْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ

Example:

That Boy

“That” is the Pointer

“Boy” is what is Pointed to

3 Rules of Pointer Fragment

1. Pointing Word and What is Pointed at – Match in 4 Ism Properties  
(Number, Gender, Status, Type)

2. What is Pointed at - الْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ - Must have ال on it

3. Pointing Word and What is Pointed at Must be Next to each other

Pointer Table اِسْمُ الْاِشَارَةِ for Things which are Close/Near

|           | Plural    | Dual      | Singular |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| Masculine | هَؤُلَاءِ | هَذَانِ   | هَذَا    |
| Meaning   | These     | These Two | This     |
| Feminine  | هَؤُلَاءِ | هَتَانِ   | هَذِهِ   |
| Meaning   | These     | These Two | This     |

Pointer Table اِسْمُ الْاِشَارَةِ for Things which are Far

|           | Plural    | Dual      | Singular |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| Masculine | أُولَئِكَ | ذَٰلِكَ   | ذَٰلِكَ  |
| Meaning   | Those     | Those Two | That     |
| Feminine  | أُولَئِكَ | تَٰلِكَ   | تَٰلِكَ  |

|          |       |           |      |
|----------|-------|-----------|------|
| Feminine | Those | Those Two | That |
|----------|-------|-----------|------|

Singular and Plural Forms are Non-Flexible

Dual Forms are Partly Flexible and Show Nasab/Jar Status

Dual Chart for Pointers

| Nasab/Jar - Dual | Rafa - Dual          | Meaning   |
|------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| هَذَيْنِ         | هَذَانِ - Masculine  | These Two |
| هَتَيْنِ         | هَتَانِ - Feminine   | These Two |
| ذَيْنِكَ         | ذَيْنِكَ - Masculine | Those Two |
| تَيْنِكَ         | تَيْنِكَ - Feminine  | Those Two |

Examples

هَذَا الْقُرْآنُ – This Quran

هَذَا - Pointing Word – Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Masculine, Proper

الْقُرْآنُ - What is Pointed to - has ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Masculine, Proper

What is Pointed to has ال on it and All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = Pointer Fragment (This Quran)

هَذِهِ جَهَنَّمُ - This is Hell

هَذِهِ - Pointing Word – Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Feminine, Proper

جَهَنَّمُ - What is Pointed to – does not have ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Feminine, Proper (Name of a Place)

What is Pointed to does not have ال on it even though All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = NOT a Pointer Fragment – it is a Pointer Sentence so translation will be “This is Hell” not “This Hell”

NOTE:

In Pointer Fragment – no “is” in between Pointer and What it Points to  
Example: This Quran

In Pointer Sentence – “is” in between Pointer and What it Points to  
Example: This is Hell

ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ – That Book

ذَلِكَ - Pointing Word – Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Masculine, Proper

الْكِتَابُ - What is Pointed to has ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Masculine, Proper

What is Pointed to has ال on it and All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = Pointer Fragment (That Book)

### Referee (Independent) Pronoun

Used to create a Sentence (not a Fragment) using the word “the” or ال

But putting ال on What is Pointed to creates fragment so a referee (Independent) pronoun is placed between the Pointing word and What is Pointed to which has ال on it – so a sentence is made instead of a fragment

### Example

ذَلِكَ كِتَابٌ – That is a Book

This means “that is a Book” but if the sentence needs a “the” so it becomes “That is the Book” –

If ال is added to book to make it “the Book” it produces a fragment:

ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ – That Book

To create “That is the Book” – referee (independent) pronoun used

ذَلِكَ هُوَ الْكِتَابُ – That is the book

Referee pronoun – needs to match Pointing word in: Number and Gender

Pointing word ذَلِكَ is Singular and Masculine

Referee Pronoun هُوَ – is Singular and Masculine

### Complex Pointer Fragment

Includes other Fragments e.g. Harf of Jar or Harf of Nasab

The Rules for Pointer Fragments must still apply in order to be a Pointer Fragment

### Examples

إِنَّ هَذَا الرَّسُولَ – Certainly, this Messenger

إِنَّ – Harf of Nasab

هذا – The Ism of the Harf of Nasab and a Pointing Word – Nasab (because the Harf of Nasab makes it Nasab), Singular, Masculine, Proper

الرَّسُولَ - What is Pointed to has ال on it



Nasab (its Status is copied from the Pointing Word because of the **ال** on it even if the Harakat was missing), Singular, Masculine, Proper

What is Pointed to has **ال** on it and All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = Complex Pointer Fragment (Certainly, this Messenger)

إِسْمُ هَذَا الرَّجُلِ – Name of this Man

إِسْمُ – Mudhaf – Light and No **ال** on it

هَذَا – Mudhaf Alai and a Pointing Word – Jar (because it is a Mudhaf Alai), Singular, Masculine, Proper

الرَّجُلِ - What is Pointed to has **ال** on it

Jar (its Status is copied from the Pointing Word because of the **ال** on it even if the Harakat was missing), Singular, Masculine, Proper

What is Pointed to has **ال** on it and All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = Complex Pointer Fragment (Name of this Man)

## Pointing to Eedhafa

Mudhaf cannot have ال on it

But What is Pointed at Must have ال on it to make a Pointer Fragment

These opposing rules are corrected by placing the pointer after the Eedhafa

## Examples

سَفَرُنَا هَذَا – This Journey of Ours

سَفَرُ - Mudhaf - Light and No ال on it - Rafa, Singular, Masculine, Proper (because Mudhaf Alai is Proper)

نَا – Mudhaf Alia - Attached Pronoun “we” - Jar, Plural, Masculine, Proper (because it is a Pronoun)

NOTE: Eedhafa Fragment (Mudhaf and Mudhaf Alai) is What is Pointed to

هَذَا – Pointing Word - Rafa (No reason to make it anything else), Singular, Masculine, Proper

All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and Mudhaf = Complex Pointer Fragment (This Journey of Ours)

NOTE:

هَذَا سَفَرُنَا

Putting Pointing Word ahead of Eedhafa would create a Pointing Sentence not a Pointer Fragment

Pointer Fragment Needs ال on What is Pointed to

But Mudhaf cannot have ال on it

So this Pointing Sentence would not mean “This Journey of Ours” it would instead mean “This is Our Journey” – which changes the meaning.

Pointing Sentence uses “is”

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Connector Letters - حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Connectors/Harf of Ataf حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ come between Isms, Fragments and Sentences

When connecting Isms – the Status of the First Ism is carried over to the next Ism

What comes after Harf of Ataf is .....مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَى – the Ism is then mentioned after this term

Some Harfs of Ataf

| Harf of Ataf | Meaning                       |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| وَ           | And                           |
| ثُمَّ        | Then (after some time)        |
| أَمْ         | Either                        |
| فَ           | Then (after a short duration) |
| بَلْ         | Rather                        |

لَكِنْ

However

### Examples

مُسْلِمٌ وَمُؤْمِنٌ – A Muslim and a Believer

وَ – Harf of Ataf

مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَى مُسْلِمٍ - مُؤْمِنٌ

NOTE: عَلَى is Harf of Jar (makes next word in Jar Status)

NOTE: the وَ carried the Rafa Status from مُسْلِمٌ to مُؤْمِنٌ

مُسْتَقَرٌّ وَمَتَاعٌ – A Place to Live and A Provision

وَ – Harf of Ataf

مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَى مُسْتَقَرٍّ is مَتَاعٌ

NOTE: عَلَى is Harf of Jar (makes next word in Jar Status)

NOTE: the وَ carried the Rafa Status from مُسْتَقَرٌّ to مَتَاعٌ

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## الجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ - Noun Sentences

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

### Two Types of Arabic Sentences

1. Noun Sentences - الجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ – Sentence Begins with

Ism (Noun) (normally)

2. Verb Sentences - الجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ - Sentence Begins with Fi'l

(Verb)

### الجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ - Noun Sentences

Every Noun Sentence has an “is” or equivalent in it

The “is” can be located where there is the first break in the words which are connected in a chain

The words which are connected in a chain include

1. Harf of Jar and Majroor Fragment - الجَارُ وَالْمَجْرُورُ

2. Harf of Nasab and its Ism - حَرْفُ نَصَبٍ وَاسْمُهَا

3. Eedhafa - الإِضَافَةُ

4. Mawsoof Siffa - الْمَوْصُوفُ وَالصِّفَةُ

5. Pointer Fragment - اسْمُ الإِشَارَةِ وَالْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ

6. Harf of Ataf - حَرْفُ عَطْفٍ

### Examples

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Certainly, Allah (SWT) “is” not Ashamed

إِنَّ اللَّهَ – “Certainly Allah (SWT)” These two Isms are connected – Harf of Nasab and its Ism

اللَّهُ لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – No connection between the word Allah (SWT) and the rest of the sentence = break in chain – so “is” goes after the word Allah (SWT) = Certainly, Allah (SWT) “is” not Ashamed

أَنَّ الْحَقُّ مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ – That it “is” the truth from their Lord



أَنَّهُ – “That it” Harf of Nasab and its Ism (Attached Pronoun اِ) )

أَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ – No connection between the Harf of Nasab Fragment and the next Ism الْحَقُّ – break in chain – so “is” goes after the words “That it” = That it “is” the truth

الْحَقُّ مِنْ – “The truth from” No connection between Ism and Harf of Jar – but “is” already used so not used again – sentence continues without a second “is” = “The truth from”

مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ – Complex Fragment – “From their Lord”

Harf of Jar مِنْ with Majroor رَبِّ – which is Mudhaf (light and no ال)

Mudhaf Alai is هِمْ (Attached pronoun)

أَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ – That it “is” the truth from their Lord

لَكُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ مُسْتَقَرٌّ – For you all “is” in the Earth a place of settlement

لَكُمْ – “For You All” - Harf of Jar and Majroor

لَكُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ مُسْتَقَرٌّ – No connection between first Harf of Jar and Majroor fragment لَكُمْ and second Harf of Jar and Majroor

fragment **فِي الْأَرْضِ** – so break in chain – “is” goes after the first Harf of Jar fragment = For you all “is” in the Earth a place of settlement

### Common Places to find “is”

1. After Independent Pronouns
2. After Pointing Words - **إِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ**
3. After Harf of Nasb and its Ism - **حَرْفُ النَّصْبِ وَإِسْمُهَا**
4. Between a Proper and Common Word

### Finding “is” After Independent Pronouns

If Independent Pronoun followed by Ism – they both match in Gender and Number

### Examples

**نَحْنُ مُصْلِحُونَ** - We “are” reformers

NOTE: “are” is an equivalent of “is”

**نَحْنُ** – Independent Pronoun – Plural, Masculine

مُصْلِحُونَ – Ism – Plural, Masculine

هُمُ الْمُفْسِدُونَ – They “are” corrupters

هُمُ – Independent Pronoun – Plural, Masculine

الْمُفْسِدُونَ – Ism – Plural, Masculine

### Finding “is” After Pointers

If the word after the Pointing Word does NOT have ال on it – it cannot be a Pointing Fragment and is instead a Sentence and “is” is placed after the Pointing Word

If Pointing Word followed by Ism (with no ال on it) then they match in Gender and Number

### Examples

هَذِهِ جَهَنَّمُ - This “is” Hell

هَذِهِ - Pointing Word – Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Feminine, Proper

جَهَنَّمُ - What is Pointed to has NO ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Feminine, Proper (Name of a Place)

What is Pointed to has NO ال on it even though All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = NOT a Pointer Fragment – it is a Sentence so translation will be “This is Hell”

ذَلِكَ كِتَابٌ – That “is” a Book

ذَلِكَ - Pointing Word - Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Masculine, Proper

كِتَابٌ - What is Pointed to has NO ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Masculine, Common

What is Pointed to has NO ال on it and All 4 Ism Properties do not match = NOT a Pointer Fragment – it is a Sentence so translation will be “That is a Book”

Finding “is” After Harf of Nasb and its Ism

“Is” comes after Harf of Nasab and its Ism

Example

إِنَّ اللَّهَ شَدِيدُ الْعِقَابِ - Certainly, Allah (SWT) is intense in punishment

إِنَّ اللَّهَ – Harf of Nasab and its Ism

إِنَّ اللَّهَ شَدِيدُ الْعِقَابِ – No connection between Harf of Nasab and its Ism and the next Ism – Break in chain – “is” goes after Harf of Nasab and its Ism: “Certainly Allah (SWT) “is” intense in punishment”

### Finding “is” between a Proper and Common Word

Proper word followed by Common word – “is” goes between them

Two words usually match in Gender and Number

### Example

اللَّهُ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ - Allah (SWT) is All Hearing, All Knowing

(لَفْظُ الْجَلَالَةِ) اللَّهُ – Rafa, Single, Masculine, Proper

سَمِيعٌ – Rafa, Single, Masculine, Common

عَلِيمٌ – Rafa, Single, Masculine, Common

اللَّهُ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ – No connection between the word Allah (SWT) لَفْظُ الْجَلَالَةِ and the next two Isms – break in chain – “is” goes in

between Proper and Common words: “Allah (SWT) “is” All Hearing, All Knowing”

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Grammatical Labelling - إِعْرَابُ الْجُمْلَةِ الْإِسْمِيَّةِ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

### Two levels of labelling إِعْرَابُ

1. Sentence Level Labels – contain separate words and/or fragments within them – higher level
2. Fragment Level Labels – further breakdown of sentence level label – lower level

### Sentence Level Labels

#### الجُمْلَةُ الْإِسْمِيَّةُ - Noun Sentence

Made of 3 Parts:

1. The Initiator (Mubtada) – الْمُبْتَدَأُ

Default Status is Rafa

It is Ism that comes before “is” in the English translation

Must be present within a Noun Sentence

## 2. The News (Khabr) – الْخَبْرُ

Default Status is Rafa

It is the Ism(s) that comes after “is” in the English translation

## 3. Related to the News – (Mootalik Bil Khabr) - الْمُتَعَلِّقُ بِالْخَبَرِ

It is the Ism(s) that comes after “is” in the English translation

Can be made of: Harf of Jar Fragment or Special Mudhaf Fragment of Time and Place (Zharf)

NOTE: every Noun Sentence can have:

1. Muftada and Khabr only
2. Muftada and Mootalik Bil Khabr only
3. Muftada, Khabr and Mootalik Bil Khabr (Normal Noun Sentence Strucutre/Order)

### Examples

هُمُ الْخُسِرُونَ - They are the Losers

هُمُ – Muftada – Independent Pronoun



الْخُسِرُونَ – Khabr

No connection between the two Isms – break in chain – “are” goes in between Muftada and Khabr: They “are” the Losers

أَنْتَ الْعَلِيمُ الْحَكِيمُ - You are All Knowing, All Wise

أَنْتَ – Muftada - Independent Pronoun -

الْعَلِيمُ – 1st Khabr

الْحَكِيمُ – 2nd Khabr

No connection between the three Isms – break in chain – “are” goes in first break in chain between Muftada and 1<sup>st</sup> Khabr: You are All Knowing, All Wise

إِنَّ صَلَوَتَكَ سَكَنٌ لَهُمْ – Certainly, your supplication is tranquility for them

إِنَّ صَلَوَتَكَ - Muftada (Harf of Nasab and its Ism)

Fragment Level:

إِنَّ صَلَوَتَ (Harf of Nasab and its Ism)

صَلَوَتَكَ – Eedhafa Fragment (Mudhaf and Mudhaf Alai)

سَكَنٌ – Khabr

لَهُمْ - Mootalik Bil Khabr (Harf of Jar Fragment)

“is” goes between Muftada and Khabr – first break in chain: Certainly, your supplication “is” tranquility for them

### Abnormal Noun Sentence Structure

Normal Noun Sentence Structure/Order = Muftada, Khabr and Mootalik Bil Khabr

Moving each component around changes the meaning of sentence

Something is brought forward from normal place = Mookadam – مُقَدَّمٌ

Something is brought backwards from normal place = Mooakhar – مُؤَخَّرٌ

NOTE: As Harf of Nasab and its Ism can be separated – if any part of it is Mooakhar - the entire Harf of Nasab fragment is considered Mooakhar

### 2 Abnormal Patterns

1. Mootalik Bil Khabr followed by Proper Muftada – (If Muftada is Common – then this a Normal Noun Sentence Structure)
2. Muftada, Mootalik Bil Khabr and then Khabr - Creates different meanings – determined by context/meaning

Order of: Mootalik Bil Khabr and then Muftada

Creates meaning of exclusivity – اِخْتِصَاصٌ

Example

لِلّٰهِ الْمَثَلُ الْأَعْلَى – For Allah (SWT) “alone” is the highest attribute

لِلّٰهِ – Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam - (Harf of Jar Fragment)

الْمَثَلُ الْأَعْلَى – Muftada Mooakhar (it is Proper) – (Mawsoof Siffa Fragment)

الْأَعْلَى is Non-Flexible – it is in Rafa status (no reason to make it Nasab or Jar)

لَهُ مُلْكُ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ – For Him “alone” is the ownership of the Heavens and the Earth

لَهُ – Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam - (Harf of Jar Fragment)

مُلْكُ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ - Muftada Mooakhar (it is Proper) (Mudhaf

with Two Mudhaf Alais – with و Ataf connecting the two)

NOTE: It is not a Special Mudhaf of Time and Place (Zharf) otherwise it would be a Mootalik Bil Khabr

فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ مَّرَضٌ – In their hearts is a disease

فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ - Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam - (Harf of Jar Fragment)

مَّرَضٌ - Muftada Mooakhar – But it is Common not Proper - so this is normal sentence structure – therefore no exclusivity added in the meaning: “In their hearts is a disease” it is not “In their hearts only is a disease”

## 2 More Abnormal Noun Sentence Structures/Order

1. Possession sentences e.g. He has
2. Confirming Existence of Something/Someone e.g. there is

Mootalik Bil Khabr and then Muftada is used for both

## 2 Types of Possession sentences

### 1<sup>st</sup> Type

Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam (Harf of Jar ل is used) with the possessor of the item

Muftada Mooakhar – is the thing which is possessed

### Example

لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ مُّهِينٌ - For them is a humiliating punishment

لَهُمْ - Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam (Harf of Jar ل is used) with the possessor of the item – “them”

عَذَابٌ مُّهِينٌ - Muftada Mooakhar – is the thing which is possessed  
– Mawsoof Siffa structure

## 2 Types of Possession sentences

### 2<sup>nd</sup> Type

Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam (Special Mudhaf عِنْدَ is used) with the possessor of the item

Muftada Mooakhar – is the thing which is possessed

### Example

عِنْدَهُ عِلْمُ السَّاعَةِ – With Him alone is the knowledge of the Hour

عِنْدَهُ - Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam (Special Mudhaf عِنْدَ is used) with the possessor of the item – “Him”

عِلْمُ السَّاعَةِ - Muftada Mooakhar – is the thing which is possessed  
– Eedhafa Fragment

NOTE: As the Muftada is Proper (when Mudhaf Alai is Proper – Mudhaf is Proper also) – exclusivity is added as the Muftada is Mooakhar: With Him “alone” is the knowledge of the Hour

Confirming Existence of Something/Someone e.g. there is

## 2 Types of Confirming Existence Sentences

### 1<sup>st</sup> Type

Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam then Muftada Mooakhar

### Example

فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ مَّرَضٌ – In their hearts is a disease

فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ - Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam - (Harf of Jar Fragment)

مَّرَضٌ - Muftada Mooakhar – But it is Common not Proper so this is normal sentence structure – therefore no exclusivity added to its meaning: “In their hearts is a disease” it is not “In their hearts only is a disease”

### Complex Sentences

The Khabr can contain a whole sentence which has its own grammatical makeup (lower level makeup)

Full sentence contained by Khabr can be:

1. Noun Sentences - الْجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ – Sentence Begins with

Ism (Noun) (normally)

## 2. Verb Sentences - الْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ - Sentence Begins with Fi'l

(Verb) – will be discussed later

### Example

إِنَّهُمْ هُمُ الْمُفْسِدُونَ – Certainly they, they are the corrupters

إِنَّهُمْ – Muftada (Harf of Nasab and its Ism)

هُمُ الْمُفْسِدُونَ – Khabr

Khabr is a Noun Sentence in itself:

هُمُ — Muftada (Independent Pronoun)

الْمُفْسِدُونَ – Khabr

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## فِعْلٌ - Fi'l (Verb)

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Every Fi'l has a Pronoun inside it = can be the Doer

Full sentence = Doer and Action

Fi'l contains both the Doer and the Action so it is a complete Verb sentence

الْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ - (sentence which begins with a Fi'l)

### 3 Main Types of Fi'l

1. Past Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي
2. Present/Future Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ
3. Imperative – Command - فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ Prohibition - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ



### 3 Parts of Verb Sentence

1. The Action – **الفِعْلُ**
2. The Doer - **الْفَاعِلُ**
3. The Detail – **المَفْعُولُ**

Normal Order of Verb sentence : Action – Doer – Detail

Rearranging order can cause change in meaning

### The Doer – **الْفَاعِلُ**

#### 2 Types of Doers:

1. Inside Doer - **الضَّمِيرُ الْمُسْتَتَرُّ** – built in/hidden pronoun – every

Fi'l has it

2. Outside Doer – the Doer other than a pronoun e.g. Yusuf instead of  
he

## Outside Doer Rules

Comes after Fi'l

Outside Doer in Rafa status

Fi'l – must be only هُوَ or هِيَ versions

Outside Doer and Fi'l must match in Gender

## Examples

فَعَلَ مُؤْمِنٌ = A Believer Done (something)

فَعَلَ مُؤْمِنَانِ = Two Believers Done (something)

فَعَلَ مُؤْمِنُونَ = Believers Done (something)

In each case the Outside Doer is Rafa – comes after the Fi'l – and matches in Gender to the Fi'l – both are Masculine

فَعَلَتْ مُؤْمِنَةٌ = A Female Believer Done (something)

فَعَلَتْ مُؤْمِنَتَانِ = Two Female Believers Done (something)

فَعَلَتْ مُؤْمِنَاتٌ = Female Believers Done (something)

In each case the Outside Doer is Rafa – comes after the Fi'l – and matches in Gender to the Fi'l – both are Feminine

## The Detail – المَفْعُولُ

The Detail of the Action

Takes a Nasab Status

### Types of Details

1. Mafool Beehee - المَفْعُولُ بِهِ – Who or What Details
2. Mafool Feehee - المَفْعُولُ فِيهِ – When or Where Details
3. Mafool LaHoo - المَفْعُولُ لَهُ – Why Details
4. Mafool Haal - المَفْعُولُ الْحَالُ – How Details
5. Mafool Mutlak - المَفْعُولُ الْمُطْلَقُ – Emphasis Action/ Describes  
Action/ Indicates Number of Times of Action
6. Mootalik Bil Fi'l - الْمُتَعَلِّقُ بِالْفِعْلِ – Harf of Jar Fragment found

within Verb Sentence

## Mafool Beehee - المَفْعُولُ بِهِ

Who or What Details

Appears as Ism or Pronoun attached to Fi'l

### Example

جَعَلْنَكُمْ أُمَّةً وَسَطًا – We made you all a balanced nation

جَعَلْنَا – Fi'l – Inside doer – نَحْنُ – We made

كُم – Mafool Beehee – Attached pronoun – Nasab Status – Who did He make? – You all

أُمَّةً وَسَطًا – 2<sup>nd</sup> Mafool Beehee – Mawsoof Siffa - Nasab Status – What did He make you into? A balanced nation

### Quotes = Type of Mafool Beehee

Quote - مَقُولُ الْقَوْلِ

The whole Quote is in Rafa status

Can contain Noun Sentence or a Verb Sentence

### Example

قَالُوا إِنَّا مَعَكُمْ – They said “Certainly, we are with you”

قَالُوا – Fi’l – Inside Doer هُمْ – “They said”

إِنَّا مَعَكُمْ – Quote – the whole Quote is in Rafa Status

Quote is a Noun Sentence

إِنَّا – Muftada (Harf of Nasab and its Ism)

مَعَكُمْ – Mootalik Bil Khabr (Special Mudhaf - Zharf)

### المَفْعُولُ فِيهِ - Mafool Feehee

When or Where Details

Often appears as a Special Mudhaf of Time or Place (Zharf)

Appears also as an Ism

The Harf of Jar فِي – in Verb Sentence – is a Mafool Feehee

### Example

سَأَلَ فِي اللَّيْلِ – He asked in the night

سَأَلَ – Fi'l – Inside doer هُوَ

فِي اللَّيْلِ – in the night - Harf of Jar فِي – in Verb Sentence – is a Mafool  
Feehee – Nasab Status – When did he ask? In the night

المَفْعُولُ لَهُ - Mafool LaHoo

Why Details

Often appears as a Masdar – this will be discussed later on

### Example

يَشْرِي نَفْسَهُ ابْتِغَاءَ مَرْضَاتِ اللَّهِ – He sells himself seeking the  
pleasure of Allah (SWT)

يَشْرِي - Fi'l – Inside doer هُوَ

نَفْسَهُ – Mafool Beehee – Nasab status - What did he sell? Himself

اِبْتِغَاءَ مَرْضَاتِ اللَّهِ - Mafool Lahoo – a double Eedhafa Fragment -  
Nasab status – Why did he sell himself? To seek the pleasure of Allah  
(SWT)

### المَفْعُولُ الْحَالُ - Mafool Haal

How Details

Describes state of Doer or the Action

#### Example

خَرَجُوا مِنْ دِيَارِهِمْ بَطْرًا – They came out from their homes arrogantly

هُمْ خَرَجُوا - Fi'l – Inside doer

مِنْ دِيَارِهِمْ – Mafool Feehee - Mootalik Bil Fi'l (Harf of Jar Fragment) –  
Nasab Status – Where did they come out from? Their homes

بَطْرًا – Mafool Haal – Nasab Status – How did they come out? Arrogantly

### المَفْعُولُ الْمُطْلَقُ - Mafool Mutlak

Emphasizes Action – when Mafool Mutlak is a single word

Describes Action – when Mafool Mutlak is a Siffa (description word)

Indicates Number of Times of Action – when Mafool Mutlak has a number

Mafool Mutlak often appears as a Masdar with the same Root Letters with the Fi'l

### Example

تُحِبُّونَ الْمَالَ حُبًّا جَمًّا – You All Love Wealth with great love

أَنْتُمْ - Fi'l – Inside doer تُحِبُّونَ

الْمَالِ – Mafool Beehee – Nasab Status – What do they love? Wealth

حُبًّا جَمًّا - Mafool Mutlak – Mawsoof Siffa - Nasab Status - Shows intensity of love – Great Love

### Abnormal Verb Sentence Structure

Normal Order: Action – Doer – Detail

Rearranging order can cause change in meaning

Only Mafool Beehee and Mootalik Bil Fi'l can be moved around (before the Doer or before the Fi'l)

Mafool Feehee can be moved around – still considered normal



## Complex Sentences

In Noun Sentences – the Khabr can contain a Noun Sentence or a Verb Sentence

When Khabr is a Verb Sentence – Pronoun inside Fi'l matches with the Muftada in Number and Gender

### Example

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Certainly, Allah (SWT) is not shy

إِنَّ اللَّهَ – Muftada (Harf of Nasab and its Ism) – Masculine and Single

لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Khabr – Rafa status

Within Khabr is a Verb Sentence: He is not Shy

Pronoun inside Fi'l – هُوَ – Masculine and Single (matches with Muftada)

## Converting between Verb and Noun Sentences

By matching Gender and Number of Pronoun in Fi'l with Muftada – a Verb sentence can be converted into a Noun Sentence and vice versa

## Example

### Noun Sentence version

اللَّهُ لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Allah (SWT) is not shy

اللَّهُ – Muftada – Masculine and Single

لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Khabr – in Rafa status

Pronoun inside Fi'l – هُوَ – Masculine and Single (matches with Muftada)

### Verb Sentence version

اللَّهُ لَا يَسْتَحْيَ - Allah (SWT) is not shy

لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Fi'l - هُوَ form – Masculine and Single

اللَّهُ – Outside Doer – Rafa Status - Masculine and Single

Outside Doer rules are followed:

1. Outside Doer comes after Fi'l
2. Fi'l must only be in هُوَ or هِيَ versions
3. Outside doer is in Rafa status
4. Outside doer matches in Gender with the Fi'l

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Verb Sentence: Past Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

### Past Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي

Every Fi'l has a pronoun inside it

The Fi'l changes form depending on the pronoun inside it

Example Fi'l table for فَعَلَ – He Did (Something)

| Grammatical Person | Plural                       | Dual  | Singular                    | Gender    |
|--------------------|------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>فَعَلُوا<br>They Did | هُمَا<br>فَعَلَا<br>Both of them<br>Did (Men) | هُوَ<br>فَعَلَ<br>He/It Did | Masculine |

|               |   |   |   |           |
|---------------|---|---|---|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>فَعَلْنَ<br>They<br>(Women) Did              | هُمَا<br>فَعَلَتَا<br>Both of them<br>(Women)<br>Did  | هِيَ<br>فَعَلَتْ<br>She/It Did              | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>فَعَلْتُمْ<br>All of You Did              | أَنْتُمَا<br>فَعَلْتُمَا<br>You Two<br>Did (Men)      | أَنْتَ<br>فَعَلْتَ<br>You Did<br>(Man)      | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>فَعَلْتُنَّ<br>All of You<br>(Women) Did | أَنْتُمَا<br>فَعَلْتُمَا<br>You Two<br>(Women)<br>Did | أَنْتِ<br>فَعَلْتِ<br>You<br>(Woman)<br>Did | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>فَعَلْنَا<br>We Did                         |   | أَنَا<br>فَعَلْتُ<br>I Did                  | Both      |

NOTE: Including and After هُنَّ version – the last Root letter of Fi'l will always have a Sukoon on it – فَعَلَ

Another example table of Past Tense Fi'l for نَصَرَ – He Helped

| Grammatical Person | Plural                                   | Dual  | Singular                          | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|---|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُم<br>نَصَرُوا<br>They helped           | هُمَا<br>نَصَرَا<br>Both of them helped (Men)     | هُوَ<br>نَصَرَ<br>He/It helped    | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هُنَّ<br>نَصَرْنَ<br>They (Women) helped | هُمَا<br>نَصَرَتَا<br>Both of them (Women) helped | هِيَ<br>نَصَرَتْ<br>She/It helped | Feminine  |

|               |   |  |  |           |
|---------------|---|--|--|-----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>نَصَرْتُمْ<br>All of You helped           | أَنْتُمَا<br>نَصَرْتُمَا<br>You Two helped (Men)   | أَنْتَ<br>نَصَرْتَ<br>You helped (Man)   | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِنَّ<br>نَصَرْتِنَّ<br>All of You (Women) helped | أَنْتُمَا<br>نَصَرْتُمَا<br>You Two (Women) helped | أَنْتِ<br>نَصَرْتِ<br>You (Woman) helped | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نَصَرْنَا<br>We helped                      | أَنَا<br>نَصَرْتُ<br>I helped                      |  | Both      |

NOTE: Including and After هُنَّ version – the last Root letter of Fi'l will always have a Sukoon on it – نَصَرُ

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.



## Verb Sentence: Present/Future Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Same rules apply to Present/Future tense like Past tense

Every Fi'l has a pronoun inside it

The Fi'l changes form depending on the pronoun inside it

Example Fi'l table for يَفْعَلُ – He is doing (Something)

| Grammatical Person | Plural                                | Dual   | Singular                           | Gender    |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>يَفْعَلُونَ<br>They are doing | هُمَا<br>يَفْعَلَانِ<br>Both of them are doing (Men) | هُوَ<br>يَفْعَلُ<br>He/It is doing | Masculine |

|                       |   |   |   |           |
|-----------------------|---|---|---|-----------|
| Start & End<br>Letter | ي + وُنَ  | ي + اِنِ  | ي + ُ   |           |
| Third Person          | هُنَّ<br>يَفْعَلْنَ<br>They<br>(Women) are<br>doing | هُمَا<br>تَفْعَلَانِ<br>Both of<br>them<br>(Women)<br>are doing | هِيَ<br>تَفْعَلُ<br>She/It is<br>doing          | Feminine  |
| Start & End<br>Letter | ي + نَ  | ت + اِنِ  | ت + ُ   |           |
| Second<br>Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَفْعَلُونَ<br>All of You are<br>doing  | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفْعَلَانِ<br>You Two<br>are doing<br>(Men)       | أَنْتَ<br>تَفْعَلُ<br>You are<br>doing<br>(Man) | Masculine |

|                    |  |  |   |          |
|--------------------|--|--|---|----------|
|                    |  |  |   |          |
| Start & End Letter | ت + وَنَ   | ت + اِنِ   | تَ + ُ  |          |
| Second Person      | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>تَفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>All of You (Women) are doing</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>You Two (Women) are doing</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَفْعَلِينَ</p> <p>You (Woman) are doing</p> | Feminine |
| Start & End Letter | ت + نَ   | ت + اِنِ   | ت + يِنَ  |          |

|                    |                                    |                                 |      |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------|
| First Person       | نَحْنُ<br>نَفْعَلُ<br>We are doing | أَنَا<br>أَفْعَلُ<br>I am doing | Both |
| Start & End Letter | ن + ُ                              | أ + ُ                           |      |

NOTE:

Present/Future tense Fi'ls – always begin with 4 four letters: أَي ت ن

These letters take either Fataha or Dhamma – whichever it takes it remains on it throughout the chart

The هِيَ (she/it) and أَنْتَ (You masculine) versions look the same – context/meaning of the text is used to determine which one it is

Use the Start and End Letters rows to identify how the Fi'l changes in each stage

Another example table of Present/Future Tense Fi'l for يَذْبَحُ – He sacrifices

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual   | Singular  | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|--|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُم<br>يَذْبَحُونَ<br>They are sacrificing            | هُمَا<br>يَذْبَحَانِ<br>Both of them are sacrificing         | هُوَ<br>يَذْبَحُ<br>He/It sacrifices            | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هِنَّ<br>يَذْبَحْنَ<br>They (Women) are sacrificing   | هُمَا<br>تَذْبَحَانِ<br>Both of them (Women) are sacrificing | هِيَ<br>تَذْبَحُ<br>She/It sacrifices           | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَذْبَحُونَ<br>All of You are sacrificing | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَذْبَحَانِ<br>You Two are sacrificing (Men)    | أَنْتَ<br>تَذْبَحُ<br>You are sacrificing (Man) | Masculine |

|               |                                    |                                 |                             |          |
|---------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>تَذْبَحِينَ              | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَذْبَحَانِ        | أَنْتِ<br>تَذْبَحِينَ       | Feminine |
|               | All of You (Women) are sacrificing | You Two (Women) are sacrificing | You (Woman) are sacrificing |          |
|               |                                    |                                 |                             |          |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نَذْبَحُ                 |                                 | أَنَا<br>أَذْبَحُ           | Both     |
|               | We are sacrificing                 |                                 | I am sacrificing            |          |
|               |                                    |                                 |                             |          |

### Forms of Present/Future Tense

Unlike Past tense – certain words before the Present/Future tense can change its form

### 3 Form changes of Present/Future Tense

1. Normal (مَرْفُوعٌ) – Default Status – Present/Future tense unchanged

by word before it

2. Light (مَنْصُوبٌ) – when it is affected by specific word before it

called الحُرُوفُ النَّاصِبَةُ لِلْمُضَارِعِ

3. Lightest (مَجْزُومٌ) - when it is affected by specific word before it

called الحُرُوفُ الْجَازِمَةُ لِلْمُضَارِعِ

### Light Version مَنْصُوبٌ Chart

When it is affected by specific word that comes before it

The Light Words:

| Word               | Meaning   |
|--------------------|---|
| أَنَّ              | To (connector – I want to go to school)<br>that<br>lest |
| لَنْ               | Will not – Translates in to the Future Tense            |
| لِ / كَيْ / لِكَيْ | So that<br>In order                                     |

|                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| إِذَنْ / إِذَا | In that case |
| حَتَّى         | Until        |

### Rules for making Present/Future tense Light

1. The end letter on the Present Tense Fi'l takes a Fatah but
2. If the end letter is an ending combination with ن – it is removed and  
nothing else is done (the ending combinations with ن = انِ – يُنِ –

(يُنِ - وَنَ

3. أَنْتُمْ and هُنَّ versions are unchanged

The Light Chart Example with يَفْعَلُ

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|



|               |  |  |  |           |
|---------------|--|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُم<br>يَفْعَلُونَ<br>Light =<br>يَفْعَلُوا<br>They are doing          | هُمَا<br>يَفْعَلَانِ<br>Light =<br>يَفْعَلَا<br>Both of them are doing         | هُوَ<br>يَفْعَلُ<br>Light =<br>يَفْعَلْ<br>He/It is doing  | Masculine |
| Third Person  | هِنَّ<br>يَفْعَلْنَ<br>Light =<br>يَفْعَلْنَ<br>They (Women) are doing | هُمَا<br>تَفْعَلَانِ<br>Light =<br>تَفْعَلَا<br>Both of them (Women) are doing | هِيَ<br>تَفْعَلُ<br>Light =<br>تَفْعَلْ<br>She/It is doing | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَفْعَلُونَ<br>Light =                                     | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفْعَلَانِ<br>Light =  | أَنْتَ<br>تَفْعَلُ<br>Light =                              | Masculine |

|               |                              |                           |                       |          |
|---------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|----------|
|               | تَفْعَلُوا                   | تَفْعَلَا                 | تَفْعَلِ              |          |
|               | All of You are doing         | You Two are doing         | You are doing         |          |
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ                    | أَنْتُمَا                 | أَنْتِ                | Feminine |
|               | تَفْعَلْنَ                   | تَفْعَلَانِ               | تَفْعَلِينَ           |          |
|               | Light =                      | Light =                   | Light =               |          |
|               | تَفْعَلْنَ                   | تَفْعَلَا                 | تَفْعَلِي             |          |
|               | All of You (Women) are doing | You Two (Women) are doing | You (Woman) are doing |          |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ                       |                           | أَنَا                 | Both     |
|               | نَفْعَلُ                     |                           | أَفْعَلُ              |          |
|               | Light =                      |                           | Light =               |          |
|               | نَفْعَلُ                     |                           | أَفْعَلُ              |          |
|               | We are doing                 |                           | I am doing            |          |

## Examples

يُرِيدُ أَنْ يَضْرِبَهُ – He intends to hit him

يَضْرِبُ – Present Tense Fi'l - in Light form – Fatah at end

Normal Present Tense Fi'l form: يَضْرِبُ

لِتُنْذِرَ قَوْمًا – So that you warn a people

لِتُنْذِرَ – the لِ at the beginning is a form of لِكَيْ = so that

تُنْذِرُ – Present Tense Fi'l - in Light form – Fatah at end

Normal Present Tense Fi'l form: تُنْذِرُ

NOTE: the لِ in this example cannot be Harf of Jar ل as Harf of Jar never comes before a Fi'l, only an Ism

## Lightest Version مَجْزُومٌ Chart

When it is affected by specific word that comes before it

## The Lightest Words

| Word   | Meaning  |
|--------|--|
| إِنْ   | If (also used in conditional statements – If this...then that)   |
| لَمْ   | Did not (gives Past Tense meaning, even though it connects with Present/Future tense Fi'l)                             |
| لَمَّا | Not yet (this word also means “when” but in this case it is not the version which makes Present/Future tense Lightest) |
| وَلْ   | And should   |
| فَلْ   | Then should  |
| لِ     | Should   |

### Rules for making Present/Future tense Lightest

1. The end letter on the Present Tense Fi'l takes a Sukoon but

2. If the end letter is an ending combination with ن – it is removed and

nothing else is done (the ending combinations with ن = اِنْ – يَنْ –

يُنْ - وَنْ)

3. أَنْتُمْ and هُنَّ versions are unchanged

The Lightest Chart Example with يَفْعَلُ

| Grammatical Person | Plural   | Dual   | Singular  | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|--|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>يَفْعَلُونَ<br>Light =<br>يَفْعَلُوا<br>Lightest = | هُمَا<br>يَفْعَلَانِ<br>Light =<br>يَفْعَلَا<br>Lightest = | هُوَ<br>يَفْعَلُ<br>Light =<br>يَفْعَلُ<br>Lightest = | Masculine |

|               |  |   |  |           |
|---------------|--|---|--|-----------|
|               | يَفْعَلُوا<br>They are doing   | يَفْعَلَا<br>Both of them are doing   | يَفْعَلُ<br>He/It is doing   |           |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>يَفْعَلْنَ<br>Light =<br>يَفْعَلْنَ<br>Lightest =<br>يَفْعَلْنَ<br>They (Women) are doing | هُمَا<br>تَفْعَلَانِ<br>Light =<br>تَفْعَلَا<br>Lightest =<br>تَفْعَلَا<br>Both of them (Women) are doing | هِيَ<br>تَفْعَلُ<br>Light =<br>تَفْعَلِ<br>Lightest =<br>تَفْعَلِ<br>She/It is doing | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَفْعَلُونَ<br>Light =<br>تَفْعَلُوا   | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفْعَلَانِ<br>Light =<br>تَفْعَلَا  | أَنْتَ<br>تَفْعَلُ<br>Light =<br>تَفْعَلِ  | Masculine |

|               |   |   |  |          |
|---------------|---|---|--|----------|
|               | <p>Lightest =</p> <p>تَفْعَلُوا</p> <p>All of You are doing</p>   | <p>Lightest =</p> <p>تَفْعَلَا</p> <p>You Two are doing</p>   | <p>Lightest =</p> <p>تَفْعَلِ</p> <p>You are doing</p>   |          |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>تَفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>Light =</p> <p>تَفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>Lightest =</p> <p>تَفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>All of You (Women) are doing</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Light =</p> <p>تَفْعَلَا</p> <p>Lightest =</p> <p>تَفْعَلَا</p> <p>You Two (Women) are doing</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَفْعَلِينَ</p> <p>Light =</p> <p>تَفْعَلِي</p> <p>Lightest =</p> <p>تَفْعَلِي</p> <p>You (Woman) are doing</p> | Feminine |
| First Person  | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>نَفْعَلُ</p> <p>Light =</p> <p>نَفْعَلِ</p> <p>Lightest =</p>  |   | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>أَفْعَلُ</p> <p>Light =</p> <p>أَفْعَلِ</p> <p>Lightest =</p>  | Both     |

|  |                          |                        |  |
|--|--------------------------|------------------------|--|
|  | نَفْعَلُ<br>We are doing | أَفْعَلُ<br>I am doing |  |
|--|--------------------------|------------------------|--|

NOTE: in some cases the Light and Lightest versions appear the same – context/meaning is used to differentiate between the two

### Examples

لَمْ يَفْعَلْهُ – He did not do it

لَمْ makes يَفْعَلُ – which is Lightest version

Original version – يَفْعَلُ

Light version - يَفْعَلِ

NOTE: لَمْ gives Past Tense meaning even though it used with a Present/Future tense

لَيَفْعَلْهُ – He should do it



لِ makes يَفْعَلُ – which is Lightest version

Original version – يَفْعَلُ

Light version - يَفْعَلِ

NOTE: the لِ in this example cannot be Harf of Jar ل as Harf of Jar never comes before a Fi'l, only an Ism

The لِ in this example cannot be the Light word لِيْ as that would cause the last letter to have a Fatah not a Sukoon. When the Harakat are missing, context/meaning is used to determine which لِ it is.

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Verb Sentence: Imperative – Command - فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ Prohibition - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Commanding and Forbidding forms are constructed from the Present/Future tense Fi'l forms

Commanding and Forbidding forms only connected to Second Person Pronouns – cannot Command or Forbid yourself (First Person) or an absent person (Third Person)

### Forbidding - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ

#### Steps in Constructing Forbidding Forms

1. Choose Present/Future tense Second Person Form – Pronoun matches with the one being forbidden e.g. one person, two people or plural people being forbidden
2. Put Fi'l in Lightest Form

3. Add a لا in front of Fi'l

Forbidding Chart Example with يَفْعَلُ

Only Second Person is needed

| Grammatical Person | Plural   | Dual   | Singular   | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|--|--|-----------|
| Second Person      | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَفْعَلُونَ</p> <p>Lightest =</p> <p>تَفْعَلُوا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفْعَلُوا</p> <p>All of You don't do!</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Lightest =</p> <p>تَفْعَلَا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفْعَلَا</p> <p>You Two don't do!</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَفْعَلُ</p> <p>Lightest =</p> <p>تَفْعَلْ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفْعَلْ</p> <p>You don't do!</p> | Masculine |

| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ                    | أَنْتُمَا                 | أَنْتِ                | Feminine |
|---------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|----------|
|               | تَفْعَلْنَ                   | تَفْعَلَانِ               | تَفْعَلِينَ           |          |
|               | Lightest =                   | Lightest =                | Lightest =            |          |
|               | تَفْعَلْنَ                   | تَفْعَلَا                 | تَفْعَلِي             |          |
|               | Forbidding Form =            | Forbidding Form =         | Forbidding Form =     |          |
|               | لَا تَفْعَلْنَ               | لَا تَفْعَلَا             | لَا تَفْعَلِي         |          |
|               | All of You (Women) don't do! | You Two (Women) don't do! | You (Woman) don't do! |          |

NOTE: To recognize Forbidding form – Look for Present/Future tense in Lightest form and لا in front of it – and is determined through context/meaning.

### Negation vs Forbidding

Negation can use لا also – but the Present/Future tense will not be in Lightest form – Normal form is maintained

Forbidding – Present/Future tense must be in Lightest form

## Examples

### Forbidding Form

لَا تَفْعَلْهُ – You (man) don't do it!

Present/Future tense is in Lightest form

### Negation Form

لَا تَفْعَلْهُ – You are not doing it

Present/Future tense is in Normal form

NOTE: this could also mean “She is not doing it” – context/meaning will determine which one it is

### Direct and Indirect Forbidding

Indirect Forbidding – to someone who is absent – means: “should not do”

Same steps as Direct Forbidding:

1. Present/Future tense in Lightest form
2. Add لَا in front of Lightest form Fi'l

Indirect Forbidding can have an Outside Doer (only when هُوَ and هِيَ versions used)

## Indirect Forbidding Example with يَفْعَلُ

Third Person – absent person

| Grammatical Person | Plural   | Dual  | Singular  | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|---|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>يَفْعَلُونَ</p> <p>Lightest =</p> <p>يَفْعَلُوا</p> <p>Indirect Forbidding =</p> <p>لا يَفْعَلُوا</p> <p>They should not do</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>يَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Lightest =</p> <p>يَفْعَلَا</p> <p>Indirect Forbidding =</p> <p>لا يَفْعَلَا</p> <p>Both of them should not do</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>يَفْعَلُ</p> <p>Lightest =</p> <p>يَفْعَلْ</p> <p>Indirect Forbidding =</p> <p>لا يَفْعَلْ</p> <p>He should not do</p> | Masculine |

| Third Person | هُنَّ                      | هُمَا                              | هِيَ                  | Feminine |
|--------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------|
|              | يَفْعَلْنَ                 | تَفْعَلَانِ                        | تَفْعَلُ              |          |
|              | Lightest =                 | Lightest =                         | Lightest =            |          |
|              | يَفْعَلْنَ                 | تَفْعَلَا                          | تَفْعَلْ              |          |
|              | Indirect Forbidding =      | Indirect Forbidding =              | Indirect Forbidding = |          |
|              | لا يَفْعَلْنَ              | لا تَفْعَلَا                       | لا تَفْعَلْ           |          |
|              | They (Women) should not do | Both of them (Women) should not do | She should not do     |          |

NOTE: هِيَ version of Indirect Forbidding is same as أَنْتَ version of Direct Forbidding – the two are differentiated through context/meaning

Commanding - فَعْلُ الْأَمْرِ

Steps in Constructing Commanding Form

1. Choose Present/Future tense Second Person Form – Pronoun matches with the one being forbidden e.g. one person, two people or plural people being forbidden
2. Put Fi'l in Lightest Form
3. Remove the ت – the first letter of the Fi'l
4. If the first letter (after removing ت) has any Harakat except Sukoon – then the construction is complete
5. If the first letter (after removing ت) has Sukoon - then need to add Alif ا at the start
6. The Harakat on ا =
  - If the second to last letter on the Fi'l in هُوَ version has Dhamma on it then the Alif gets a Dhamma too
  - If the second to last letter on the Fi'l in هُوَ version has Fatah or Kasra then the Alif gets a Kasra



- Only exception is the أَفْعَلَ (Family 4 pattern) which gets a Fatah on the Alif always – This will be discussed in more detail later

Commanding Chart Example with يَفْعَلُ

Only Second Person is needed

NOTE: The Harakat on the second to last letter in هُوَ version (يَفْعَلُ) is Fatah – so extra Alif gets a Kasra - اِ

(If it was Kasra (يَفْعِلُ) – then the extra Alif would get a Kasra also - اِ)

(If it was Dhamma (يَفْعُلُ) – then the extra Alif would get a Dhamma - اُ)

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular                                     | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|---|--|-----------|
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَفْعَلُونَ<br>Lightest =<br>تَفْعَلُوا | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفْعَلَانِ<br>Lightest =<br>تَفْعَلَا | أَنْتَ<br>تَفْعَلُ<br>Lightest =<br>تَفْعَلْ | Masculine |

|               |   |  |   |          |
|---------------|---|--|---|----------|
|               | Commanding Form =<br>اِفْعَلُوا<br>All of You do!   | Commanding Form =<br>اِفْعَلَا<br>You Two do!  | Commanding Form =<br>اِفْعَلْ<br>You do!  |          |
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>تَفْعَلْنَ<br>Lightest =<br>تَفْعَلْنَ<br>Commanding Form =<br>اِفْعَلْنَ<br>All of You (Women) do! | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفْعَلَانِ<br>Lightest =<br>تَفْعَلَا<br>Commanding Form =<br>اِفْعَلَا<br>You Two (women) do! | أَنْتِ<br>تَفْعَلِينَ<br>Lightest =<br>تَفْعَلِي<br>Commanding Form =<br>اِفْعَلِي<br>You (Woman) do! | Feminine |

### Example

Using Dhamma on extra Alif

اَنْصُرْ - You (man) Help! -

Second to last letter in هُوَ version (يَنْصُرُ) is Dhamma – so extra Alif gets a Dhamma اُ

أَنْتَ

تَنْصُرُ

Lightest =

تَنْصُرُ

Commanding Form =

اَنْصُرْ

You (man) help!

نُونُ التَّوَكُّيدِ - Nun of Emphasis

ن attaches to end of Present/Future tense – to emphasis action

Translates in the future tense

Nun of Emphasis can come with لَامُ التَّوَكُّيدِ – ل at the beginning of the Fi'l also shows emphasis

## 2 Levels of ن emphasis

1. Light ن emphasis - نُؤُنُ التَّوَكُّيدِ الْخَفِيفَةِ – one ن is added –

occurs twice in the Quran

2. Heavy ن emphasis - نُؤُنُ التَّوَكُّيدِ الثَّقِيلَةِ – two ن are added –

occurs many times in the Quran

The Heavy ن emphasis Chart Example for يَفْعَلُ

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular  | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|---|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>يَفْعَلُونَ</p> <p>Heavy ن emphasis =</p> <p>يَفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>They are absolutely doing</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>يَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Heavy ن emphasis =</p> <p>يَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Both of them are absolutely doing</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>يَفْعَلُ</p> <p>Heavy ن emphasis =</p> <p>يَفْعَلَنَّ</p> <p>He/it is absolutely doing</p> | Masculine |

|               |  |   |  |           |
|---------------|--|---|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>يَفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>Heavy ن<br/>emphasis =</p> <p>يَفْعَلَنَّ</p> <p>They<br/>(Women) are<br/>absolutely<br/>doing</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Heavy ن<br/>emphasis =</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Both of<br/>them<br/>(Women)<br/>are<br/>absolutely<br/>doing</p> | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>تَفْعَلُ</p> <p>Heavy ن<br/>emphasis =</p> <p>تَفْعَلَنَّ</p> <p>She/It is<br/>absolutely<br/>doing</p>           | Feminine  |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَفْعَلُونَ</p> <p>Heavy ن<br/>emphasis =</p> <p>تَفْعَلَنَّ</p> <p>All of You are<br/>absolutely<br/>doing</p>   | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Heavy ن<br/>emphasis =</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>You Two<br/>are<br/>absolutely<br/>doing</p>                  | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَفْعَلُ</p> <p>Heavy ن<br/>emphasis =</p> <p>تَفْعَلَنَّ</p> <p>You (man)<br/>are<br/>absolutely<br/>doing</p> | Masculine |

|               |   |                                      |                                   |          |
|---------------|---|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ                               | أَنْتُمَا                            | أَنْتِ                            | Feminine |
|               | تَفْعَلْنَ                              | تَفْعَلَانِ                          | تَفْعَلِينَ                       |          |
|               | Heavy ن emphasis =<br>تَفْعَلْنَ        | Heavy ن emphasis =<br>تَفْعَلَانِ    | Heavy ن emphasis =<br>تَفْعَلِينَ |          |
|               | All of You (Women) are absolutely doing | You Two (women) are absolutely doing | You (Woman) are absolutely doing  |          |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ                                  |                                      | أَنَا                             | Both     |
|               | نَفْعَلُ                                |                                      | أَفْعَلُ                          |          |
|               | Heavy ن emphasis =<br>نَفْعَلَنَّ       |                                      | Heavy ن emphasis =<br>أَفْعَلَنَّ |          |
|               | We are absolutely doing                 |                                      | I am absolutely doing             |          |

NOTE: when the original Fi'l form has فُ at the end – it is replaced with Dhamma - هم/أنتم versions (Yellow highlight)

When the original Fi'l has Dhamma at end – it is replaced with Fataha

NOTE: the Direct Forbidding can be emphasized with the Light or Heavy ن emphasis as well by simply adding the ن to the Direct Forbidding version as shown in the above table

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Passive Fi'l - الْفِعْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Active Fi'l – the Doer is known

Example:

Yusuf hit the man

Yusuf is the Doer

Passive Fi'l – Keeps the Doer hidden – in both Past and Present/Future Tenses – Do not contain a Mafool Beehee

Examples:

Past Passive: the man was hit

Present Passive: the man is being hit

Passive reasons include – emphasizes action, showing respect to the Doer who is left unmentioned, etc



## 2 Parts of Passive Fi'l

1. Passive Fi'l – the Action - **الفِعْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ**

2. Naeebul Far'il - The thing/person the action is done to - **نَائِبُ**

## **الْفَاعِلِ**

Example:

The man was hit

Passive Fi'l – “was hit”

Naeebul Far'il – “The man”

No Mafool Beehee in Passive Fi'l

The Mafool Beehee in an Active Fi'l is converted into the Naeebul Far'il in the Passive Fi'l

## Past Passive Fi'l

### Making a Past Active Fi'l into Past Passive Fi'l:

The last Harakat is unchanged

The second to last Harakat becomes a Kasra

All the Harakat before the second to last letter (except Sukoon) is changed to Dhamma

## Examples

اقْتَرَبَ – Past Active Form - He came close

اُقْتُرِبَ – Past Passive Form – He was brought close

Last Harakat unchanged

Second to last Harakat gets a Kasra

All the Harakat before the second to last letter (except Sukoon) is changed to Dhamma

فَعَلَ – Past Active Form – He did

فُعِلَ – Past Passive Form – It was done

Last Harakat unchanged

Second to last Harakat gets a Kasra

All the Harakat before the second to last letter (except Sukoon) is changed to Dhamma

Example Past Active and Passive Fi'l table for فَعَلَ – He Did (Something)

NOTE: in some cases the meaning may not make sense but the process for making a Past Passive Fi'l still applies in each case

| Grammatical Person | Plural   | Dual   | Singular  | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|--|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>فَعَلُوا</p> <p>They Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلُوا</p> <p>It was done to them</p>                  | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>فَعَلَا</p> <p>Both of them Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلَا</p> <p>It was done to both of them</p>     | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>فَعَلَ</p> <p>He/It Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلَ</p> <p>It was done or It was done to him</p>      | Masculine |
| Third Person       | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>فَعَلْنَ</p> <p>They (Women) Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلْنَ</p> <p>It was done to them (Women)</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>فَعَلَتَا</p> <p>Both of them Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلَتَا</p> <p>It was done to Both of them</p> | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>فَعَلَتْ</p> <p>She/It Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلَتْ</p> <p>It was done or It was done to her</p> | Feminine  |

|               |   |  |   |           |
|---------------|---|--|---|-----------|
|               |   |  |   |           |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>فَعَلْتُمْ</p> <p>All of You Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلْتُمْ</p> <p>It was done to you all</p>                    | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>فَعَلْتُمْ</p> <p>You Two Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلْتُمْ</p> <p>It was done to you two</p>         | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>فَعَلْتَ</p> <p>You Did (Man)</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلْتَ</p> <p>It was done to you (Man)</p>     | Masculine |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>فَعَلْتُنَّ</p> <p>All of You (Women) Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلْتُنَّ</p> <p>It was done to you all (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>فَعَلْتُمْ</p> <p>You Two Did</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلْتُمْ</p> <p>It was done to you two (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>فَعَلْتِ</p> <p>You Did (Woman)</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>فُعِلْتِ</p> <p>It was done to you (Woman)</p> | Feminine  |

|              |                   |                   |      |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ            | أَنَا             | Both |
|              | فَعَلْنَا         | فَعَلْتُ          |      |
|              | We Did            | I Did             |      |
|              | Passive =         | Passive =         |      |
|              | فُعِلْنَا         | فُعِلْتُ          |      |
|              | It was done to us | It was done to me |      |

### Present Passive Fi'l

#### Making a Present Active Fi'l into Present Passive Fi'l:

First letter gets a Dhamma

The Harakat on last letter is unchanged

All Harakat in between first and last is changed to Fatah (except Sukoon – left unchanged)

### Examples

يَقْتَرِبُ – Present Active Form - He is coming close

يُقْتَرَبُ – Present Passive Form – He is being brought close

First letter gets a Dhamma

The Harakat on last letter is unchanged

All Harakat in between first and last is changed to Fatah (except Sukoon – left unchanged)

يَفْعَلُ – Present Active Form – He/it is doing

يُفْعَلُ – Present Passive Form – It is being done

First letter gets a Dhamma

The Harakat on last letter is unchanged

All Harakat in between first and last is changed to Fatah (except Sukoon – left unchanged)

Example Present Active and Passive Fi'l table for يَفْعَلُ – He/it is doing

(Something)

NOTE: in some cases the meaning may not make sense but the process for making a Present Passive Fi'l still applies in each case

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular  | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|---|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>يَفْعَلُونَ</p> <p>They are doing</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>يُفْعَلُونَ</p> <p>It is being done to them</p>                | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>يَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Both of them are doing</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>يُفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>It is being done to both of them</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>يَفْعَلُ</p> <p>He/It is doing</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>يُفْعَلُ</p> <p>It is being done to him/it is being done</p>  | Masculine |
| Third Person       | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>يَفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>They (Women) are doing</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>يُفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>It is being done to them (Women)</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Both of them (Women) are doing</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>تُفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>It is being done to both</p> | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>تَفْعَلُ</p> <p>She/It is doing</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>تُفْعَلُ</p> <p>It is being done to her/it is being done</p> | Feminine  |

|                  |   |   |  |           |
|------------------|---|---|--|-----------|
|                  |   | of them<br>(Women)  |  |           |
| Second<br>Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَفْعَلُونَ</p> <p>All of You are<br/>doing</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>تُفْعَلُونَ</p> <p>It is being<br/>done to you<br/>all</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>You Two<br/>are doing</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>تُفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>It is being<br/>done to both<br/>of you (Man)</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَفْعَلُ</p> <p>You are<br/>doing</p> <p>Passive =</p> <p>تُفْعَلُ</p> <p>It is being<br/>done to<br/>you (Man)</p> | Masculine |
| Second<br>Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>تَفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>All of You<br/>(Women) are<br/>doing</p> <p>Passive =</p>   | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>You Two<br/>are doing<br/>(Women)</p> <p>Passive =</p>   | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَفْعَلِينَ</p> <p>You<br/>(Woman)<br/>are doing</p> <p>Passive =</p>   | Feminine  |



|              |   |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|--|--|--|
|              | تُفْعَلْنَ<br>It is being done to all of you (Women)                                  | تُفْعَلَانِ<br>It is being done to both of you (Women)                             | تُفْعَلِينَ<br>It is being done to you (Woman) |  |
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>نُفْعَلُ<br>We are doing<br>Passive =<br>نُفْعَلُ<br>It is being done to us | أَنَا<br>أَفْعَلُ<br>I am doing<br>Passive =<br>أُفْعَلُ<br>It is being done to me | Both   |  |

### نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ - Naeedul Far'il

The thing/person the action is done to

Example:

The man was hit

Naeedul Far'il – "the man"

Normal Far'il (the Doer) and Naeedul Far'il – have same grammatical rules

## 2 types of Naeedul Far'il

1. Inside – If the thing/person the action done to is a Pronoun
2. Outside - If the thing/person the action done to is not a Pronoun

Outside Naeedul Far'il and Outside Normal Far'il (the Outside Doer) same rules apply

Must come after Fi'l

Fi'l must be in هُوَ or هِيَ forms - the Gender of the Naeedul Far'il must match the form

It is in Rafa status

## Examples

خُلِقْنَا – We were created (Past Passive Fi'l)

نَ – Inside Naeedul Far'il – Attached pronoun

خُلِقَ مُؤْمِنٌ – A believer was created (Past Passive Fi'l)

مُؤْمِنٌ – Outside Naeedul Far'il

Comes after Fi'l

The Past Passive Fi'l is in هُوَ form

Gender of Outside Naeedul Far'il matches with هُوَ Past Passive Fi'l Form

– Both are Masculine

Outside Naeedul Far'il is in Rafa status

NOTE: when searching for Passive Fi'l

Check the tense first (Past or Present/Future)

Past Tense – sounds to look for

و و  
— — —  
/

Present Tense – sounds to look for

/ / و  
— — —

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Transitivity

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Two types:

1. Fi'l Lazim (Intransitive) - **الفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ**
2. Fi'l Mootaadee (Transitive) - **الفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي**

### Fi'l Lazim (Intransitive) - **الفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ**

Cannot take a Mafool Beehee – which needs to be present in order to convert Active Fi'l to Passive Fi'l (Mafool Beehee becomes the Naeedul Far'il)

Fi'l Lazim – therefore cannot have a Passive Form

Action affects the person themselves

Check if Fi'l is Lazim – add words “something” or “someone” and if Fi'l does not make sense or needs extra words added to it to make sense = Fi'l Lazim

Examples:

I voted “someone”

I voted “something”

Both do not make sense unless extra words added to it = “I voted” Fi’l Lazim

I hit “someone”

I hit “something”

Both make sense (only one is needed) – so “I hit” = Fi’l Mootaaadee

### Fi’l Mootaaadee (Transitive) - **الْفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي**

Can take a Mafool Beehee – which needs to be present in order to convert Active Fi’l to Passive Fi’l – (Mafool Beehee becomes the Naeedul Far’il)

Therefore Fi’l Mootaaadee can have a Passive form

Action affects someone/something else

NOTE: If an Active Fi’l has two Mafool Beehees and is converted to Passive Fi’l –

One Mafool Beehee becomes the Naeedul Far’il and the other remains as a Mafool Beehee (a detail of What or Who)

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Incomplete Verbs - فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Fi'l Naqis - Incomplete sentence - in meaning by themselves

Considered a Noun Sentence (not a Verb Sentence)

Also known as كَانَ and its sisters

Common Incomplete Verbs (Fi'l Naqis)

| Incomplete Verb               | Meaning  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Past Tense: كَانَ             | It was<br><br>With a Present Tense Fi'l – indicates a continuous past tense action<br><br>With a Past Tense Fi'l – indicates a single past event |
| Present/Future Tense: يَكُونُ | It is  |
| Past Tense: أَصْبَحَ          | To become  |



|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Present/Future Tense: يُصْبِحُ    | Became   |
| Past Tense: ظَلَّ                 | He/it Remained   |
| Present/Future Tense: يَظَلُّ     | He/it Remains  |
| Past Tense: مَا زَالَ             | He/It continued – (if the مَا is removed it means “to desist” but with the مَا it means “to not desist” which means “to continue”) |
| Present/Future Tense: مَا يَزَالُ | He/It continues  |
| Past Tense: مَا دَامَ             | As long as (Past Tense translated in the Present Tense)  |
| Past Tense: لَيْسَ                | He is not/it is not (Past Tense translated in the Present Tense)   |

### Common Incomplete Verbs (Fi'l Naqis)

Considered a Noun Sentence (not a Verb Sentence)

Made up of

1. Muftada

2. Khabr – becomes Nasab with كَانَ and its sisters – the Incomplete

Verbs - (instead of Rafa status in normal Noun Sentence)

3. Mootalik Bil Khabr – normal rules like a normal Noun Sentence apply  
(made of Harf of Jar Fragment or Special Mudhaf of Time and Place -  
Zharf)

### Mubtada made of 2 things

1. Fi'l Naqis – Incomplete Verb
2. Ism that is connected to the Fi'l Naqis

The rules of Ism that is connected to Fi'l Naqis – same as the rules which apply to the Doer with a Fi'l

### Two types of Ism that is connected to Fi'l Naqis

1. Outside – Ism Must come after Fi'l Naqis - Rafa in Status - Fi'l Naqis

must be in هُوَ or هِيَ which matches with Fi'l Naqis Gender

2. Inside – Ism is a Pronoun which appears inside Fi'l Naqis – which matches the pronoun (see charts below)

كَانَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past and Present/Future Tense

| Grammatical Person | Plural   | Dual   | Singular  | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|--|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>كَانُوا</p> <p>They were</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>يَكُونُونَ</p> <p>They are</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>كَانَا</p> <p>Both of them were</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>يَكُونَانِ</p> <p>Both of them are</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>كَانَ</p> <p>He/It was</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>يَكُونُ</p> <p>He/It is</p> | Masculine |
| Third Person       | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>كُنَّ</p> <p>They (Women)</p>   | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>كَانَتَا</p> <p>Both of them were</p>   | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>كَانَتْ</p> <p>She/It was</p>   | Feminine  |

|                  |   |   |  |           |
|------------------|---|---|--|-----------|
|                  | <p>were</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>يَكُنَّ</p> <p>They<br/>(Women) are</p>  | <p>Present:</p> <p>تَكُونَانِ</p> <p>Both of<br/>them are</p>   | <p>Present:</p> <p>تَكُونُ</p> <p>She/It is</p>  |           |
| Second<br>Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>كُنْتُمْ</p> <p>All of You<br/>were</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تَكُونُونَ</p> <p>All of You<br/>are</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>كُنْتُمَا</p> <p>You Two<br/>were</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تَكُونَانِ</p> <p>You two are</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>كُنْتَ</p> <p>You were</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تَكُونُ</p> <p>You are</p> | Masculine |

|               |                         |                      |                  |          |
|---------------|-------------------------|----------------------|------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ               | أَنْتُمَا            | أَنْتِ           | Feminine |
|               | Past:                   | Past:                | Past:            |          |
|               | كُنْتُنَّ               | كُنْتُمَا            | كُنْتِ           |          |
|               | All of You (Women) were | You Two were (Women) | You (Woman) were |          |
|               | Present:                | Present:             | Present:         |          |
|               | تَكُنَّ                 | تَكُونَانِ           | تَكُونِينَ       |          |
|               | All of You (Women) are  | You two are (Women)  | You (Woman) are  |          |
|               |                         |                      |                  |          |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ                  | أَنَا                |                  | Both     |
|               | Past:                   | Past:                |                  |          |
|               | كُنَّا                  | كُنْتُ               |                  |          |
|               | We were                 | I was                |                  |          |
|               | Present:                | Present:             |                  |          |
|               | نَكُونُ                 | أَكُونُ              |                  |          |

|  |        |      |  |
|--|--------|------|--|
|  | We are | I am |  |
|--|--------|------|--|

NOTE: as the second to last letter Harakat is a Sukoon – the letter وُ with the Sukoon Harakat is removed for ease of speech

NOTE: when making Fi'l Light or Lightest – the ن at the end is only dropped if it is part of an ending combination otherwise it is kept

Examples:

أَنْتَ – تَكُونُ Normal version

ن at the end is not part of an ending combination so it is not dropped to make it Light or Lightest

أَنْتَ – تَكُونُ Light version

أَنْتَ – تَكُنْ Lightest version

أَنْتُمْ – تَكُونُونَ Normal version

ن is part of an ending combination and is therefore dropped to make the Fi'l Light or Lightest

أَنْتُمْ – تَكُونُوا Light version

أَنْتُمْ – تَكُونُوا Lightest version

Commanding Chart Example with يَكُونُ (Present/Future tense)

Only Second Person is needed

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual   | Singular   | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|--|--|-----------|
| Second Person      | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَكُونُونَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>كُونُوا</p> <p>All of You be!</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَكُونَانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>كُونَا</p> <p>You Two be!</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَكُونُ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>كُنْ</p> <p>You be!</p> | Masculine |

|               |                        |                     |                   |          |
|---------------|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتِ                 | أَنْتُمَا           | أَنْتِ            | Feminine |
|               | تَكُنَّ                | تَكُونَانِ          | تَكُونِينَ        |          |
|               | Commanding Form =      | Commanding Form =   | Commanding Form = |          |
|               | كُنَّ                  | كُونَا              | كُونِ             |          |
|               | All of You (Women) be! | You Two (women) be! | You (Woman) be!   |          |

Forbidding Chart Example with يَكُونُ (Present/Future tense)

Only Second Person is needed

| Grammatical Person | Plural            | Dual              | Singular          | Gender    |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ          | أَنْتُمَا         | أَنْتَ            | Masculine |
|                    | تَكُونُونَ        | تَكُونَانِ        | تَكُونُ           |           |
|                    | Forbidding Form = | Forbidding Form = | Forbidding Form = |           |
|                    |                   |                   |                   |           |



|                  |  |   |  |          |
|------------------|--|---|--|----------|
|                  | لا تَكُونُوا                           | لا تَكُونَا                             | لا تَكُنْ                              |          |
|                  | All of You<br>don't be!                | You Two<br>don't be!                    | You don't<br>be!                       |          |
| Second<br>Person | أَنْتِ<br><br>تَكُنَّ                  | أَنْتُمَا<br><br>تَكُونَانِ             | أَنْتِ<br><br>تَكُونِينَ               | Feminine |
|                  | Forbidding<br>Form =<br><br>لا تَكُنَّ | Forbidding<br>Form =<br><br>لا تَكُونَا | Forbidding<br>Form =<br><br>لا تَكُونِ |          |
|                  | All of You<br>(Women)<br>don't be!     | You Two<br>don't be!                    | You<br>(Woman)<br>don't be!            |          |

ظَلَّ Fi'l Naqis table for Past and Present/Future Tense

| Grammatical<br>Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|-----------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|-----------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|              |  |  |   |           |
|--------------|--|--|---|-----------|
| Third Person | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ظَلُّوا</p> <p>They remained</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>يَظْلُونُ</p> <p>They remain</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ظَلَّا</p> <p>Both of them remained</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>يَظْلَانِ</p> <p>Both of them remain</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ظَلَّ</p> <p>He/It remained</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>يَظَلُّ</p> <p>He/It remains</p> | Masculine |
| Third Person | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ظَلِلْنَ</p> <p>They (Women) remained</p> <p>Present:</p>                           | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ظَلَّتَا</p> <p>Both of them remained</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تَظْلَانِ</p>                          | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ظَلَّتْ</p> <p>She/It remained</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تَظَلُّ</p>                   | Feminine  |

|                  |  |  |   |           |
|------------------|--|--|---|-----------|
|                  | يَظْلَلْنَ<br>They<br>(Women)<br>remain  | Both of<br>them<br>remain  | She/It<br>remains   |           |
| Second<br>Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>Past:<br>ظَلِلْتُمْ<br>All of You<br>remained<br>Present:<br>تَظْلُلُونَ<br>All of You<br>remain | أَنْتُمَا<br>Past:<br>ظَلِلْتُمَا<br>You Two<br>remained<br>Present:<br>تَظْلَلَانِ<br>You two<br>remain | أَنْتِ<br>Past:<br>ظَلِلْتَ<br>You<br>remained<br>Present:<br>تَظْلُلُ<br>You<br>remain | Masculine |
| Second<br>Person | أَنْتِ<br>Past:<br>ظَلِلْتِ<br>  | أَنْتُمَا<br>Past:<br>ظَلِلْتُمَا<br>  | أَنْتِ<br>Past:<br>ظَلِلْتَ<br>   | Feminine  |

|              |  |   |  |      |
|--------------|--|---|--|------|
|              | <p>All of You<br/>(Women)<br/>remained</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تَظَلَّلْنَ</p> <p>All of You<br/>(Women)<br/>remain</p> | <p>You Two<br/>remained<br/>(Women)</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تَظَلَّانِ</p> <p>You two<br/>remain<br/>(Women)</p> | <p>You<br/>(Woman)<br/>remained</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تَظَلِّلْنَ</p> <p>You<br/>(Woman)<br/>remain</p> |      |
|              |  |   |  |      |
| First Person | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ظَلَّلْنَا</p> <p>We remained</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>نَظَلُّ</p> <p>We remain</p>        | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ظَلَلْتُ</p> <p>I remained</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>أَظَلُّ</p> <p>I remain</p>      |  | Both |

مَا زَالَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past and Present/Future Tense

| Grammatical Person | Plural   | Dual   | Singular   | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>مَا زَالُوا</p> <p>They continued</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>مَا يَزَالُونَ</p> <p>They continue</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>مَا زَالَا</p> <p>Both of them continued</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>مَا يَزَالَانِ</p> <p>Both of them continue</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>مَا زَالَ</p> <p>He/It continued</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>مَا يَزَالُ</p> <p>He/It continues</p> | Masculine |
| Third Person       | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>مَا زِلْنَ</p> <p>They</p>  | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>مَا زَالَتَا</p> <p>Both of</p>   | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>مَا زَالَتْ</p> <p>She/It</p>  | Feminine  |

|                  |  |   |   |           |
|------------------|--|---|---|-----------|
|                  | <p>(Women)<br/>continued</p> <p>Present:<br/><b>ما يَزْلَنَ</b></p> <p>They<br/>(Women)<br/>continue</p>   | <p>them<br/>continued</p> <p>Present:<br/><b>ما تَزَالانِ</b></p> <p>Both of<br/>them<br/>continue</p>  | <p>continued</p> <p>Present:<br/><b>ما تَزَالُ</b></p> <p>She/It<br/>continues</p>  |           |
| Second<br>Person | <p><b>أَنْتُمْ</b></p> <p>Past:<br/><b>ما زِلْتُمْ</b></p> <p>All of You<br/>continued</p> <p>Present:<br/><b>ما تَزَالُونَ</b></p> <p>All of You<br/>continue</p> | <p><b>أَنْتُمَا</b></p> <p>Past:<br/><b>ما زِلْتُمَا</b></p> <p>You Two<br/>continued</p> <p>Present:<br/><b>ما تَزَالانِ</b></p> <p>You two<br/>continue</p> | <p><b>أَنْتَ</b></p> <p>Past:<br/><b>ما زِلْتَ</b></p> <p>You<br/>continued</p> <p>Present:<br/><b>ما تَزَالُ</b></p> <p>You<br/>continue</p> | Masculine |

|               |   |   |   |          |
|---------------|---|---|---|----------|
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما زِلْتُنَّ</p> <p>All of You (Women) continued</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>ما تَزَلْنَ</p> <p>All of You (Women) continue</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما زِلْتُمَا</p> <p>You Two continued (Women)</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>ما تَزَالَانِ</p> <p>You two continue (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما زِلْتِ</p> <p>You (Woman) continued</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>ما تَزَالِينَ</p> <p>You (Woman) continue</p> | Feminine |
|               | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما زِلْنَا</p> <p>We continued</p> <p>Present:</p>  |   |   | Both     |
| First Person  | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما زِلْتُ</p> <p>I continued</p> <p>Present:</p>   |   |   |          |

|  |                                      |                                     |  |
|--|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
|  | <p>ما نَزَالُ</p> <p>We continue</p> | <p>ما أَزَالُ</p> <p>I continue</p> |  |
|--|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|

NOTE: if the مَا is removed it means “to desist” with the مَا it means “to not desist” which means “to continue”

مَا دَامَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past Tense

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular  | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|---|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دَامُوا</p> <p>As long as they</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دَامَا</p> <p>As long as both of them</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>مَا دَامَ</p> <p>As long as he/it</p> | Masculine |



|               |  |   |   |           |
|---------------|--|---|---|-----------|
| Third Person  | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دُمْنَ</p> <p>As long as they (Women)</p>              | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دَامَتَا</p> <p>As long as both of them</p>         | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دَامَتْ</p> <p>As long as She/It</p>       | Feminine  |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دُمْتُمْ</p> <p>As long as all of you</p>           | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دُمْتُمَا</p> <p>As long as you two</p>         | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دُمْتَ</p> <p>As long as you (Man)</p>   | Masculine |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دُمْتُنَّ</p> <p>As long as All of You (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دُمْتُمَا</p> <p>As long as You Two (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>ما دُمْتِ</p> <p>As long as You (Woman)</p> | Feminine  |

|              |  |  |   |      |
|--------------|--|--|---|------|
|              |  |  |   |      |
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>Past:<br>ما دُمْنَا<br>As long as We |  | أَنَا<br>Past:<br>ما دُمْتُ<br>As long as I | Both |

### أَصْبَحُ Fi'l Naqis table for Past and Present/Future Tense

| Grammatical Person | Plural                                     | Dual   | Singular                                  | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|--|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>Past:<br>أَصْبَحُوا<br>They became | هُمَا<br>Past:<br>أَصْبَحَا<br>Both of them became | هُوَ<br>Past:<br>أَصْبَحَ<br>He/It became | Masculine |

|               |  |  |  |           |
|---------------|--|--|--|-----------|
|               | Present:<br>يُصْبِحُونَ<br>They are becoming   | Present:<br>يُصْبِحَانِ<br>Both of them are becoming   | Present:<br>يُصْبِحُ<br>He/It is becoming  |           |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>Past:<br>أَصْبَحْنَ<br>They (Women) became<br>Present:<br>يُصْبِحْنَ<br>They (Women) are becoming | هُمَا<br>Past:<br>أَصْبَحَتَا<br>Both of them became<br>Present:<br>تُصْبِحَانِ<br>Both of them are becoming | هِيَ<br>Past:<br>أَصْبَحَتْ<br>She/It became<br>Present:<br>تُصْبِحُ<br>She/It is becoming | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ   | أَنْتُمَا  | أَنْتَ   | Masculine |

|               |   |   |   |          |
|---------------|---|---|---|----------|
|               | <p>Past:</p> <p>أَصْبَحْتُمْ</p> <p>All of You became</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تُصْبِحُونَ</p> <p>All of You are becoming</p>                         | <p>Past:</p> <p>أَصْبَحْتُمَا</p> <p>You Two became</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تُصْبِحَانِ</p> <p>You two are becoming</p>                          | <p>Past:</p> <p>أَصْبَحْتَ</p> <p>You became (Man)</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تُصْبِحُ</p> <p>You are becoming</p>                    |          |
|               |   |   |   |          |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>أَصْبَحْتُنَّ</p> <p>All of You (Women) became</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تُصْبِحْنَ</p> <p>All of You (Women) are</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>أَصْبَحْتُمَا</p> <p>You Two became (Women)</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تُصْبِحَانِ</p> <p>You two are becoming</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>أَصْبَحْتَ</p> <p>You (Woman) became</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>تُصْبِحِينَ</p> <p>You are becoming</p> | Feminine |

|              | becoming  | (Women) | (Woman)  |      |
|--------------|---|---------|--|------|
| First Person | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>أَصْبَحْنَا</p> <p>We became</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>نُصْبِحُ</p> <p>We are becoming</p> |         | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>Past:</p> <p>أَصْبَحْتُ</p> <p>I became</p> <p>Present:</p> <p>أُصْبِحُ</p> <p>I am becoming</p> | Both |

لَيْسَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past Tense

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular                                      | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|---|---|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>لَيْسُوا</p> <p>They are not</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>لَيْسَا</p> <p>Both of them are</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>لَيْسَ</p> <p>He/it is not</p> | Masculine |

|               |  |   |   |           |
|---------------|--|---|---|-----------|
|               |  | not   |   |           |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>لَسْنَ<br>They<br>(Women) are<br>not              | هُمَا<br>لَيْسَتَا<br>Both of<br>them are<br>not        | هِيَ<br>لَيْسَتْ<br>She/It is<br>not          | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>لَسْتُمْ<br>All of You<br>are not              | أَنْتُمَا<br>لَسْتُمَا<br>You Two<br>are not            | أَنْتَ<br>لَسْتَ<br>You are<br>not            | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>لَسْتُنَّ<br>All of You<br>(Women) are<br>not | أَنْتُمَا<br>لَسْتُمَا<br>You Two<br>(Women)<br>are not | أَنْتِ<br>لَسْتِ<br>You<br>(Woman)<br>are not | Feminine  |

|              |   |                                     |      |
|--------------|---|-------------------------------------|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br><br>لَسْنَا<br><br>We are not | أَنَا<br><br>لَسْتُ<br><br>I am not | Both |
|--------------|---|-------------------------------------|------|

### Complex Sentence Structure

In a normal Noun Sentence – the Khabr can be a Noun or a Verb Sentence

In a Fi'l Naqis Noun Sentence – the Khabr can only be a Verb Sentence

In Present Fi'l which comes after كَانَ – it can mean “was/were doing something” or “used to doing something”

Example:

“I used to work” or “I was working” – context/meaning is used to identify which is the correct meaning.

Mubtada and Khabr match in Gender and Number (just like normal Noun Sentences) - the Pronoun inside the Mubtada كَانَ will match the pronoun inside the Present Fi'l which comes after it

كَانَ usually comes with Present/Future tense Fi'l – rarely comes with Past Tense Fi'l

كَانَ Comes before Past Tense Fi'l - implies the event occurred a long time ago and occurred once

كَانَ Comes before Present Tense Fi'l - implies a continuous past tense action

### Example

كُنَّا نَتَحَدَّثُ – We were talking

A Noun sentence because of كَانَ

كُنَّا - Muftada – Pronoun inside is نَحْنُ - We

نَتَحَدَّثُ - Khabr – Present Fi'l – Nasab Status (Khabr of كَانَ is Nasab)

Pronoun inside is نَحْنُ – We (matches Pronoun of كُنَّا )

The Khabr is a Present Fi'l – a Verb Sentence by itself

### Negating كَانَ Sentences

Negated in the same way as a Verb Sentence (even though it is a Noun Sentence) – as they begin with a Fi'l (an Incomplete one)

### Past Negation

مَا - used with Past Tense Form كَانَ



لَمْ - means: "did not" – used with Present Tense Form يَكُونُ and makes it in Lightest form – يَكُنْ – NOTE the وَ is dropped for ease of speech

### Examples

كَانَ طَالِبٌ – He was a student

مَا كَانَ طَالِبٌ – He was not a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

كَانَ طَالِبٌ – He was a student

لَمْ يَكُنْ طَالِبٌ – He was not a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

### Present Negation

Use لَا and مَا - both used with Present Tense Form يَكُونُ

### Examples

يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is a student

مَا يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is not a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is a student

لَا يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is not a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

### Future Negation

Use لَنْ - means: will not – used with Present Tense Form يَكُونُ and makes it in Light form – يَكُونَنَّ

### Examples

يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is a student

لَنْ يَكُونَ طَالِبٌ – He will not be a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Ism vs Fi'l

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

The following helps to distinguish if a word is an Ism or a Fi'l

### Fi'l

Does not have a Tanween on it

Does not have ال on it

Does not have ة on it

If the first letter is ي or ت – and ends with ون/ين = Fi'l

If word comes after قَدْ or س or سَوْفَ = Fi'l

### Ism

Can have a Tanween on it

Can have ال on it

Can have ة on it

If the first letter is NOT ي or ت – and ends with ون/ين = Ism

Word comes after Harf of Jar/Jaar or Harf of Nasab or Special Mudhaf = Ism

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Question Words

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Most question words – no grammatical effect on other words

Added to the beginning of Noun Sentences and Verb Sentences

Some Question Words

| Question Word | Meaning | Example in Noun Sentence       | Example in Verb Sentence   |
|---------------|---------|--------------------------------|--|
| أَيُّ         | Which   | أَيُّ هُوَ ؟<br>(which is it?) | فِي أَيِّ مَكَانٍ تَعْمَلُ ؟<br>(In which place do you work in? – or In which place does she work in?) |

|                 |                                   |   |   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| هَلْ / أَ       | Questions with a Yes or No Answer | هَلْ أَنْتَ<br>جَائِعٌ؟ (are you (masculine) hungry?)           | هَلْ تَأْكُلُ؟<br>(are you eating? - or is she eating?)       |
| كَيْفَ          | How                               | كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟<br>(how are you (masculine)?)                   | كَيْفَ فَعَلْتَ<br>ذَلِكَ؟ (How did you (masculine) do that?) |
| لِمَ / لِمَاذَا | Why                               | لِمَاذَا أَنْتَ<br>سَعِيدٌ؟ (why are you (masculine) happy?)    | لِمَاذَا أَكَلْتَ؟<br>(why did you (masculine) eat?)          |
| أَيْنَ          | Where                             | أَيْنَ أَنْتَ<br>ذَاهِبٌ؟<br>(where are you (masculine) going?) | أَيْنَ ذَهَبْتَ؟<br>(where did you (masculine) go?)           |
| مَاذَا / مَا    | What                              | مَا هُوَ الْيَوْمَ؟<br>(what day is it?)                        | مَاذَا فَعَلْتَ؟<br>(what did you (masculine) do?)            |
| مَنْ            | Who                               | مَنْ أَنْتَ؟<br>(Who are you                                    | مَنْ يَأْكُلُ؟<br>(who (masculine)                            |

|          |  |   |   |
|----------|--|---|---|
|          |  | (masculine)?                                | is eating?)   |
| مَتَى    | When   | مَتَى الْرَحْلَةُ؟<br>(when is the flight?) | مَتَى سَيَأْتِي الْعِقَابُ؟<br>(when will the punishment come?) |
| أَيَّانَ | When (asked in a surprising or sarcastic tone) |   |   |
| أَنَّى   | How (asked in a surprising or sarcastic tone)  |   |   |

NOTE: with مَا – it merges with Harf of Jar and the Alif in مَا is dropped – replaced with Fatah

### Examples

عَمَّ يَتَسَاءَلُونَ – What are they all asking each other about?

عَمَّ – مَا question word (What) with عَنْ Harf of Jar (About)

مَا loses Alif – merges with عَنْ and takes on Fatah so meaning is “About What?”



فِي مَآ – becomes فِيمَ – “In What” question

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Negation

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Some methods of negation apply:

1. Only to Noun Sentences
2. Only to Verb Sentence
3. Some apply to both

### Negating Verb Sentences

#### Past Tense Negation

##### 2 Ways

1. لَمْ followed by Present Tense Fi'l – Gives Past Tense meaning –

“Did not” and causes the Present Tense to take the Lightest Form

Used for confirmation of negative action i.e. statement instead of refutation

Example: He did not go to school

2. مَا followed by Past Tense Fi'l – Does not affect Grammar of other

words

Used for negation as a refutation

Example: No (you are wrong), He did not go to school

### Present Tense Negation

#### 2 Ways

1. لَا followed by Present Tense Fi'l – does not affect the grammar of

other words (different from لَا of Forbidding)

Used for confirmation of negative action i.e. statement instead of refutation

Example: He did not go to school

2. مَا followed by Present Tense Fi'l – Does not affect grammar of other

words

Used for negation as a refutation

Example: No (you are wrong), He did not go to school

### Future Tense Negation

1. لَنْ followed by Present Tense Fi'l - Gives Future Tense meaning –

“Will not” and causes the Present Tense Fi'l to take the Light Form

NOTE:

لَمَّا – which means “Not yet” and causes the Present Tense Fi'l to take the Lightest Form – is also used for negation

Not linked to a particular tense – depends on context/meaning

It can also mean “when”

### Negating Noun Sentences

#### 2 Tools used for Negating Noun Sentences

1. مَا - Used for negation as a refutation

Example: No (you are wrong), He did not go to school

2. لَيْسَ – Used for confirmation of negative action i.e. statement

instead of refutation

Example: He did not go to school

These 2 tools can be used in 4 ways

1. مَا Followed by Muftada – and Khabr is in Nasab Status (in this case

it is a sister of كَانِ)

2. مَا Followed by Muftada – and بِ (Harf of Jar) is added to Khabr

and therefore makes it Jar Status

3. لَيْسَ Followed by Muftada – and Khabr is in Nasab Status (it is a

sister of كَانِ)

4. لَيْسَ Followed by Muftada – and بِ (Harf of Jar) is added to

Khabr and therefore makes it Jar Status

NOTE: Muftada is Grammatically unaffected in each case

بِ (Harf of Jar/Jaar) - is added for emphasizing the negation - meaning “not at all”

It does not change the meaning e.g. “with” is not added to the meaning of the sentence

The Khabr with this type of بِ is still a Khabr – it does not become a Mootalik Bil Khabr (which normally occurs with Harf of Jar in Noun sentences)

The مَا or لَيْسَ has no effect on an actual Mootalik Bil Khabr

Example

الرَّجُلُ مُؤْمِنٌ – The man is a believer

Four ways of Negation – The man is not a believer

مَا الرَّجُلُ مُؤْمِنٌ

Khabr of مَا is Nasab – مُؤْمِنٌ

## مَا الرَّجُلُ بِمُؤْمِنٍ

Khabr of مَا is usually Nasab – مُؤْمِنٌ – but Harf of Jar بِ makes it Jar status

## لَيْسَ الرَّجُلُ مُؤْمِنًا

(Khabr of لَيْسَ is Nasab - مُؤْمِنٌ)

## لَيْسَ الرَّجُلُ بِمُؤْمِنٍ

Khabr of لَيْسَ is usually Nasab – مُؤْمِنٌ – but Harf of Jar بِ makes it Jar status

## لَيْسَ

Is a Past Tense Irregular Fi'l – Fi'l Naqis

When Muftada being negated is a Pronoun – Independent Pronoun not used – instead the Inside Pronoun of لَيْسَ is used

## لَيْسَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past Tense

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular   | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|---|--|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>لَيْسُوا</p> <p>They are not</p>           | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>لَيْسَا</p> <p>Both of them are not</p>   | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>لَيْسَ</p> <p>He/it is not</p>    | Masculine |
| Third Person       | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>لَسْنَ</p> <p>They (Women) are not</p>    | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>لَيْسَتَا</p> <p>Both of them are not</p> | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>لَيْسَتْ</p> <p>She/It is not</p> | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>لَسْتُمْ</p> <p>All of You are not</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>لَسْتُمَا</p> <p>You Two are not</p>  | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>لَسْتَ</p> <p>You are not</p>   | Masculine |
| Second             | <p>أَنْتِنَّ</p>  | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p>  | <p>أَنْتِ</p>                                    | Feminine  |



|              |   |  |                                     |  |
|--------------|---|--|-------------------------------------|--|
| Person       | لَسْتُنَّ<br>All of You<br>(Women) are<br>not | لَسْتُمَا<br>You Two<br>(Women)<br>are not | لَسْتَ<br>You<br>(Woman)<br>are not |  |
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>لَسْنَا<br>We are not               | أَنَا<br>لَسْتُ<br>I Did not               | Both                                |  |

NOTE: the ي is dropped from هُنَّ onwards

### Examples

لَسْتُ مُؤْمِنٌ - I am not a believer

لَسْتُ - Mubtada - أَنَا version – Masculine (assumed) and Singular

Khabr of لَيْسَ forms is Nasab – مُؤْمِنٌ – Masculine and Singular

The Number and Gender must match between the لَيْسَ form and the Khabr

In the example, both are Masculine and Single

لَسْنَ مُؤْمِنَاتٍ – Those are not believing women

لَسْنَ - Muftada - هُنَّ version – Feminine and Plural

Khabr of لَيْسَ forms is Nasab - مُؤْمِنَاتٍ - Feminine and Plural

The Number and Gender must match between the لَيْسَ form and the Khabr

In the example, both are Feminine and Plural

### Absolute Categorical Negation

Only in Noun Sentences

Means: Absolutely not – negates all possibility

Made up of

لا – a type called Nafeeyahtu Lilginsee - النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ –

Followed by Ism – which is Light and in Nasab Status

Both together – make the Muftada

NOTE: Nafeeyahtu Lilginsee is 3<sup>rd</sup> reason to make an Ism light (1<sup>st</sup>: Mudhaf, 2<sup>nd</sup>: Partly Flexible Words)

### Example

لَا ضَيْرَ – Absolutely no harm •

لَا - Nafeeyahtu Lilginsee

ضَيْرَ – Ism – which is Light and Nasab status

### Negating Tools for Noun and Verb Sentences

#### 2 Tools

1. إِنْ + إِلَّا – more emphatic

2. مَا + إِلَّا

Both create “nothing but” meaning

Example:

He is “nothing but” a human

In Noun Sentence meaning = A is nothing but Y

In Verb Sentence meaning = A did/does nothing but Y

Both have no grammatical effect on other words

If they are removed – normal positive sentence remains

Example:

He is “nothing but” a human

“nothing but” removed = He is a human

### Examples

#### Noun Sentences

إِنَّ هَذَا إِلَّا مَلَكٌ كَرِيمٌ - This is “nothing but” a noble Angel

مَا هِيَ إِلَّا حَيَاتُنَا الدُّنْيَا – It is “nothing but” our worldly life

#### Verb Sentence

مَا نَقَمُوا إِلَّا أَنْ أَغْنَاهُمُ اللَّهُ – They resented “nothing except” that Allah (SWT) had enriched them

مِنْ الزَّائِدَةِ - Min Zaeeda

A Zaeeda word can attach to an Ism without changing its role in the sentence – but creates an emphasized effect in the meaning.

Min Zaeeda – creates – “not a single” or “any”

### Conditions for Min Zaeeda

1. Comes in Negating sentence or Questioning Sentence
2. Next word will always be Common
3. Sentence still makes sense if it is removed

### Examples

Noun Sentence

مَا لَهُ مَالٌ – He does not have wealth

مَا لَهُ مِنْ مَالٍ – He does not have “any” wealth

Min Zaeeda attaches to Muftada (مَالٌ) – and makes it Jar Status

Verb Sentence

مَا يَضْرِبُ الرَّجُلُ أَحَدًا – the man did not hit anyone

مَا يَضْرِبُ الرَّجُلُ مِنْ أَحَدٍ – the man did not hit a “single” person

Min Zaeeda can attach to the Doer (Far'il) or a Mafool Beehee (أَحَدًا) and makes it Jar Status

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## The Compound Ism

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

When a part of a sentence functions like an ordinary Ism

### 2 Tools for making Compound Isms

1. أَنْ – which makes a Present/Future Tense Fi'l Light
2. أَنَّ – Harf of Nasab – makes its Ism into Nasab status

### أَنَّ الْمَصْدَرِيَّةَ

Transforms a Verb sentence into an Ism

Usually comes with Present/Future Tense even when speaking about the Past

### Example

أَنْ تَصُومُوا خَيْرٌ لَكُمْ – That you all fast is better for you all

أَنْ تَصُومُوا - is acting as the Muftada

خَيْرٌ – Khabr

لَكُمْ - Mootalik Bil Khabr

أَنْ – Changed the Verb sentence into a Compound Ism

أَنَّ

Changes a Noun Sentence into a Compound Ism

### Example

حَتَّى يَتَبَيَّنَ لَهُمُ أَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ - Until it becomes clear to them that it is the truth

يَتَبَيَّنَ - acts like a Outside Doer for the Present Tense Fi'l (in Light version because of حَتَّى)



NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Miscellaneous Words

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

إِذْ

Special Mudhaf of Time and Place - Zharf

Means “when” - translates in the Past Tense always

Comes with Noun and Verb Sentences

Comes with Present/Future and Past Tense Fi'l

Example

إِذْ تَذْهَبُ – When you left

تَذْهَبُ - is Present tense but still translated in the Past tense because of

إِذْ

إِذَا

Special Mudhaf of Time and Place - Zharf

Means “suddenly” – when it comes before a Noun Sentence - إِذَا

الْفُجَائِيَّةُ

Comes with Noun and Verb Sentences

Comes with Present/Future and Past Tense Fi'l

When it comes before a Fi'l – it creates a Conditional Statement (When A happens, B will happen...) - إِذَا الشَّرْطِيَّةُ - Means “when” - translates in the Future Tense when it comes before a Verb Sentence

If it comes with Past Tense Fi'l – indicates a single event (still translated into the Future)

If it comes with Present/Future Tense Fi'l – indicates a repeated event (still translated into the Future)

### Examples

Noun Sentence

فَإِذَا هِيَ تُعَبَّانُ مُبَيَّنٌ - Then, suddenly, it became a manifest snake

Verb Sentence

إِذَا ذَهَبْتَ إِلَى بَيْتِكَ تَأْكُلُ – When you go to your house, you will eat

ذَهَبْتَ – Past Tense Fi'l but translated into future tense because of إِذَا

Condition statement created

يَوْمَ

Special Mudhaf of Time and Place - Zharf

Means “day” – translates to meaning “the day on which”

Comes with Noun and Present/Future tense Verb Sentences

Example

يَوْمَ تَشْهَدُ عَلَيْهِمُ أَلْسِنُهُمْ – The day on which, their tongues will testify against them

قَدْ

Means – “already” used for emphasis

Only comes with Verb sentences

Has no grammatical effect on other words

With a Past Tense Fi'l called حَرْفُ تَحْقِيقٍ

With a Present Tense Fi'l called حَرْفُ تَقْلِيلٍ

سَ / سَوْفَ

Only with Present Tense Fi'l

Pushes meaning into Future Tense

Has no grammatical effect on other words

سَوْفَ - translates as “soon” in the future (more of a nearer event then  
(سَ)

Example

سَوْفَ تَعْلَمُونَ - Very soon, you all will know

Translated into the Future Tense

إِمَّا

Means “either”

Always used twice in sentence “either A or b”

Has no grammatical effect on other words

Called - حَرْفُ تَخْيِيرٍ

Example

إِمَّا أَنْ تَذْهَبَ إِمَّا لَا – Either you go or not

أَفْعَالُ الشُّرُوعِ - Fi'l Shuruee

These Fi'ls come before another Fi'l to indicate the beginning of an action

Example:

Yusuf began eating

Fi'l Shuruee - began

Normal Fi'l – eating

The Fi'l Shuruee can have an Outside Doer like a normal Fi'l

Some Fi'l Shuruee

| Fi'l            | Meaning  |
|-----------------|--|
| طَفِقَ يَطْفِقُ | To begin quickly   |
| بَدَأَ يَبْدَأُ | To begin   |
| جَعَلَ يَجْعَلُ | To begin – when used as a Fi'l Shuruee<br>To make – when used normally       |
| أَخَذَ يَأْخُذُ | To begin – when used as a Fi'l Shuruee<br>To take/seize – when used normally |

### Showing Surprise – تَعَجُّبٌ

Can be used to show a negative or a positive amazement/surprise

#### Examples

A Positive Amazement: How smart he is!

A Negative Amazement: How rude he is!

#### Examples

نِعْمَ – shows Positive Amazement

بِئْسَ – shows Negative Amazement

They are both Fi'l

Both are Lazim (Intransitive) – do not take a Mafool Beehee

Often followed by an Ism in Rafa status – the Outside Doer

In the Holy Quran only the هُوَ versions of the Fi'l are used

### Examples

بِئْسَ الْمِهَادُ - What are terrible resting place!

نِعْمَ الثَّوَابُ - What an excellent reward!

### مَا أَفْعَلَهُ

Translates as “How...he is”

Made up 3 Parts:

1. مَا – مَا of showing astonishment



2. Second word – tells what the shocking trait is and follows pattern

أَفْعَلْ

3. Last word – explains who possesses the shocking trait

### Examples

مَا أَكْفَرُهُ - How disbelieving he is!

مَا أَخْمَقَهَا – How foolish she is!

أَفْعَلُ بِهِ

Translates as “How...he is”

### Made up of 2 Parts:

1. First Word – mentions the shocking trait – follows pattern – أَفْعَلْ

2. A Harf of Jar بِ with a Majroor attached to it - explains who

possesses the shocking trait

### Example

أَسْمِعْ بِهِمْ وَأَبْصِرْ - How (amazingly) they will hear and see

### Ataf upon Pronoun

An Ataf (Connecting word) such as **وَ** can only come between two similar words e.g. 2 Isms

### Example

I and my brother ate:

أَكَلْتُ وَأَخِي – This would be wrong as an Ataf cannot come between a Fi'l and an Ism

أَكَلْتُ أَنَا وَأَخِي – Correct way – the Pronoun أَنَا within the Fi'l (أَكَلْتُ) is pulled out so that the Ataf **وَ** comes in between 2 Isms

أَ and أَمْ

When they come together they produce a meaning “whether.....or whether...”

### Example

أَمْ أَنْذَرْتَهُمْ أَمْ لَمْ تُنذِرْهُمْ – whether you warn them or whether you do not warn them

إِسْمٌ تَفْضِيلٌ – Comparatives/Superlatives - Ism Tafdeel

Follows the pattern: أَفْعَلُ

An Ism Tafdeel can become a Superlative when:

1. When ال is added to it
2. When the Ism Tafdeel is a Mudhaf

### Examples

| Ism Tafdeel/Comparative | Meaning | Superlative | Meaning      |
|-------------------------|---------|-------------|--------------|
| أَكْبَرُ                | Greater | الْأَكْبَرُ | The greatest |
| أَكْثَرُ                | More    | الْأَكْثَرُ | The most     |
| أَحْسَنُ                | Better  | الْأَحْسَنُ | The best     |

Ism Tafdeel as a Mudhaf can take 3 Forms

| Ism Tafdeel/Comparative as a Mudhaf | Meaning                       | Characteristics                      |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| أَكْبَرُ الْكِتَابِ                 | The greatest part of the book | Mudhaf Alia is – Singular and Proper |
| أَكْبَرُ الْكُتُبِ                  | The greatest of the books     | Mudhaf Alia is – Plural and Proper   |
| أَكْبَرُ كِتَابٍ                    | The greatest book             | Mudhaf Alia is – Singular and Common |

أَلَا - to/that not

Combination of لا of negation and أَنْ

أَنْ – makes the Present Tense Fi'l in Light Form

Example

وَمَا لَكُمْ إِلَّا تَأْكُلُوا – And what is wrong with you all that you do not eat

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

# إِسْمُ الْمَوْضُوعِ وَصِلَتُهُ - Ism Mowsool

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

A Compound Ism

Made up of 2 Parts:

1. Ism Mowsool - **إِسْمُ الْمَوْضُوعِ**
2. Seelatun – **صِلَةٌ** – sentence that comes directly after Ism Mowsool

Ends when there is no grammatical connection between a word and the next one

The Ism Mowsool Chart

Ism Mowsool Chart

|                       |                         |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
|                       | مَنْ                    | مَا                     |
|                       | Whoever                 | Whatever                |
| Plural                | Dual                    | Single                  |
| الَّذِينَ             | الَّذَانِ               | الَّذِي                 |
| Those who (Masculine) | The two who (Masculine) | The one who (Masculine) |
| الَّتِي<br>الَّتِي    | الَّتَانِ               | الَّتِي                 |
| Those who (Feminine)  | The two who (Feminine)  | The one who (Feminine)  |

The Dual Forms are Fully Flexible

All the Rest are Non-Flexible

Uses of Ism Mowsool

On a Sentence Level they can act like a:

1. Fi'l
2. Mafool
3. Masdar
4. Khabr
5. Outside Doer

On a Fragment Level they can act like a:

1. Siffa
2. Mudhaf Alai
3. Ism of Harf of Nasab **إِنَّ**
4. Majroor
5. Outside Doer

The Aareedun **عَائِدُ**

Aareedun is a Pronoun connected to the Seelatun which refers back to the Ism Mowsool

Pronoun appears as: Attached, Independent, Inside or Implied

Aareedun Matches in Number and Gender to Ism Mowsool

It is ignored when translating into English



Attached Aareedun – required when Ism Mawsool and the subject of the Seelatun are discussing different things

### Example

رَأَيْتُ الَّذِي ضَرَبَ - I saw the one who hit

Ism Mawsool – الَّذِي

Seelatun – ضَرَبَ – Past Tense Fi'l

The Ism Mawsool الَّذِي is talking about the person who hit

The Seelatun ضَرَبَ is also talking about the person who hit

Attached Aareedun not required

رَأَيْتُ الَّتِي ضَرَبَهَا - I saw the one (feminine) who he hit

Ism Mawsool – الَّتِي – Singular and Feminine

Seelatun – ضَرَبَ – Past Tense Fi'l (Singular and Masculine)

Aareedun – Attached Pronoun هَا - Singular and Feminine

The Ism Mawsool **الَّتِي** is talking about the woman who was hit

The Seelatun **ضَرَبَ** is talking about the man who hit her

Attached Aareedun is required to show the Ism Mawsool is referring to the woman who was hit and not the man who hit her

If the Ism Mawsool was referring to the man who hit her – it would be **الَّذِي** (Single and Masculine) – which would then match the Fi'l **ضَرَبَ** in Number and Gender

When the Fi'l is a Siffa (description)

A Proper Ism is followed by an Ism Mawsool to make a Fi'l which comes after the Ism Mawsool a Siffa (Seelatun which acts as a Siffa)

Example

الرَّجُلُ الَّذِي يَتَحَدَّثُ – A man who is talking

Ism Mawsool is needed as the Ism is Proper **الرَّجُلُ** – the Ism Mawsool makes the Fi'l that comes after it **يَتَحَدَّثُ** – a Siffa – a description

Ism and the Ism Mawsool must match in Gender and Number

**الرَّجُلُ** – Ism – Masculine and Singular

**الَّذِي** – Ism Mawsool – Masculine and Singular

A Common Ism does not need to be followed by an Ism Mawsool to make a Fi'l which comes after the Ism Mawsool a Siffa (Seelatun which acts as a Siffa)

### Example

رَجُلٌ يَتَحَدَّثُ – A man talking

Ism Mawsool is not needed as the Ism is Common then followed by a Fi'l - which acts a Siffa – a description

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Conditional Statement - الْجُمْلَةُ الشَّرْطِيَّةُ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Conditional statement is made of 2 parts/statements:

1. The Condition - الشَّرْطُ
2. The Response of the Condition - جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ

Even though most conditional statements translate into the Present/Future tense irrespective of what tense is used within the conditional statement but:

When the Past Tense is used it usually indicates a single event

When the Present Tense is used it usually indicates a recurring event

### Example

If you go to school, I will give you a present

The Condition: If you go to school

The Response of the Condition: I will give you a present

### Tools of Conditional Statements

1. Tools that make both parts of the Conditional Statement in Lightest

Form (when dealing with Present Tense) - **أَدَوَاتُ الشَّرْطِ**

**الْجَازِمَةُ**

2. Tools that have no grammatical effect on other words - **أَدَوَاتٌ غَيْرُ**

**جَازِمَةٍ**

Not all tools which create a Conditional Statement will do so in every case, as many of these tools are used in other grammatical ways. Context/meaning and grammatical changes must be observed to determine whether a statement is conditional or not

### Tools that change Grammar **أَدَوَاتُ الشَّرْطِ الْجَازِمَةُ**

Different Tools with unique meanings but same grammatical rules:

1. Tools make both the Condition and the Response of the Condition in

Lightest form (when they are in Present Tense)

2. Translated in Present Tense (even when Past Tense is used)

3. Sometimes **فَ** is added to the Response of the Condition – usually

when the Condition and the Response of the Condition are different

e.g. one is Present Tense and the other is Past Tense or one is Fi'l

and the other is an Ism

إِنْ – If

Examples

إِنْ عُدْتُمْ عُدْنَا – If you all return, We will return

The Condition: إِنْ عُدْتُمْ

Response of the Condition: عُدْنَا

Both are Past Tense Fi'l but translated in the Present Tense

إِنْ تُصِيبْكُمْ سَيِّئَةٌ يَفْرَحُوا بِهَا – If evil strikes you all, they are happy with it

The Condition: إِنْ تُصِيبْكُمْ سَيِّئَةٌ - Present Tense in Lightest Form

Normal Form: تُصِيبُكُمْ – Lightest Form: تُصِيبُكُمْ

Response of the Condition: يَفْرَحُوا بِهَا - Present Tense in Lightest Form

Normal Form: يَفْرَحُونَ – Lightest Form: يَفْرَحُوا

إِنْ تَكْفُرُوا فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ غَنِيٌّ عَنْكُمْ - If you all disbelieve, then Allah is Free from need of you all

The Condition: إِنْ تَكْفُرُوا - Present Tense in Lightest form

Response of the Condition: فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ غَنِيٌّ عَنْكُمْ

Noun Sentence

**ف** is added to the Response of the Condition – as the Condition (Verb Sentence - Present Tense) and the Response of the Condition (Noun Sentence) are different

مَنْ - Whoever

Different from the مَنْ which is an Ism Mawsool

### Example

مَنْ يَتَوَكَّلْ عَلَى اللَّهِ فَهُوَ حَسْبُهُ - Whoever places trust upon Allah (SWT) then He will suffice him

The Condition: مَنْ يَتَوَكَّلْ عَلَى اللَّهِ Present Tense in Lightest form

Response of the Condition: فَهُوَ حَسْبُهُ

Noun Sentence

ف is added to the Response of the Condition – as the Condition (Verb Sentence - Present Tense) and the Response of the Condition (Noun Sentence) are different

### مَا - Whatever

Different from the مَا which is an Ism Mawsool

Often comes with مِنْ (from) which acts as a clarifier of the “whatever” condition

### Example

مَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ بِهِ عَلِيمٌ - Whatever you all do from any good, then indeed Allah (SWT) is All Knowing of it



The Condition: مَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ - Present Tense in Lightest form

Response of the Condition: فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ بِهِ عَلِيمٌ

Noun Sentence

ف is added to the Response of the Condition – as the Condition (Verb Sentence - Present Tense) and the Response of the Condition (Noun Sentence) are different

أَيْنَمَا - Wherever

Example

أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا يُدْرِكُكُمُ الْمَوْتُ - Wherever you all may be, Death will overtake you all

The Condition: أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا - Present Tense in Lightest form

Response of the Condition: يُدْرِكُكُمُ الْمَوْتُ

Present Tense in Lightest form (no ف needed)

## أَدَوَاتٌ غَيْرُ جَازِمَةٍ - Tools that do not change Grammar

There are two types – which have own meaning and rules

### لَوْ - Had

Has no grammatical effect on other words

Used for highly unlikely or hypothetical cases

Means: “Had...” or “Had it been the case...”

Translates in the Past Tense

Often find **لَ** on the Response of the Condition – which means “then”

### Example

لَوْ يُطِيعُكُمْ فِي كَثِيرٍ مِّنَ الْأَمْرِ لَعَنِتُّمْ – Had, he obeyed you all in much of the matter, then you all would be in difficulty

An unlikely/hypothetical event

The Condition: لَوْ يُطِيعُكُمْ فِي كَثِيرٍ مِّنَ الْأَمْرِ

لَوْ - has no grammatical effect on the other words

Response of the Condition: **لَعَنِتُّمْ**

ل on the Response of the Condition – meaning “then”

## إِذَا - When

Has no grammatical effect on other words

Used for highly likely events

With Present Tense – translated in Present/Future Tense and indicates repeated event

With Past Tense – translated in Present/Future Tense and indicates a single event

Sometimes **فَ** is added to the Response of the Condition – usually when the Condition and the Response of the Condition are different e.g. one is Present Tense and the other is Past Tense or one is Fi'l and the other is an Ism

Means “suddenly” – when it comes before a Noun Sentence - **إِذَا**  
**الْفُجَائِيَّةُ**

## Example

– إِذَا جَاءَ نَصْرُ اللَّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ..... فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ

When the help of Allah and the victory comes...then glorify with praise of your Lord and seek His forgiveness

A highly likely event

The Condition: إِذَا جَاءَ نَصْرُ اللَّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ

إِذَا - has no grammatical effect on the other words

Response of the Condition: فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ

ف is added to the Response of the Condition – as the Condition (Verb Sentence - Past Tense) and the Response of the Condition (Verb Sentence – Command Form) are different

Translated in Present/Future Tense

Command and Response of Command - الْأَمْرُ وَجَوَابُ الْأَمْرِ

Translated in Present/Future Tense

Made up of 2 Parts:

1. The Command – Fi'l Command Form
2. Response of the Command – explains what will happen when the command is fulfilled

Not all Commands have a Response of the Command

Example: Work! You will earn money

The Command: Work!

Response of the Command: You will earn money

### Rules

The Command – is a normal Fi'l Command Form structure

Response of the Command – is in Lightest Form

### Example

إِتَّبِعُونِ أَهْدِيكُمْ – You all follow me, then I will guide you all

The Command: إِتَّبِعُونِ

Response of the Command: أَهْدِيكُمْ - Present Tense in Lightest Form

### فَاءُ السَّبَبِيَّةِ - Faa Sababiya

Similar to Command and Response of Command but used for Forbidding

Translates as “Don’t do...otherwise...”

### Made of 3 Parts:

1. Forbidding Statement
2. Faa Sababiya

### 3. Fi'l after the Faa Sababiya – which is in Light version

#### Example

وَلَا تَرْتَدُّوا عَلَىٰ أَدْبَارِكُمْ فَتَنْقَلِبُوا خُسِرِينَ - You all do not turn back upon your heels otherwise you will turn back as losers

لَا تَرْتَدُّوا – Forbidding Statement

فَتَنْقَلِبُوا – the Faa Sababiya فَ attached to the Fi'l in Light version

#### Faa Sababiya as a Wish/Desire

Faa Sababiya can also be used in a statement which mentions a wish or a desire

Again – the Faa Sababiya will attach to the Fi'l (after the wish and desire) and make the Fi'l in Light Version

Can translate to mean “as a result”

#### Example

لَعَلِّي أَبْلُغُ الْأَسْبَابَ ۖ الْأَسْبَابَ السَّمَوَاتِ فَأَطَّلِعَ إِلَىٰ إِلَهِ مُوسَىٰ -

Perhaps I will reach the means, the means to the skies, then (as a result) I will look at the God of Musa.

لَعَلِّي أَبْلُغُ الْأَسْبَابَ<sup>ل</sup> أَسْبَابَ السَّمَوَاتِ - the statement showing a desire/wish

فَأَطَّلَعَ - the Faa Sabibiya فَ attached to the Fi'l in Light version

Some words which are used to express a desire or a wish:

| Word          | Meaning                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| لَيْتَ        | If only (Harf of Nasab)     |
| لَعَلَّ       | Perhaps (Harf of Nasab)     |
| عَسَى         | Hopefully/Perhaps           |
| لَوْ/ لَوْلَا | If/Had/                     |
| هَلْ          | Did/Is (Yes or no question) |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## الْحَالُ - Haal - Condition/State

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Gives information about the state or condition of something/someone when the action is carried out

Answers the question – how did it happen

The person or thing in that state is called the Companion of the State/Haal -

صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ

### Examples

Yusuf studied while tired

Action: studied

Companion of the State: Yusuf

Condition: while tired

The man came down slowly



Action: came down

Companion of the State: The man

Condition: slowly

Yusuf went to college moaning

Action: went to college

Companion of the State: Yusuf

Condition: moaning

When translating a condition it appears as:

1. An adverb “-ly”
2. “-ing” words
3. With words “while” or “as”

Rules of Condition/Haal:

Only appears in a complete sentence

Companion of Haal/State – is Proper

If Haal removed – sentence is still complete in Arabic grammar

Haal appears in 1 of 3 Forms:

1. Ism in Nasab Status

2. Verb Sentence

3. Noun Sentence that starts with **وَحَالِيَّةٍ - و**

### Examples

Yusuf studied while tired – Yusuf studied

The man came down slowly - The man came down

Yusuf went to college moaning - Yusuf went to college

Haal/State is removed and sentences still make sense

### Haal as an Ism

Usually appears as an Ism Far'il or Ism Mafool

Sometimes as Ism Siffa and Masdar

Haal and Companion of the Haal – matches in Gender and Number

Ism is in Nasab status

### Example

فَخَرَجَ مِنْهَا خَائِفًا – then he left from it while afraid

Action: **خَرَجَ**

Companion of the Haal: “He” – Hidden Pronoun هُوَ inside the Fi’l خَرَجَ (Singular and Masculine)

Haal: خَائِفًا – while afraid

Haal is Ism Far’il in Nasab Status

Haal Matches in Gender and Number to the Companion of the Haal – Singular and Masculine

### Verb Sentence as a Haal

Often shows as 2 Verb Sentences next to each other

Haal only appears in a complete sentence

### Example

#### Present Tense

يَذَرُهُمْ فِي طُغْيَانِهِمْ يَعْمَهُونَ - He leaves them in their transgression while they are wandering blindly

Action: يَذَرُ

Companion of the Haal: “them” Attached Pronoun هُمْ of Fi’l يَذَرُ (Plural and Masculine)

Haal: يَعْمَهُونَ – Present Tense Fi’l (Plural and Masculine)

Haal Matches in Gender and Number to the Companion of the Haal – Plural and Masculine

### Past Tense

When Past Tense is a Haal – وَقَدْ – comes before it

Means: “while...has” or “while...already has”

There is no Companion of the Haal

### Example

لَا تَخْتَصِمُوا لَدَيَّ وَقَدْ قَدَّمْتُ إِلَيْكُم بِالْوَعِيدِ – Do not dispute in

My presence while already I had sent forward to you all the warning

وَقَدْ - وَقَدْ قَدَّمْتُ إِلَيْكُم بِالْوَعِيدِ comes before the Past Tense Fi'l acting as a Haal

### Noun Sentence as a Haal

Always starts with a وَ حَالِيَّةٍ - وَ

وَ often is followed by an Independent Pronoun

### Example

مَنْ عَمِلَ صَالِحًا مِّنْ ذَكَرٍ أَوْ أَنْثَىٰ وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ فَلَنُحْيِيَنَّهٗ حَيٰوةً

طَيِّبَةً - Whoever does righteousness, whether male or female, while he is

a believer - We will surely cause him to live a good life

هُوَ followed by an Independent pronoun وَ - وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ which is

followed by an Ism مُؤْمِنٌ acting as a Haal

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## التمْيِيزُ - Tamyeez - The Clarifier

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Tamyeez is used to clarify or add detail to a word which is ambiguous  
Often translated as “in terms of...”

### Rules of Tamyeez:

1. Singular
2. Common
3. Nasab
4. Comes after the ambiguous word

### Tamyeez used in Ism Tafdeel (Comparison/Superlative)

A comparison word does not fully explain the comparison

Example:

“Yusuf is greater than John”

Greater in what? A Tamyeez is used to clarify the what

“Yusuf is greater than John in height”

The Tamyeez is “in height”

### Example

مَنْ أَحْسَنُ قَوْلًا – Who is better in speech

Ism Tafdeel (Comparative) – أَحْسَنُ - better

Tamyeez – قَوْلًا – in speech

Tamyeez is Singular – Common - Nasab – comes after the ambiguous word

The Tamyeez clarifies how the person is better – better in speech

### Some Fi'ls that use a Tamyeez

| Fi'l   | Meaning                          |
|--------|----------------------------------|
| مَلَأَ | To fill                          |
| زَادَ  | To increase something or someone |

|            |                     |
|------------|---------------------|
| إِزْدَادًا | To increase oneself |
| كَفَى      | To be sufficient    |
| سَاءَ      | To be terrible      |
| حَسُنَ     | To be good          |

### Examples

مِلءُ الْأَرْضِ ذَهَبًا – full capacity of the Earth in (terms of) gold

مِلءُ الْأَرْضِ – Ambiguous term

ذَهَبًا – Tamyeez

Tamyeez is Singular – Common - Nasab – comes after the ambiguous word -

The Tamyeez clarifies a full capacity of the Earth of what – of gold

مَا زَادَهُمْ إِلَّا إِيمَانًا وَتَسْلِيمًا - It did not increase them except in faith and submission



زَادَهُمْ - Ambiguous word

إِيْمَانًا - Tamyeez 1 –

تَسْلِيْمًا - Tamyeez 2

Both Tamyeez are Singular – Common - Nasab – come after the ambiguous word

The Tamyeez clarifies increased how – in faith and submission

سَاءَتْ مَصِيْرًا - Evil it is as a destination

سَاءَتْ - Ambiguous word

مَصِيْرًا - Tamyeez

Tamyeez is Singular – Common - Nasab – comes after the ambiguous word

The Tamyeez clarifies how is it evil – as a destination

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Substitute - Badl - البَدَلُ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Consists of an Ism followed by another Ism

Second Ism clarifies and gives more detail about the first Ism

In between the two Isms - translation implies “in other words”

Example: Yusuf, (in other words) the principal, is here

If one of the two Isms is removed – the sentence still makes sense

Yusuf is here – The principal is here

The Two Isms match in Status

### Examples

بِالنَّاصِيَةِ نَاصِيَةٍ كَاذِبَةٍ خَاطِئَةٍ - by the forelock, a lying, sinning  
forelock

بِالنَّاصِيَةِ – 1<sup>st</sup> Ism - attached to Harf of Jar بِ – Jar Status

نَاصِيَةٍ – 2nd Ism – Jar Status

The Status matches between the two Isms

Badal between the two Isms – both match in Status and can replace each other

The second Ism is a Mawsoof (Yellow highlight)

The final two Isms are Siffas (descriptions) – they match the Mawsoof in all 4 Properties (Gender, Number, Type and Status) (Blue highlight)

وَالِي عَادِ أَخَاهُمْ هُودًا – And to Aad (was sent) their brother, Hud

أَخَاهُمْ – 1<sup>st</sup> Ism – Nasab Status

هُودًا – 2nd Ism – Nasab Status

Badal between the two Isms – both match in Status and can replace each other

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## **Sarf – Morphology**

“To assign meanings to words through patterns and endings”

## Understanding Sarf - صَرْفٌ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Used to construct many words with different meanings from a single word (meanings are connected)

مُشْتَقٌّ – Words which Sarf can be done on (Most Arabic Words)

جَامِدٌ – Words which Sarf cannot be done on

Every Arabic Word has Root Letters

Most Words have 3 Root Letters - جَذْرٌ

1<sup>st</sup> Letter called - فَ الْكَلِمَةِ

2<sup>nd</sup> Letter called - عَ الْكَلِمَةِ

3<sup>rd</sup> Letter called - لَ الْكَلِمَةِ

These 3 Root Letters are used to construct other words with different meanings which have a connection to one another

### Example

3 Root Letters: ض ر ب

ضَرَبَ – He Hit

يَضْرِبُ – He is Hitting

ضَرْبٌ – Hitting

ضَارِبٌ – The one who Hits

مَضْرُوبٌ – The one who is Hit

Every 3 Root letters – can be put into a specific Family to create many different words – with similar meanings – other letters and Harakat are often added to the 3 Root letters

Every Family الْبَابُ includes the following parts

| Family Part         | Meaning         |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي | Past Tense Fi'l |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| الفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ                               | Present/Future Tense Fi'l                          |
| الفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي الْمَبْنِيُّ<br>لِلْمَجْهُولِ    | Passive Past Tense Fi'l                            |
| الفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ الْمَبْنِيُّ<br>لِلْمَجْهُولِ | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                         |
| فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ                                    | Commanding Fi'l                                    |
| فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ                                    | Forbidding Fi'l                                    |
| المَصْدَرُ  | Idea (Masdar) – Ism                                |
| إِسْمُ فَاعِلٍ                                      | The Doer of the Action (Ism Far'il) – Ism          |
| إِسْمُ مَفْعُولٍ                                    | The thing the Action is done to (Ism Mafool) - Ism |
| إِسْمُ ظَرْفٍ                                       | Time/Place the Action takes place (Zharf) - Ism    |

NOTE: 4 Isms and 6 Fi'ls

Each Family part **الصِّيْغَةُ** follows a particular pattern which applies to any 3 Root Letters which are constructed in that Family

### Example

| 3 Root Letters | Added into a specific Family (Shown in the Present/Future Tense) |
|----------------|--|
| ع ل م          | يَتَعَلَّمُ  |
| ف س د          | يَتَفَسَّدُ  |
| س ل م          | يَتَسَلَّمُ  |
| ر م ق          | يَتَرَمَّقُ  |

NOTE: these words have been constructed for understanding purposes – they are not necessarily real Arabic words

In each case the first two letters with the same Harakat remain in each

case - يَتَ (Blue highlight)

The Shadda ّ remains on the second to last letter with the same Fatah on it in each case (Green highlight)

In each case the last letter has a dhamma on it (Purple highlight)

Only the 3 root letters have been exchanged in each case but the pattern remains the same

This approach applies to all the different Families – but each Family has its own pattern, with specific characteristics, which the members within that family follow



## Two Types of Families

1. Small Families - الْمُجَرَّدُ
2. Big Families - الْمَزِيدُ فِيهِ

## Small Families - الْمُجَرَّدُ

In the هُوَ Past Tense version only the 3 root letters are present (but the Harakat may vary)

### Examples

ضَرَبَ – He Hit

عَلِمَ – He Knows

بَعَدَ – He was Distant

## Small Families have extra Family Parts

They take the same form across all Sub Families

| Family Part  | Meaning   | Pattern               |
|--------------|---|-----------------------|
| إِسْمُ آلَةٍ | A Tool/Device for doing the action (Ism Alatun) - Ism | مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ |

|                    |   |   |
|--------------------|---|---|
|                    |   | مِفْعَلَةٌ  |
| إِسْمُ تَفْضِيلٍ   | Comparatives/Superlatives<br>(Ism Tafdeel) - Ism          | أَفْعَلُ  |
| إِسْمُ صِفَةٍ      | Adjectives for Permanent<br>Qualities (Ism Siffa) - Ism   | فَعِيلٌ<br>فَعِلٌ   |
| إِسْمُ مُبَالَغَةٍ | A Magnified version of the Doer<br>(the Ism Far'il) - Ism | فَعَّالٌ<br>فَعْلَانُ (partly<br>flexible)<br>فَعُولٌ<br>فَعَّيْلٌ<br>فُعُولٌ |

### المَزِيدُ فِيهِ - Big Families

Extra letters are always added to the 3 root letters in every form

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## المُجَرَّدُ - Small Families

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Labelled as Family 1 - includes all the Small Families

6 Sub Families within Family 1

Differentiating one Sub Family to another – observe the Harakat on the Past Tense and Present/Future Tense Forms

Masdar in these families do not follow a particular pattern so can vary. This must be looked up in a Arabic dictionary in order to learn what the Masdar is for each word (discussed in the [Dictionary Chapter](#))

### فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 1

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense<br>Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|-----------------------|-----------------|
|                   |        |                       |                 |

|   |                                    |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                     | N/A                                | يَفْعُلُ                   | فَعَلَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                                | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ<br>مِفْعَلَةٌ         | مَفْعَلٌ<br>مَفْعِلٌ<br>مَفْعَلَةٌ | لا تَفْعُلْ                | أَفْعُلْ                |

### Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Fatah's on all 3 Root Letters (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Dhamma's on 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have م at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l Form– the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 1 – Using خ ل ق

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|----------|--------------------|-----------------|
| خَالِقٌ           | خَلْقًا  | يَخْلُقُ           | خَلَقَ          |
| The one who is    | Creation | He is creating     | He/it created   |

|   |                                     |                            |                         |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| creating                                    |                                     |                            |                         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                              | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَخْلُوقٌ                                   | خَلَقًا                             | يُخْلَقُ                   | خُلِقَ                  |
| The one who is being created                | Creation                            | He is being created        | He was created          |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)        | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِخْلَقٌ<br>مِخْلَاقٌ<br>مِخْلَقَةٌ         | مَخْلَقٌ<br>مَخْلِيقٌ<br>مَخْلَقَةٌ | لا تَخْلُقْ                | اَخْلُقْ                |
| Tool for creating                           | Time and Place of creating          | You (Male) don't create!   | You (Male) create!      |

## Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

For memorization the ل ع ف Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                             | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                     | N/A                                | يَفْعُلُ                   | فَعَلَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                                | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ<br>مِفْعَلَةٌ         | مَفْعَلٌ<br>مَفْعِلٌ<br>مَفْعَلَةٌ | لا تَفْعِلْ                | إفْعِلْ                 |



|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

### Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Fatah's on all 3 Root Letters (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Kasra on 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter (3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have م at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l Form – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 2 – Using غ ل ب

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
|                   |        |                    |                 |

|   |                                    |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                                    |                            |                         |
| غَالِبٌ                                     | غَلَبًا                            | يَغْلِبُ                   | غَلِبَ                  |
| The one who is dominating                   | Domination                         | He is dominating           | He/it dominated         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَغْلُوبٌ                                   | غَلَبًا                            | يُغْلَبُ                   | غُلِبَ                  |
| The one who is being dominated              | Domination                         | He is being dominating     | He was dominated        |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِغْلَبٌ<br>مِغْلَابٌ<br>مِغْلَبَةٌ         | مَغْلَبٌ<br>مَغْلِبٌ<br>مَغْلَبَةٌ | لَا تَغْلِبُ               | اِغْلِبْ                |
| Tool for                                    | Time and Place                     | You (Male) don't           | You (Male)              |

|            |               |           |           |
|------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| Dominating | of Domination | dominate! | dominate! |
|------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|

### فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 3

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                     | N/A                          | يَفْعَلُ                   | فَعَلَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |

|            |            |             |          |
|------------|------------|-------------|----------|
| مِفْعَلٌ   | مَفْعَلٌ   | لا تَفْعَلْ | إِفْعَلْ |
| مِفْعَالٌ  | مَفْعِلٌ   |             |          |
| مِفْعَلَةٌ | مَفْعَلَةٌ |             |          |

### Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Fatah's on all 3 Root Letters (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Fatah on 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter (3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have مٌ at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفْعَلُ – (this in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 3 – Using ب ع ث

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| بَاعِثٌ                                     | بَعَثًا                      | يُبْعَثُ                   | بَعَثَ                  |
| The one who is sending                      | Sending                      | He is sending              | He/it sent/dispatched   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَبْعُوثٌ                                   | بَعَثًا                      | يُبْعَثُ                   | بُعِثَ                  |
| The one who is being sent                   | Sending                      | He is being sent           | He was sent             |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِبْعَثٌ                                    | مَبْعَثٌ                     | لَا تَبْعَثُ               | إِبْعَثْ                |

|                         |                           |                        |                  |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| مِبْعَاتُ<br>مِبْعَثُهُ | مَبْعِثُ<br>مَبْعَثُهُ    |                        |                  |
| Tool for sending        | Time and Place of sending | You (Male) don't send! | You (Male) send! |

### فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                         | N/A    | يَفْعَلُ                   | فَعَلَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|   |                              |                 |              |
|---|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفْعَلُ        | فُعِلَ       |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
| مِفْعَلٌ                                    | مَفْعَلٌ                     | لا تَفْعَلْ     | إِفْعَلْ     |
| مِفْعَالٌ                                   | مَفْعِلٌ                     |                 |              |
| مِفْعَلَةٌ                                  | مَفْعَلَةٌ                   |                 |              |

### Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Kasra on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Fatah on 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter (3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have مُ at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 4 – Using ح ف ظ

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| حَافِظٌ                         | حِفْظًا  | يَحْفَظُ                   | حَفِظَ                  |
| The one who is guarding         | Guarding | He is guarding             | He/it guarded           |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَحْفُوظٌ                       | حِفْظًا  | يُحْفَظُ                   | حُفِظَ                  |



|   |                                    |                         |                   |
|---|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
|   |                                    |                         |                   |
| The one who is being guarded                | Guarding                           | He is being guarded     | He was guarded    |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form         | Command Form      |
| مِحْفَظٌ<br>مِحْفَاطٌ<br>مِحْفَظَةٌ         | مَحْفَظٌ<br>مَحْفِظٌ<br>مَحْفَظَةٌ | لا تَحْفَظْ             | إِحْفَظْ          |
| Tool for guarding                           | Time and Place of guarding         | You (Male) don't guard! | You (Male) guard! |

### فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 5

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

|                   |        |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|                   |        |                    |                 |

|   |                                    |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                     | N/A                                | يَفْعِلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                                | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ<br>مِفْعَلَةٌ         | مَفْعَلٌ<br>مَفْعِلٌ<br>مَفْعَلَةٌ | لا تَفْعِلُ                | اِفْعِلْ                |

### Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Kasra on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Fatah on 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter (3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have م at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 5 – Using ح س ب

| Ism Far'il (Doer)       | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------------|----------|--------------------|-----------------|
| حَاسِبٌ                 | حِسَابًا | يَحْسِبُ           | حَسِبَ          |
| The one who is assuming | Assuming | He is assuming     | He assumed      |

| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|---|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مَحْسُوبٌ                                   | حِسَابًا                           | يُحْسَبُ                   | حُسِبَ                  |
| The thing that is being assumed             | Assuming                           | It is being assumed        | It was assumed          |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِحْسَبٌ<br>مِحْسَابٌ<br>مِحْسَبَةٌ         | مَحْسَبٌ<br>مَحْسِبٌ<br>مَحْسَبَةٌ | لَا تَحْسِبْ               | إِحْسِبْ                |
| Tool for assuming                           | Time and Place of assuming         | You (Male) don't assume!   | You (Male) assume!      |

فَعْلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 6

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Isim Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                             | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|--|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَعِيلٌ                                      | N/A                                | يَفْعُلُ                   | فَعَّلَ                 |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A  | N/A                                | N/A                        | N/A                     |
| Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ<br>مِفْعَلَةٌ          | مَفْعَلٌ<br>مَفْعِلٌ<br>مَفْعَلَةٌ | لا تَفْعُلْ                | أَفْعُلْ                |

## Characteristics

This Sub Family is Lazim – has no Passive Forms (does not take a Mafool Beehee)

Past Tense Form - Has Dhamma on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Dhamma on 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter (3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has **ي** connected to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter – the Ism Siffa replaces the Ism Far'il in this case (Green highlight) and has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have **م** at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Alatun – the **م** at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

Example of Sub Family 6 – Using **ض ع ف**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)   | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|---------------------|----------|--------------------|-----------------|
| ضَعِيفٌ             | ضُعْفًا  | يَضْعُفُ           | ضَعُفَ          |
| The one who is weak | Weakness | He is weak         | He was weak     |

| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                              | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| N/A   | N/A                                 | N/A                        | N/A                     |
|   |                                     |                            |                         |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)        | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِضْعَفٌ<br>مِضْعَافٌ<br>مِضْعَفَةٌ         | مَضْعَفٌ<br>مَضْعِيفٌ<br>مَضْعَفَةٌ | لا تَضْعُفْ                | أَضْعُفْ                |
| Tool for becoming weak                      | Time and Place of becoming weak     | You (Male) don't be weak!  | You (Male) be weak!     |

### Determining the Sub Family

Unless both the Past Tense Form and Present/Future Tense Form of the Fi'l are shown the Sub Family cannot be determined without looking the Fi'l up in a dictionary (Explained in the [Dictionary Chapter](#))

But some Sub Families are more common:

So between Family 4 - **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ** and Family 5 - **فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ** where the Past Tense match – Family 4 - **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ** is more common

So between Family 2 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ** and Family 5 - **فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ** where the Present Tense match – Family 2 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ** is more common

So between Family 1 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** and Family 6 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** where the Present Tense match – Family 1 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** is more common

#### Extra Family Parts in Small Sub Families

They take the same form across all Sub Families

| Family Part      | Meaning   | Pattern                             |
|------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| إِسْمُ آلَةٍ     | A Tool/Device for doing the action (Ism Alatun) - Ism | مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ<br>مِفْعَلَةٌ |
| إِسْمُ تَفْضِيلٍ | Comparatives/Superlatives (Ism Tafdeel) - Ism         | أَفْعَلٌ                            |
| إِسْمُ صِفَةٍ    | Adjectives for Permanent Qualities (Ism Siffa) - Ism  | فَعِيلٌ                             |



|                    |   |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
|                    |   | فَعِلٌ   |
| إِسْمٌ مُبَالَغَةٌ | A Magnified version of the Doer<br>(the Ism Far'il) - Ism | فَعَّالٌ<br>فَعْلَانُ<br>فَعُولٌ<br>فَعَّيْلٌ<br>فُعُولٌ |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## المَزِيدُ فِيهِ - Big Families

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

### فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ - Family 2

Known as - بَابُ تَفْعِيلٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Isim Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|----------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَعِّلٌ                        | تَفْعِيلًا | يُفَعِّلُ                  | فَعَّلَ                 |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|                                  |            |                            |                         |

|                              |              |                 |              |
|------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مُفَعَّلٌ                    | تَفْعِيلًا   | يُفَعِّلُ       | فَعَّلَ      |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |              | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
| مُفَعَّلٌ                    | لا تَفَعِّلْ | فَعِّلْ         |              |

### Characteristics

Shadda on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter and appears in most forms (yellow highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l Form starts with a Dhamma (only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ with a Dhamma (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l Form (يُفَعِّلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُفَعِّلٌ) – Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter ي

to م and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l Form (يُفَعَّلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُفَعَّلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter ي to م and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ِ

With Passive Present Fi'l Form – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعَّلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

### Some Implications of Family 2

Family 2 often indicates repetitive action over a prolong period of time

Also used to magnify action

Example of Family 2 – Using ن ز ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)      | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l       | Past Tense Fi'l |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| مُنْزِلٌ               | تَنْزِيلًا   | يُنْزَلُ                 | نَزَلَ          |
| The one who sends down | Sending down | He/It is being sent down | He/It sent down |

| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l  | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|---------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنَزَّلٌ                       | تَنْزِيلًا   | يُنَزَّلُ                   | نُزِّلَ                 |
| The thing which is sent down    | Sending Down | He is being sent down       | He was sent down        |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |              | Forbidding Form             | Command Form            |
| مُنَزَّلٌ                       |              | لا تُنَزِّلْ                | نَزِّلْ                 |
| Time and Place of sending down  |              | You (Male) don't send down! | You (Male) send down!   |

### فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ - Family 3

Known as - بَابُ مُفَاعَلَةٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                  | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَاعِلٌ                       | فِعَالًا<br>مُفَاعَلَةً | يُفَاعِلُ                  | فَاعَلَ                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                  | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَاعَلٌ                       | فِعَالًا<br>مُفَاعَلَةً | يُفَاعَلُ                  | فُوعِلَ                 |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                         | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفَاعَلٌ                       |                         | لَا تُفَاعِلُ              | فَاعِلْ                 |

### Characteristics

Has extra Alif in all but one of the forms (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l Form starts with a Dhamma (only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Blue highlight)

Family 3 has 2 Masdars – interchangeable (NOTE: Masdar are actually genderless so can be used without changing its gender)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma)  
(Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يُفَاعِلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُفَاعِلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter ي to م and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - مُ instead of يُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُفَاعَلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُفَاعَلٌ) –

Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter ي to م and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - مُ instead of يُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَاعَلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

### Some Implications

Action directed from one person/group to another (e.g. He fought...someone)

### Example of Family 3 – Using ق ت ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                  | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُقَاتِلٌ                       | قِتَالًا<br>مُقَاتَلَةً | يُقَاتِلُ                  | قَاتَلَ                 |
| The one who fights              | Fighting                | He is fighting             | He fought               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                  | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُقَاتَلٌ                       | قِتَالًا<br>مُقَاتَلَةً | يُقَاتَلُ                  | قُوِيَ                  |
| The one who is fought against   | Fighting                | He is being fought against | He was fought           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form         |                            | Command Form            |
| مُقَاتَلٌ                       | لَا تُقَاتِلْ           |                            | قَاتِلْ                 |
| Time and Place of fighting      | You (Male) don't fight! |                            | You (Male) fight!       |



## Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Known as - بَابُ إِفْعَالٍ

For memorization the ل ف ع Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْعِلٌ                        | إِفْعَالًا | يُفْعِلُ                   | أَفْعَلَ                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْعَلٌ                        | إِفْعَالًا | يُفْعَلُ                   | أُفْعِلَ                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |

|          |             |          |
|----------|-------------|----------|
| مُفْعَلٌ | لا تَفْعِلْ | أَفْعِلْ |
|----------|-------------|----------|

### Characteristics

Has Hamza أ on some of the forms (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l Form starts with a Dhamma (only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Blue highlight)

The Command form will always begin with a Fatah on the Hamza أَ (unlike all the other families which will take a Kasra or a Dhamma if an extra Alif ا is added to the start of the word)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يُفْعِلْ) and Ism Far'il (مُفْعِلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter ي to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُفَعِّلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُفَعَّلٌ)

– Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter ي to م and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

### Some Implications

Root letters which are inserted into Family 4 create a meaning where the action affects someone/something else (Mootadee) e.g. He honoured...someone

Can mean the action was completed immediately and at once

Example of Family 4 – Using ك ر م

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُكْرِمٌ          | إِكْرَامًا | يُكْرِمُ           | أَكْرَمَ        |

|                                 |            |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| The one who honours             | To honour  | He is honouring            | He honoured             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُكْرِمٌ                        | إِكْرَامًا | يُكْرِمُ                   | أُكْرِمَ                |
| The one who is honoured         | To honour  | He is being honoured       | He was honoured         |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُكْرِمٌ                        |            | لا تُكْرِمُ                | أَكْرِمِ                |
| Time and Place of honouring     |            | You (Male) don't honour!   | You (Male) honour!      |

تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ - Family 5

Known as - بَابُ تَفَعُّلٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Isim Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense<br>Fi'l      | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَّفَعِلٌ                      | تَفَعُّلاً      | يُتَّفَعِلُ                | تَفَعَّلَ               |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَّفَعِلٌ                      | تَفَعُّلاً      | يُتَّفَعِلُ                | تُفَعِّلُ               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)     | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُتَّفَعِلٌ                      | لا تَتَّفَعِلْ  |                            | تَفَعِّلْ               |

### Characteristics

Shadda on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root letter in all forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra ت added to 3 Root letters in all forms (Blue highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَتَفَعَّلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُتَفَعِّلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Second last letter (the one with a Shadda - 2<sup>nd</sup> Root letter) gets a Kasra (instead of a Fatah) and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُتَفَعَّلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُتَفَعِّلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُتَفَعَّلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

## Some Implications

Can mean the action took effort to complete

Example of Family 5 – Using ق ب ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَقَبِّلٌ                     | تَقَبُّلاً | يَتَقَبَّلُ                | تَقَبَّلَ               |
| The one who accepts             | To accept  | He is accepting            | He accepted             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَقَبَّلٌ                     | تَقَبُّلاً | يُتَقَبَّلُ                | تُقَبِّلَ               |
| The one who is accept           | To accept  | He is being accepted       | He was accepted         |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |

|                             |                          |                    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| مُتَقَبِّلٌ                 | لَا تَتَقَبَّلُ          | تَقَبَّلَ          |
| Time and Place of accepting | You (Male) don't accept! | You (Male) accept! |

## تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

Known as - بَابُ تَفَاعُلٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَفَاعِلٌ                     | تَفَاعُلًا | يَتَفَاعَلُ                | تَفَاعَلَ               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|                                 |            |                            |                         |



|                              |            |                 |              |
|------------------------------|------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مُتَفَاعِلٌ                  | تَفَاعُلًا | يُتَفَاعَلُ     | تُفَاعِلْ    |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |            | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
| مُتَفَاعِلٌ                  |            | لا تَتَفَاعَلْ  | تَفَاعِلْ    |

### Characteristics

Has extra Alif ا in all but one forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra ت added to the 3 Root letters in all forms (Blue highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَتَفَاعَلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُتَفَاعِلٌ) – Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter

يَ to مُ and the Second last letter (which is the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root letter) gets a Kasra (instead of a Fatah) and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُتَفَاعَلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُتَفَاعِلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُتَفَاعَلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

### Some Implications

Can mean the action took place between two groups/people

Example of Family 6 – Using ن ز ع

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُتَنَارِعٌ       | تَنَارُعًا | يَتَنَارَعُ        | تَنَارَعَ       |

|                                 |            |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                 |            |                            |                         |
| The one who argues              | To argue   | He is arguing              | He argued               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَنَارِعٌ                     | تَنَارُعًا | يُتَنَارَعُ                | تُنُوزِعَ               |
| The one who is argued with      | To argue   | He is being argued with    | He was argued with      |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُتَنَارِعٌ                     |            | لا تَتَنَارَعُ             | تَنَارِعْ               |
| Time and Place of arguing       |            | You (Male) don't argue!    | You (Male) argue!       |

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Known as - بَابُ اِنْفَعَالٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense<br>Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l            |
|---------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| مُنْفَعِلٌ                      | إِنْفِعَالًا | يَنْفَعِلُ                    | إِنْفَعَلَ                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present<br>Tense Fi'l | Passive Past<br>Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A          | N/A                           | N/A                        |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |              | Forbidding Form               | Command Form               |
| مُنْفَعَلٌ                      |              | لَا تَنْفَعِلُ                | إِنْفَعِلْ                 |

### Characteristics

Family is Lazim – cannot be made Passive – does not take a Mafool  
Beehee

Has extra ن before the 1st Root Letter in all the forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra Alif ا added in two forms (Blue highlight) (Command form not included as Alif is added as standard in most Command forms)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَنْفَعِلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُنْفَعِلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter ي to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

### Some Implications

This Family sounds Passive in English but is counted as Active Fi'l in Arabic (look at meanings in example below to understand this)

Example of Family 7 – Using ف ط ر

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
|                   |        |                    |                 |

|                                 |              |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنْفَطِرٌ                      | اِنْفِطَارًا | يَنْفَطِرُ                 | اِنْفَطَرَ              |
| The one who is being split      | To be split  | He is being split          | He was split            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A          | N/A                        | N/A                     |
|                                 |              |                            |                         |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |              | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُنْفَطِرٌ                      |              | لَا تَنْفَطِرُ             | اِنْفَطِرْ              |
| Time and Place of being split   |              | You (Male) don't be split! | You (Male) be split!    |

اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ - Family 8

Known as - بَابُ اِفْتِعَالٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْتَعِلٌ                      | إِفْتِعَالًا | يُفْتَعِلُ                 | إِفْتَعَلَ              |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْتَعَلٌ                      | إِفْتِعَالًا | يُفْتَعَلُ                 | أُفْتَعِلَ              |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |              | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفْتَعَلٌ                      |              | لَا تُفْتَعِلُ             | إِفْتَعِلْ              |

Characteristics

Has extra ت after 1st Root Letter in all forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra Alif ا added in some forms (Blue highlight) (Command form not included as Alif is added as standard in most Command forms)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَفْتَعِلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُفْتَعِلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُفْتَعَلُ) and Ism Mafool (

مُفْتَعَلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفْتَعَلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

If ن and ت are seen together – Family 8 is assumed (not Family 7)



Example:

إِنْتَقَمَ – He took revenge

ت ق م - If from Family 7 – 3 Root Letters

ن ق م - If from Family 8 – 3 Root Letters

Family 8 is assumed

### Some Implications

Sometimes indicates magnification of action

Example of Family 8 – Using ج ن ب

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense<br>Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l            |
|---------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| مُجْتَنِبٌ                      | اجْتِنَابًا | يَجْتَنِبُ                    | اجْتَنَبَ                  |
| The one who avoids              | To avoid    | He is avoiding                | He avoided                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present<br>Tense Fi'l | Passive Past<br>Tense Fi'l |

|                              |             |                         |                   |
|------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
|                              |             |                         |                   |
| مُجْتَنَبٌ                   | اجْتِنَابًا | يُجْتَنَبُ              | اجْتُنِبَ         |
| The one who is being avoided | To avoid    | He is being avoided     | He was avoided    |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |             | Forbidding Form         | Command Form      |
| مُجْتَنَبٌ                   |             | لا تَجْتَنِبُ           | اجْتَنِبْ         |
| Time and Place of avoiding   |             | You (Male) don't avoid! | You (Male) avoid! |

## Family 9 - إِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ

Known as - بَابُ إِفْعَالٍ

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْعَلٌ                        | إِفْعَالًا | يَفْعَلُ                   | إَفْعَلَّ               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A        | N/A                        | N/A                     |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفْعَلٌ                        |            | لا تَفْعَلْ<br>لا تَفْعَلْ | إِفْعَلْ<br>إِفْعَلْ    |

|  |             |          |
|--|-------------|----------|
|  | لا تَفْعَلْ | إِفْعَلْ |
|--|-------------|----------|

### Characteristics

Known as the Colour Family e.g. to turn X into a particular colour

Has Shadda on the 3rd Root Letter in most forms (Yellow highlight)

Always Lazim – cannot be made Passive – does not take a Mafool Beehee

Has 3 Commands and 3 Prohibitions Forms – they are interchangeable

For this Family only – Ism Far'il and Zharf are the Same (usually it is the Ism Mafool and Zharf that are the same)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَفْعَلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُفْعَلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

### Implications

None

Example of Family 9 – Using ص ف ر

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                       | Present Tense<br>Fi'l      | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُصْفَرٌّ                       | إِصْفِرَارًا                 | يَصْفَرُّ                  | إِصْفَرَّ               |
| The one who becomes yellow      | To become yellow             | He is turning yellow       | He/it turned yellow     |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A                          | N/A                        | N/A                     |
|                                 |                              |                            |                         |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form              |                            | Command Form            |
| مُصْفَرٌّ                       | لا تَصْفَرَّ<br>لا تَصْفَرَّ |                            | إِصْفَرَّ<br>إِصْفَرَّ  |

|                                  |                               |                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                  | لا تَصْفِرْ                   | اِصْفِرْ                |
| Time and Place of turning yellow | You (Male) don't turn yellow! | You (Male) turn yellow! |

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Known as - بَابُ اِسْتِفْعَالٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar         | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَفْعِلٌ                    | اِسْتِفْعَالًا | يَسْتَفْعِلُ               | اِسْتَفْعَلَ            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar         | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|                              |                |                  |              |
|------------------------------|----------------|------------------|--------------|
| مُسْتَفْعَلٌ                 | اِسْتِفْعَالًا | يُسْتَفْعَلُ     | اُسْتَفْعِلْ |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |                | Forbidding Form  | Command Form |
| مُسْتَفْعَلٌ                 |                | لَا تَسْتَفْعِلْ | اِسْتَفْعِلْ |

### Characteristics

Has extra **سْت** in all the forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra Alif ا added in some forms (Blue highlight) (Command form not included as Alif is added as standard in most Command forms)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with **مُ** (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يُسْتَفْعَلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُسْتَفْعِلٌ) – Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُسْتَفْعَلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُسْتَفْعَلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُسْتَفْعَلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

### Some Implications

Actions usually indicate seeking, desiring and trying to obtain something

Example of Family 10 – Using ع ج ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
|                   |        |                    |                 |



|                                 |                |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَعَجِلٌ                    | إِسْتِعْجَالًا | يُسْتَعَجَلُ               | إِسْتَعْجَلَ            |
| The one who is expediting       | To expedite    | He is expediting           | He/it expedited         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar         | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسْتَعَجَلٌ                    | إِسْتِعْجَالًا | يُسْتَعَجَلُ               | أُسْتُعْجِلَ            |
| The one who is being expedited  | To expedite    | He is being expedited      | He was expedited        |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُسْتَعَجَلٌ                    |                | لَا تُسْتَعَجَلُ           | إِسْتَعْجَلْ            |
| Time and Place of expediting    |                | You (Male) don't expedite! | You (Male) expedite!    |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Irregular Verbs

### 3 types of Irregularities in Sarf

1. When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء – Mahmuzun مَهْمُوزٌ

2. When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same – letters combine

and take a Shadda – Moodaarefun مُضَاعَفٌ e.g. شَقَّ (Root

Letters: ش ق ق)

3. When one of two Root Letters are a Vowel (Waw و – Yah ي) –

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌ

- Alif ا is not considered a Root Letter and is replaced with one of the

other two - Waw و or Yah ي

- 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is و or ي – Mithalun مِثَالٌ

- 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي – Ajwafun أَجَوَفٌ
- 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي – Naqisun نَاقِصٌ
- 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي – Lafeefun Mafrukun لَفِيفٌ

مَفْرُوقٌ

- 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي – Lafeefun Makrunun لَفِيفٌ

مَقْرُونٌ

## Irregular Verbs - Mahmuzun مَهْمُوزٌ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Hazma ء treated differently when:

1. 2 Hamzas come together
2. Hazma and Alif come together

### In Big Families

Hazma affects Sarf Forms when it comes with another Hamza or an Alif and only in the following families:

Family 3: فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4: أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 8: اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

In each case if the 1<sup>st</sup> root letter is Hamza it will come with another Hamza or an Alif

### Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

NOTE: for understanding purposes the 1st Root Letter **ف** is replaced with Hamza **ء**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                  | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l                    |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| مُؤَاعِلٌ                       | ءِعَالًا<br>مُؤَاعَلَةً | يُؤَاعِلُ                  | ءَاعَلَ<br>or written as<br>آَعَلَ |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                  | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l            |
| مُؤَاعَلٌ                       | ءِعَالًا<br>مُؤَاعَلَةً | يُؤَاعَلُ                  | أُوعِلَ                            |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                         | Forbidding Form            | Command Form                       |

|           |               |         |
|-----------|---------------|---------|
| مُؤَاعِلٌ | لَا تُؤَاعِلْ | ءَاعِلٌ |
|-----------|---------------|---------|

When Hazma ء and Alif ا met - creates a Madda مَدَّ

Madda written as: ءَا or آ (Yellow highlight)

Only two forms affected: Past Tense and Command (Blue highlight)

Example of Family 3 – Using ء خ ذ

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                  | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| مُؤَاخِذٌ                       | ءِخَاذًا<br>مُؤَاخَذَةٌ | يُؤَاخِذُ                  | ءَاخَذَ<br>or written as<br>آخَذَ |
| The one who seizes              | To seize                | He is seizing              | He seized                         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                  | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l           |

|                              |                         |                         |                      |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| مُؤَاخَذٌ                    | ءِخَاذًا<br>مُؤَاخَذَةً | يُؤَاخَذُ               | أُؤْخِذَ             |
| The one who is seized        | To seize                | He is being seized      | He was seized        |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |                         | Forbidding Form         | Command Form         |
| مُؤَاخَذٌ                    |                         | لَا تُؤَاخِذُ           | ءَاخِذْ              |
| Time and Place of seizing    |                         | You (Male) don't seize! | You (Male) be seize! |

#### أَفْعَلْ يُفْعِلُ - Family 4

NOTE: for understanding purposes the 1st Root Letter ف is replaced with Hamza ء

|                   |        |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|



|                                 |            |                            |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
|                                 |            |                            |                                    |
| مُؤْعِلٌ                        | إِئْعَالًا | يُؤْعِلُ                   | ءَاعِلَ<br>or written as<br>آَعِلَ |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l            |
| مُؤْعَلٌ                        | إِئْعَالًا | يُؤْعَلُ                   | أُؤْعِلَ                           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form                       |
| مُؤْعَلٌ                        |            | لَا تُؤْعِلُ               | ءَاعِلِ                            |

When Hazma ء and Alif ا met - creates a Madda مَدَّ

Madda written as: ءَا or آَا (Yellow highlight)

The Hazma ء turns into a ي in Masdar (Blue highlight)

Example of Family 4 – Using ء ث ر

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar    | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| مُؤَثِّرٌ                       | إِثَارًا  | يُؤَثِّرُ                  | ءَاثَرَ<br>or written as<br>آثَرَ |
| The one who prefers             | To prefer | He is preferring           | He preferred                      |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar    | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l           |
| مُؤَثَّرٌ                       | إِثَارًا  | يُؤَثَّرُ                  | أُؤَثِّرَ                         |
| The one who is preferred        | To prefer | He is being preferred      | He was preferred                  |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |           | Forbidding Form            | Command Form                      |
| مُؤَثَّرٌ                       |           | لَا تُؤَثِّرُ              | ءَاثِرْ                           |
| Time and Place of preferring    |           | You (Male) don't prefer!   | You (Male) prefer!                |

## Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

NOTE: for understanding purposes the 1st Root Letter **ف** is replaced with

Hamza **ع**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَعِلٌ                        | إِتْعَالًا      | يَتَعِلُ                   | إِتْعَلَ                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَعَلٌ                        | إِتْعَالًا      | يُتَعَلُ                   | أُتْعِلَ                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُتَعَلٌ                        | لَا تَتَعِلُ    |                            | إِتْعِلْ                |

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|

The Hazma ء and the ت merged to make a ت in all forms (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 8 – Using ء خ ذ

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَّخِذٌ                       | إِتِّخَاذًا | يَتَّخِذُ                  | إِتَّخَذَ               |
| The one who takes               | To take     | He is taking               | He took                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَّخَذٌ                       | إِتِّخَاذًا | يُتَّخَذُ                  | أُتِّخِذَ               |
| The one who is                  | To take     | He is being taken          | He was taken            |

|                              |  |                        |                  |
|------------------------------|--|------------------------|------------------|
| taken                        |  |                        |                  |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |  | Forbidding Form        | Command Form     |
| مُتَّخِذٌ                    |  | لَا تَتَّخِذْ          | اتَّخِذْ         |
| Time and Place of taking     |  | You (Male) don't take! | You (Male) take! |

### Small Families

Irregularities only occur when the 1<sup>st</sup> or 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is a Hazma ء

### 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is a Hamza

### Ism Far'il

Hazma comes with Alif – it creates Madda written as: آ or ءا

### Example

فَاعِلٌ - When 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter ف is changed to Hamza ء it comes with Alif ا – becomes: ءَاعِلٌ or آَعِلٌ

### Ism Tafdeel (Comparative/Superlative)

Hamza comes with another Hamza - it creates Madda written as: آء or آ

#### Example

أَفْعُلُ - When 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter فَ is changed to Hamza ء – two Hamzas come together to make أَعْلُ - becomes: آءَاعْلُ or آَعْلُ

### Commanding Form

Hamza comes with Alif – both Hamza and Alif are dropped

#### Examples

3 Commanding Forms possible in Small Families:

أَفْعُلُ - When 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter فَ is changed to Hamza ء – أَعْلُ becomes: عُلُ

إِفْعِلُ - When 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter فَ is changed to Hamza ء – إَاعِلُ becomes: عِلُ

إِأَعْلُ - ء - When 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter فَ is changed to Hamza ء  
becomes: عْلُ

ء ك ل Using فَعْلَ يَفْعُلُ - Example of Sub Family 1

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar  | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ءَاكِلٌ                         | أَكْلًا | يَأْكُلُ                   | أَكَلَ                  |
| The one who is eating           | To eat  | He is eating               | He ate                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar  | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَاكُولٌ                        | أَكْلًا | يُأْكَلُ                   | أُكِلَ                  |
| The thing that is eaten         | To eat  | It is being ate            | It was eaten            |

| Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)             | Forbidding Form       | Command Form    |
|--|--|-----------------------|-----------------|
| مِئْكَالٌ<br>مِئْكَالٌ<br>مِئْكَالَةٌ        | مَاْأَكُلُ<br>مَاْأَكِلُ<br>مَاْأَكَلَةٌ | لا تَأْكُلْ           | كُلْ            |
| Tool for eating                              | Time and Place of eating                 | You (Male) don't eat! | You (Male) eat! |

### The Present Tense أَنَا form

If the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is Hamza ء then in the Present Tense أَنَا form – Hamza will meet an Alif - it creates Madda written as: ءَا or آ

### Example

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is Hamza ء:

3 different Present Tense Forms possible from the Small Families



يَأْعُلُ - يَأْعِلُ - يَأْعَلُ Present Tense Form: هُوَ

أَنَا Present Tense Form: آَعُلُ - آَعِلُ - آَعَلُ

(NOTE: In أنا form ي is replaced with Alif ا)

Hamza will meet an Alif - it creates Madda written as: آ or ء

2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is a Hamza

Commanding Form

Hamza comes with Alif – both Hamza (Yellow highlight) and Alif (Blue highlight) are dropped – the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter will take the Harakat of the Hamza (which was dropped)

Examples

3 Commanding Forms possible in Small Families:

أَفْعُلُ - When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter ع is changed to Hamza ء - أَفْعُلُ

becomes: فُلُ

إِفْأَنْ - When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter ع is changed to Hamza ء becomes: فِأَنْ

إِفْعَلْ - When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter ع is changed to Hamza ء becomes: فِأَلْ

Example of Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using س ء ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar  | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| سَائِلٌ                         | سُؤْلًا | يَسْأَلُ                   | سَأَلَ                  |
| The one who is asking           | To ask  | He is asking               | He asked                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar  | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَسْئُولٌ                       | سُؤْلًا | يُسْأَلُ                   | سُئِلَ                  |

| The one that is asked                       | To ask                             | He is being asked     | He was asked    |
|---|------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form       | Command Form    |
| مِسْأَلٌ<br>مِشْأَالٌ<br>مِشْأَلَةٌ         | مَسْأَلٌ<br>مَسْئِلٌ<br>مَسْأَلَةٌ | لَا تَسْأَلْ          | سَلْ            |
| Tool for asking                             | Time and Place of asking           | You (Male) don't ask! | You (Male) ask! |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Mithalun مِثَالٌ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - when one of the Root Letters is و or ي

Mithalun مِثَالٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

When 1st Root Letter is و or ي

1st Root Letter is و - مِثَالٌ و

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is ي - مِثَالٌ ي

Small Families

1st Root Letter is و

مِثَالٌ و

Rules always followed:

1. Present Tense Form – و is dropped (therefore does not show in

Command Form)

2. When ؤ “ew” sound is created the و is replaced with ي

3. Two Masdars formed – one does not follow a pattern – the other

follows the pattern: وَعِلَّةٌ – (where و is the 1st Root Letter - the ع

is the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter - the ل is the 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter)

Example using Sub Family 2: فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using و ز ر

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar              | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| وَازِرٌ           | وِزْرًا<br>وِزْرَةً | يَزِرُ             | وَزَرَ          |

|   |                                    |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| The one who is carrying                     | To carry                           | He is carrying             | He carried              |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَوْزُورٌ                                   | وِزْرًا<br>وَزِيرَةً               | يُوزَرُ                    | وُزِرَ                  |
| The thing that is carried                   | To carry                           | It is being carried        | It was carried          |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِيزَرٌ<br>مِيزَارٌ<br>مِيزَرَةٌ            | مَوْزَرٌ<br>مَوْزِرٌ<br>مَوْزَرَةٌ | لَا تَزِرْ                 | زِرْ                    |
| Tool for carrying                           | Time and Place of carrying         | You (Male) don't carry!    | You (Male) carry!       |

Present Tense Form - و is dropped: يُوزِرُ becomes يَزِرُ

Second Masdar formed which follows pattern وَزَرَةً: وَعِلَّةٌ

Passive Present Tense – a وُ is added: يُوزَرُ

Command Form affected because of change to Present Tense Form (يَزِرُ):

زِرْ

In Ism Alatun و is replaced with ي to avoid وَ “ew” sound: مِيزَرُ

مِيزَرَةٌ - مِيزَارٌ -

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is ي

مِثَالُ ي

In Small Families displays no irregularities

Only note that when وَ “ew” sound is created the و is replaced with ي

Example using Sub Family 4: فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ي ء س

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                                | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| يَائِسٌ                                     | يَأْسًا                               | يَيْأَسُ                   | يَيْسَ                  |
| The one who is despairing                   | To despair                            | He is despairing           | He despaired            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                                | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَيُّوْسٌ                                   | يَأْسًا                               | يُؤَسُّ                    | يُيْسَ                  |
| The thing that is despaired                 | To despair                            | It is being despaired      | It was despaired of     |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)          | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِيَّأَسٌ<br>مِيَّأَسٌ<br>مِيَّأَسَةٌ       | مَيَّأَسٌ<br>مَيَّيْسٌ<br>مَيَّأَسَةٌ | لا تَيَّأَسْ               | إِيَّأَسْ               |



|                     |                              |                           |                     |
|---------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
|                     |                              |                           |                     |
| Tool for despairing | Time and Place of despairing | You (Male) don't despair! | You (Male) despair! |

### Big Families

Rules apply for both مِثَالُ ي and مِثَالُ و

1. When ؤ "ew" sound is created the و is replaced with ي and ي is

replaced with و to avoid يي sound (only occurs in Families 4 أَفْعَلَ

and 10 اسْتَفْعَلَ)

2. Vowel merges with ت in Family 8 اِفْتَعَلَ - creates a تَّ

Otherwise the Vowels و and ي behave normally

## Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is replaced with و

In Masdar و is replaced with ي to avoid هُوَ “ew” sound: اِوْعَالًا  
becomes اِيْعَالًا

Example of Family 4 – Using و ل ج

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar        | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُؤَلِّجٌ                       | إِيْلَاجًا    | يُؤَلِّجُ                  | أَوَّلَجَ               |
| The one who makes it enter      | To make enter | He is making it enter      | He made it enter        |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُؤَلِّجٌ                       | إِيْلَاجًا    | يُؤَلِّجُ                  | أُوِّلِجَ               |
| The thing which is entered      | To make enter | It is being entered into   | It was made to enter    |

| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)      | Forbidding Form                 | Command Form              |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| مَوْلَجٌ                          | لا تَوْلَجْ                     | أَوْلَجْ                  |
| Time and Place of making it enter | You (Male) don't make it enter! | You (Male) make it enter! |

In Masdar و is replaced with ي to avoid ؤ “ew” sound: اَوْلَجًا becomes اِيْلَجًا

#### Family 4 أَفْعَلَ

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is replaced with ي

ي is replaced with و to avoid يي sound:

Examples include:

Present Tense يُنْعِلُ becomes يُوْعِلُ

Ism Far'il مُنْعِلٌ becomes مُوْعِلٌ

Passive Past Tense أُنْعِلَ becomes أُوْعِلَ

Example of Family 4 – Using ي ق ن

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar        | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُوقِنٌ                         | إِيقَانًا     | يُوقِنُ                    | أَيَّقَنَ               |
| The one who is certain          | To be certain | He is certain              | He was certain          |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُوقِنٌ                         | إِيقَانًا     | يُوقِنُ                    | أُوقِنَ                 |
| The thing which is made certain | To be certain | It is being made certain   | It was made certain     |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |               | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُوقِنٌ                         |               | لَا تُوقِنُ                | أَيِّقِنُ               |

|                                 |                              |                        |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| Time and Place of being certain | You (Male) don't be certain! | You (Male) be certain! |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|

### Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is replaced with ي or و

Vowel merges with ت - creates a تَّ – which appears in all Forms

Example forms:

Past Tense – اِوْتَعَلَ or اِيْتَعَلَ becomes - اِتَّعَلَ

Present Tense – يُوْتَعِلُ or يِيْتَعِلُ becomes يِتَّعِلُ

Command Form – اِوْتَعِلْ or اِيْتَعِلْ becomes اِتَّعِلْ

Normally one vowel would replace the other to produce a better sound but in both cases unacceptable sounds are created so the vowel and ت (in Family 8) merge to create تَّ

Example of Family 8 – Using و ح د

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَّحِدٌ                       | اِتِّحَادًا | يَتَّحِدُ                  | اِتَّحَدَ               |
| The one who is uniting          | To unite    | He is uniting              | He united               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَّحَدٌ                       | اِتِّحَادًا | يُتَّحَدُ                  | اُتِّحِدَ               |
| The one who is united           | To unite    | He is being united         | He was united           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |             | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُتَّحَدٌ                       |             | لَا تَتَّحِدُ              | اِتَّحِدْ               |
| Time and Place of uniting       |             | You (Male) don't unite!    | You (Male) unite!       |

## Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is replaced with و

In Masdar و is replaced with ي to avoid وَ “ew” sound: اِسْتَوْعَلَ  
becomes اِسْتَيْعَلَ

Example of Family 10 – Using و ق د

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَوْقِدٌ                    | اِسْتَيْقَادًا  | يَسْتَوْقِدُ               | اِسْتَوْقَدَ            |
| The one who is lighting a fire  | To light a fire | He is lighting a fire      | He lit a fire           |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسْتَوْقَدٌ                    | اِسْتَيْقَادًا  | يُسْتَوْقَدُ               | اُسْتُوقِدَ             |

|                                   |                 |                                |                          |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
|                                   |                 |                                |                          |
| The thing that is lit             | To light a fire | It is being lit                | It was lit               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)      |                 | Forbidding Form                | Command Form             |
| مُسْتَوْقَدٌ                      |                 | لَا تَسْتَوْقِدْ               | اِسْتَوْقِدْ             |
| Time and Place of lighting a fire |                 | You (Male) don't light a fire! | You (Male) light a fire! |

## Family 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is replaced with ي

In Passive Past Tense ي is replaced with و to avoid يي sound: اُسْتُعِلَ becomes اُسْتُوعِلَ

Example of Family 10 – Using ي ق ن



| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar         | Present Tense Fi'l           | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَيْقِنٌ                    | إِسْتَيْقَانًا | يَسْتَيْقِنُ                 | إِسْتَيْقَنَ            |
| The one who is certain          | To be certain  | He is certain                | He was certain          |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar         | Passive Present Tense Fi'l   | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسْتَيْقِنٌ                    | إِسْتَيْقَانًا | يُسْتَيْقِنُ                 | أُسْتُوقِنَ             |
| The thing that is certain       | To be certain  | It is certain                | It was certain          |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                | Forbidding Form              | Command Form            |
| مُسْتَيْقِنٌ                    |                | لَا تَسْتَيْقِنُ             | إِسْتَيْقِنُ            |
| Time and Place of being certain |                | You (Male) don't be certain! | You (Male) be certain!  |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Ajwafun أَجَوَفٌ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - one of the Root Letters is ي or و

Ajwafun أَجَوَفٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي or و

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is و - أَجَوَفٌ و

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي - أَجَوَفٌ ي

### Big Families

Vowel causes changes only in Families:

Families - 4 أَفْعَلَ - 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ - both behave in the same way

Families - 7 اِنْفَعَلَ - 8 اِفْتَعَلَ - both behave in the same way

Families - 4 أَفْعَلُ يُفْعِلُ and 10 اِسْتَفْعَلُ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Rules:

1. Past Tense – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا
2. Present Tense – Vowel replaced with Yah ي
3. Masdar – Taa ت added to it
4. If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including –  
Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed

Example for Family 4 أَفْعَلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar    | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|-----------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُفِئِلٌ          | إِفَالَةٌ | يُفِئِلُ           | أَفَالَ         |

| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَالٌ                         | إِفَالَةٌ       | يُفَالُ                    | أُفِيلَ                 |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form | Command Form               |                         |
| مُفَالٌ                         | لَا تُفِلْ      | أَفِلْ                     |                         |

Past Tense – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense – Vowel replaced with Yah ي (Blue highlight)

Masdar – Taa ت added to it (Black highlight)

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed (Dark blue highlight)

Example for Family 4 أَفْعَلَ using ر و د

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|

|                                 |           |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                 |           | Fi'l                       |                         |
| مُرِيدٌ                         | إِرَادَةٌ | يُرِيدُ                    | أَرَادَ                 |
| The one who is intending        | To intend | He intends                 | He intended             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar    | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُرَادٌ                         | إِرَادَةٌ | يُرَادُ                    | أُرِيدَ                 |
| The thing which is intended     | To intend | It is being intended       | It was intended         |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |           | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُرَادٌ                         |           | لَا تُرِيدُ                | أَرِدْ                  |
| Time and Place of intending     |           | You (Male) don't intend!   | You (Male) intend!      |

## Example for Family 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar        | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَفِئٌ                      | اِسْتِفَالَةٌ | يُسْتَفِئُ                 | اِسْتَفَالَ             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسْتَفَالٌ                     | اِسْتِفَالَةٌ | يُسْتَفَالُ                | اُسْتُفِئَ              |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |               | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُسْتَفَالٌ                     |               | لَا تُسْتَفِئُ             | اِسْتَفِئْ              |

Past Tense – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense – Vowel replaced with Yah ي (Blue highlight)

Masdar – Taa ت added to it (Black highlight)

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed (Dark blue highlight)

Example for Family 10 إِسْتَفْعَلَ using ج و ب

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar        | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَجِيبٌ                     | إِسْتِجَابَةٌ | يَسْتَجِيبُ                | إِسْتَجَابَ             |
| The one who is responding       | To respond    | He is responding           | He responded            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |



|                              |               |                           |                     |
|------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| مُسْتَجَابٌ                  | إِسْتِجَابَةً | يُسْتَجَابُ               | أُسْتَجِيبُ         |
| The one who is responded to  | To respond    | He is being responded to  | He was responded to |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |               | Forbidding Form           | Command Form        |
| مُسْتَجَابٌ                  |               | لَا تَسْتَجِبْ            | إِسْتَجِبْ          |
| Time and Place of responding |               | You (Male) don't respond! | You (Male) respond! |

Families - 7 **إِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ** and 8 **إِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ**

Rules:

1. Past and Present Forms – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا
2. Masdar – Vowel is replaced with Yah ي

3. If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including -  
Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed

Example for Family 7 **اِنْفَعَلَ**

Lazim Family – has no Passive Forms

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنْقَالٌ                       | اِنْفِيَالًا    | يَنْقَالُ                  | اِنْقَالَ               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A             | N/A                        | N/A                     |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُنْقَالٌ                       | لَا تَنْقُلْ    |                            | اِنْقُلْ                |

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|

Past and Present Forms – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا (Yellow highlight)

Masdar – Vowel is replaced with Yah ي (Blue highlight)

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed (Black highlight)

Example for Family 7 اِسْتَفْعَلَ using ه و ر

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنْهَارٌ                       | اِنْهِيَارًا | يَنْهَارُ                  | اِنْهَارَ               |
| The one who is being demolished | To demolish  | He is being demolished     | He was demolished       |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|                                    |     |                                 |                           |
|------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
|                                    |     |                                 |                           |
| N/A                                | N/A | N/A                             | N/A                       |
|                                    |     |                                 |                           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       |     | Forbidding Form                 | Command Form              |
| مُنْهَارٌ                          |     | لَا تَنْهَرْ                    | إِنْهَرْ                  |
| Time and Place of being demolished |     | You (Male) don't be demolished! | You (Male) be demolished! |

Example for Family 8 إِفْتَعَلَ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُفْتَالٌ         | إِفْتِيَالٌ | يَفْتَالُ          | إِفْتَالَ       |

|                                 |              |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                 |              |                            |                         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْتَالٌ                       | إِفْتِيَالًا | يُفْتَالُ                  | أُفْتِيلَ               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |              | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفْتَالٌ                       |              | لَا تَفْتَلُ               | إِفْتَلْ                |

Past and Present Forms – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا (Yellow highlight)

Masdar – Vowel is replaced with Yah ي (Blue highlight)

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed (Black highlight)

Ism Far'il – Ism Mafool and Zharf – are the same – context/meaning differentiates between the three

Example for Family 8 اِسْتَفْعَلَ using خ ي ر

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar           | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُخْتَارٌ                       | إِخْتِيَارًا     | يَخْتَارُ                  | اخْتَارَ                |
| The one who is choosing         | To choose        | He is choosing             | He choose               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar           | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُخْتَارٌ                       | إِخْتِيَارًا     | يُخْتَارُ                  | أُخْتِيرَ               |
| The one who is chosen           | To choose        | He is being chosen         | He was chosen           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form  |                            | Command Form            |
| مُخْتَارٌ                       | لا تَخْتَرُ      |                            | اخْتَرِ                 |
| Time and Place of choosing      | You (Male) don't |                            | You (Male)              |

|  |         |         |
|--|---------|---------|
|  | choose! | choose! |
|--|---------|---------|

### Small Families

Ajwafun أَجَوْفٌ only occurs in 3 Sub Families:

In Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

In Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

In Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ

### General Rules

Applies to all Sub Families

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed

Past Tense follows pattern: فَالَ

Passive Past follows pattern: فِئِلَ

Passive Present follows pattern: يُفَالُ

Ism Far'il follows pattern: فَائِلٌ

Ism Mafool follows pattern:

- When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is و - مَفُوءٌ
- When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي - مَفِيْلٌ

Zharf follows pattern:

- When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is و - مَفَالٌ
- When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي - مَفِيْلٌ
- In both - مَفَالَةٌ

Ism Alatun follows pattern:

- When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is و - مِفُوءَالٌ
- When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي - مِفِيَالٌ

### Family Specific Rules

### Past and Present Tense Forms:



In Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Past Tense follows pattern: قَالَ

Present Tense follows pattern: يَفْعُولُ

In Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Past Tense follows pattern: قَالَ

Present Tense follows pattern: يَفْعِيلُ

In Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

Past Tense follows pattern: قَالَ

Present Tense follows pattern: يَفْعَالُ

### Command Form

In Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Command Form follows pattern: فُلْ (Present Tense form: يَفْعُولُ – وَ is dropped for ease of speech)

In Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Command Form follows pattern: فِلْ (Present Tense form: يَفْعِلُ - ي is dropped for ease of speech)

In Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ

Command Form follows pattern: فَلْ (Present Tense form: يَفَالُ - ا is dropped for ease of speech)

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| فَائِلٌ           | N/A    | يَفْعُولُ          | فَالَ           |

| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)   | Masdar   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|---|--|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مَفُوءٌ   | N/A  | يُفَالُ                    | فِيلَ                   |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)   | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)   | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is<br>و<br>مِفُوءَالُ<br>2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is<br>ي<br>مِفِيَالُ | 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is<br>و<br>مَفَالُ<br>2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is<br>ي<br>مَفِيلُ<br>In both<br>مَفَالَةٌ | لا تَفُلْ                  | فُلْ                    |

Present Tense and Ism Mafool are similar – Present يَفُوءُ – change يَ for مَ and make Ism heavy: Ism Mafool: مَفُوءٌ

Example using Sub Family 1: ذوق Using فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ذَائِقٌ                                     | ذُوقًا                       | يَذُوقُ                    | ذَاقَ                   |
| The one who is tasting                      | To taste                     | He is tasting              | He tasted               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَذُوقٌ                                     | ذُوقًا                       | يُذَاقُ                    | ذِيقَ                   |
| The thing that is tasted                    | To taste                     | It is being tasting        | It was tasted           |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِذْوَاقٌ                                   | مَذَاقٌ                      | لَا تَذُقْ                 | ذُقْ                    |

|                  |                           |                         |                   |
|------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
|                  | مَذَاقَةٌ                 |                         |                   |
| Tool for tasting | Time and Place of tasting | You (Male) don't taste! | You (Male) taste! |

## Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَائِلٌ                         | N/A    | يَفْعُلُ                   | فَالَ                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                       | N/A    | يُفَالُ                    | فِيلَ                   |

| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)      | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)  | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
|--|---|-----------------|--------------|
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is<br>و<br>مِفْوَالٌ | 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is<br>و<br>مَقَالٌ                          | لا تَفِلْ       | فِلْ         |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is<br>ي<br>مِفْيَالٌ | 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is<br>ي<br>مَفْيِلٌ<br>In both<br>مَفَالَةٌ |                 |              |

Present Tense and Ism Mafool are similar – Present يَفِيْلُ – change يَ for مَ and make Ism heavy: Ism Mafool: مَفْيِلٌ

Example using Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ - Using ب ي ع

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|

|   |                              |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                              | Fi'l                       |                         |
| بَائِعٌ                                     | بَيْعًا                      | يَبِيعُ                    | بَاعَ                   |
| The one who is selling                      | To sell                      | He is selling              | He sold                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَبِيعٌ                                     | بَيْعًا                      | يُبَاعُ                    | بِيعَ                   |
| The thing that is sold                      | To sell                      | It is being sold           | It was sold             |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مَبِيعٌ                                     | مَبِيعٌ<br>مَبَاعَةٌ         | لَا تَبِعْ                 | بِعْ                    |
| Tool for selling                            | Time and Place               | You (Male) don't           | You (Male) sell!        |

|  |            |       |  |
|--|------------|-------|--|
|  | of selling | sell! |  |
|--|------------|-------|--|

### Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                         | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|--------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                     | N/A                            | يُفَعَّلُ                  | فَعَّلَ                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                         | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                            | يُفَعَّلُ                  | فُعِّلَ                 |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)   | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is              | 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is | لَا تَفْعَلْ               | فَعْلْ                  |



|                                |                                |  |  |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|--|
| و                              | و                              |  |  |
| مِفْوَالٌ                      | مَفَالٌ                        |  |  |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is | 2 <sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is |  |  |
| ي                              | ي                              |  |  |
| مِفْيَالٌ                      | مَفْيَالٌ                      |  |  |
|                                | In both                        |  |  |
|                                | مَفَالَةٌ                      |  |  |

Example using Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ - Using ن ي ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)        | Masdar    | Present Tense<br>Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|--------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| نَائِلٌ                  | نَيْلًا   | يَنَالُ               | نَالَ           |
| The one who is obtaining | To obtain | He is obtaining       | He obtained     |
| Ism Mafool (the          | Masdar    | Passive Present       | Passive Past    |

| thing acted on)                             |                              | Tense Fi'l               | Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| مَنْيِلٌ                                    | نَيْلًا                      | يُنَالُ                  | نِيلَ              |
| The thing that is obtained                  | To obtain                    | It is being obtained     | It was obtained    |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form          | Command Form       |
| مِنْيَالٌ                                   | مَنْيِلٌ<br>مَنَالَةٌ        | لَا تَنْلُ               | نَلْ               |
| Tool for obtaining                          | Time and Place of obtaining  | You (Male) don't obtain! | You (Male) obtain! |

### Other Changes in Sub Families

#### Past Tense

هُنَّ onwards – Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat – if it is from

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ – Harakat is Dhamma

All other Sub Families – Harakat is Kasra

## Sub Family 1 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Grammatical Person | Plural               | Dual                   | Singular         | Gender    |
|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------|------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>فَالُوا      | هُمَا<br>فَالَا        | هُوَ<br>فَالَ    | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هِنَّ<br>فُلْنَ      | هُمَا<br>فَالَتَا      | هِيَ<br>فَالَتْ  | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>فُلْتُمْ | أَنْتُمَا<br>فُلْتُمَا | أَنْتَ<br>فُلْتَ | Masculine |

|               |                   |                        |                  |          |
|---------------|-------------------|------------------------|------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>فُلْتِ  | أَنْتُمَا<br>فُلْتُمَا | أَنْتِ<br>فُلْتِ | Feminine |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>فُلْنَا |                        | أَنَا<br>فُلْتُ  | Both     |

هُنَّ onwards – Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat – if it is from Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ – Harakat is Dhamma (Yellow highlight)

ذوق using فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Example for Past Tense Sub Family 1

|                    |        |      |          |        |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |   |  |  |           |
|---------------|---|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُم<br>ذَاقُوا<br>They tasted                       | هُمَا<br>ذَاقَا<br>Both of them<br>tasted (Men)            | هُوَ<br>ذَاقَ<br>He tasted                   | Masculine |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>ذُقْنَ<br>They tasted<br>(Women)           | هُمَا<br>ذَاقَتَا<br>Both of them<br>tasted<br>(Women)     | هِيَ<br>ذَاقَتْ<br>She<br>Tasted             | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>ذُقْتُمْ<br>All of You<br>Tasted        | أَنْتُمَا<br>ذُقْتُمَا<br>Both of you<br>Tasted<br>(Men)   | أَنْتَ<br>ذُقْتَ<br>You<br>Tasted<br>(Man)   | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>ذُقْتِ<br>All of You<br>Tasted<br>(Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>ذُقْتُمَا<br>Both of you<br>Tasted<br>(Women) | أَنْتِ<br>ذُقْتِ<br>You<br>Tasted<br>(Woman) | Feminine  |

|              |  |                                     |      |
|--------------|--|-------------------------------------|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br><br>ذُقْنَا<br><br>We Tasted | أَنَا<br><br>ذُقْتُ<br><br>I Tasted | Both |
|--------------|--|-------------------------------------|------|

## Sub Family 2 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Grammatical Person | Plural          | Dual              | Singular        | Gender    |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>فَالُوا | هُمَا<br>فَالَا   | هُوَ<br>فَالَ   | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هِنَّ<br>فَلْنَ | هُمَا<br>فَالَتَا | هِيَ<br>فَالَتْ | Feminine  |

|               |                      |                        |                  |           |
|---------------|----------------------|------------------------|------------------|-----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>فِلْتُمْ | أَنْتُمَا<br>فِلْتُمَا | أَنْتَ<br>فِلْتَ | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>فِلْتِنِ   | أَنْتُمَا<br>فِلْتُمَا | أَنْتِ<br>فِلْتِ | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>فِلْنَا    |                        | أَنَا<br>فِلْتُ  | Both      |

هُنَّ onwards – Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat – if it is from

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ – Harakat is Dhamma

All other Sub Families – Harakat is Kasra (Yellow highlight)

Example for Past Tense Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ using ب ي ع

| Grammatical Person | Plural                                  | Dual   | Singular                           | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|--|------------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُم<br>بَاعُوا<br>They sold             | هُمَا<br>بَاعَا<br>Both of them sold (Men)       | هُوَ<br>بَاعَ<br>He sold           | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هِنَّ<br>بِعْنَ<br>They sold (Women)    | هُمَا<br>بَاعَتَا<br>Both of them sold (Women)   | هِيَ<br>بَاعَتْ<br>She sold        | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>بِعْتُمْ<br>All of You sold | أَنْتُمَا<br>بِعْتُمَا<br>Both of you sold (Men) | أَنْتَ<br>بِعْتَ<br>You sold (Man) | Masculine |



|               |                         |                          |                  |          |
|---------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ               | أَنْتُمَا                | أَنْتِ           | Feminine |
|               | بِعْتُنَّ               | بِعْتُمَا                | بِعْتِ           |          |
|               | All of You sold (Women) | Both of you sold (Women) | You sold (Woman) |          |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ                  |                          | أَنَا            | Both     |
|               | بِعْنَا                 |                          | بِعْتُ           |          |
|               | We sold                 |                          | I sold           |          |

### فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4 – Past Tense Chart

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |                      |                        |                  |           |
|---------------|----------------------|------------------------|------------------|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُم<br>فَالُوا       | هُمَا<br>فَالَا        | هُوَ<br>فَالَ    | Masculine |
| Third Person  | هِنَّ<br>فِلْنِ      | هُمَا<br>فَالَتَا      | هِيَ<br>فَالَتْ  | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>فِلْتُمْ | أَنْتُمَا<br>فِلْتُمَا | أَنْتَ<br>فِلْتَ | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِنِ<br>فِلْتِنِ | أَنْتُمَا<br>فِلْتُمَا | أَنْتِ<br>فِلْتِ | Feminine  |

|              |                   |                 |      |
|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>فِلْنَا | أَنَا<br>فِلْتُ | Both |
|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|------|

هُنَّ onwards – Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat – if it is from

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ – Harakat is Dhamma

All other Sub Families – Harakat is Kasra (Yellow highlight)

Example for Past Tense Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ن ي ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural                           | Dual   | Singular                     | Gender    |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|--|------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>نَالُوا<br>They obtained | هُمَا<br>نَالَا<br>Both of them obtained (Men) | هُوَ<br>نَالَ<br>He obtained | Masculine |

|               |   |  |  |           |
|---------------|---|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>نِلْنِ<br>They obtained<br>(Women)                 | هُمَا<br>نَالَتَا<br>Both of them<br>obtained<br>(Women)     | هِيَ<br>نَالَتْ<br>She<br>obtained             | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>نِلْتُمْ<br>All of You<br>obtained              | أَنْتُمَا<br>نِلْتُمَا<br>Both of you<br>obtained<br>(Men)   | أَنْتَ<br>نِلْتَ<br>You<br>obtained<br>(Man)   | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>نِلْتُنَّ<br>All of You<br>obtained<br>(Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>نِلْتُمَا<br>Both of you<br>obtained<br>(Women) | أَنْتِ<br>نِلْتِ<br>You<br>obtained<br>(Woman) | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نِلْنَا<br>We obtained                            |  | أَنَا<br>نِلْتُ<br>I obtained                  | Both      |

### Present Tense

هُنَّ and أَنْتِ versions only - Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat

Harakat is same as the Vowel which is removed from the هُوَ version:

If و is removed (يَقُولُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Dhamma

If ي is removed (يَقِيلُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Kasra

If ا is removed (يَقَالُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Fatah

### Sub Family 1 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |                        |                         |                      |           |
|---------------|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُمْ<br>يَقُولُونَ     | هُمَا<br>يَقُولَانِ     | هُوَ<br>يَقُولُ      | Masculine |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>يَقُلْنَ      | هُمَا<br>تَقُولَانِ     | هِيَ<br>تَقُولُ      | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَقُولُونَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَقُولَانِ | أَنْتَ<br>تَقُولُ    | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>تَقُلْنَ     | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَقُولَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تَقُولِينَ | Feminine  |

|              |                   |                  |      |
|--------------|-------------------|------------------|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>نَقُولُ | أَنَا<br>أَقُولُ | Both |
|--------------|-------------------|------------------|------|

هُنَّ and أَنْتِ versions only - Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat

Harakat is same as the Vowel which is removed from the هُوَ version:

If و is removed (يَقُولُ — هُوَ) the Harakat is Dhamma (Blue highlight)

Example for Present Tense Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ using ذوق

| Grammatical Person | Plural                                 | Dual  | Singular                     | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|---|------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>يَذُوقُونَ<br>They are tasting | هُمَا<br>يَذُوقَانِ<br>Both of them are tasting (Men) | هُوَ<br>يَذُوقُ<br>He tastes | Masculine |

|               |  |  |  |           |
|---------------|--|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>يَذُقْنَ<br>They are<br>tasting<br>(Women)        | هُمَا<br>تَذُوقَانِ<br>Both of them<br>are tasting<br>(Women)    | هِيَ<br>تَذُوقُ<br>She tastes                | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَذُوقُونَ<br>All of You are<br>tasting        | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَذُوقَانِ<br>Both of you<br>are tasting<br>(Men)   | أَنْتَ<br>تَذُوقُ<br>You taste<br>(Man)      | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>تَذُقْنَ<br>All of You are<br>tasting<br>(Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَذُوقَانِ<br>Both of you<br>are tasting<br>(Women) | أَنْتِ<br>تَذُوقِينَ<br>You taste<br>(Woman) | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نَذُوقُ<br>We are tasing                         |  | أَنَا<br>أَذُوقُ<br>I am tasing              | Both      |



## Sub Family 2 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Grammatical Person | Plural                  | Dual                     | Singular           | Gender    |
|--------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>يَفْعِلُونَ     | هُمَا<br>يَفْعِلَانِ     | هُوَ<br>يَفْعِلُ   | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هُنَّ<br>يَفْعِلْنَ     | هُمَا<br>تَفْعِلَانِ     | هِيَ<br>تَفْعِلُ   | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَفْعِلُونَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفْعِلَانِ | أَنْتَ<br>تَفْعِلُ | Masculine |

|               |                    |                         |                       |          |
|---------------|--------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>تَفْلِنِ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفِيلَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تَفِيلَيْنِ | Feminine |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نَفِيلُ  |                         | أَنَا<br>أَفِيلُ      | Both     |

أَنْتِ and أَنْتُمْ versions only - Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat

Harakat is same as the Vowel which is removed from the هُوَ version:

If ي is removed (يَفِيلُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Kasra (Blue highlight)

Example for Present Tense Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ using ب ي ع

| Grammatical Person | Plural   | Dual   | Singular                                   | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُم<br>يَبِيعُونَ<br>They are selling            | هُمَا<br>يَبِيعَانِ<br>Both of them are selling (Men)    | هُوَ<br>يَبِيعُ<br>He is selling           | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هُنَّ<br>يَبِيعْنَ<br>They are selling (Women)   | هُمَا<br>تَبِيعَانِ<br>Both of them are selling (Women)  | هِيَ<br>تَبِيعُ<br>She is selling          | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَبِيعُونَ<br>All of You are selling | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَبِيعَانِ<br>Both of you are selling (Men) | أَنْتَ<br>تَبِيعُ<br>You are selling (Man) | Masculine |

|               |   |  |   |          |
|---------------|---|--|---|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>تَبِيعُنَّ<br>All of You are selling (Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَبِيعَانِ<br>Both of you are selling (Women) | أَنْتِ<br>تَبِيعِينَ<br>You are selling (Woman) | Feminine |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نَبِيعُ<br>We are selling                       |  | أَنَا<br>أَبِيعُ<br>I am selling                | Both     |

### Sub Family 4 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |                        |                         |                       |           |
|---------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُم<br>يَقَالُونَ      | هُمَا<br>يَقَالَانِ     | هُوَ<br>يَقَالُ       | Masculine |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>يَقْلَنَ      | هُمَا<br>تَقَالَانِ     | هِيَ<br>تَقَالُ       | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَقَالُونَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَقَالَانِ | أَنْتَ<br>تَقَالُ     | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>تَقْلَنَ     | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَقَالَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تَقَالَيْنِ | Feminine  |

|              |                   |                  |      |
|--------------|-------------------|------------------|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>نَقَالُ | أَنَا<br>أَقَالُ | Both |
|--------------|-------------------|------------------|------|

هُنَّ and أَنْتُنَّ versions only - Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat

Harakat is same as the Vowel which is removed from the هُوَ version:

If ا is removed (يَقَالُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Fatah (Blue highlight)

Example for Present Tense Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ using ن ي ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural                                   | Dual                                    | Singular                           | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|---|------------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>يَنَالُونَ<br>They are obtaining | هُمَا<br>يَنَالَانِ<br>Both of them are | هُوَ<br>يَنَالُ<br>He is obtaining | Masculine |

|               |                            |                             |                           |           |
|---------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------|
|               |                            | obtaining<br>(Men)          |                           |           |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br><br>يَنْلُنَ      | هُمَا<br><br>تَنَالَانِ     | هِيَ<br><br>تَنَالُ       | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br><br>تَنَالُونَ | أَنْتُمَا<br><br>تَنَالَانِ | أَنْتَ<br><br>تَنَالُ     | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِنَّ<br><br>تَنْلَنَّ | أَنْتُمَا<br><br>تَنَالَانِ | أَنْتِ<br><br>تَنَالَيْنِ | Feminine  |

|              |                                       |                                    |      |  |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------|--|
|              |                                       | (Women)                            |      |  |
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>نَنَالُ<br>We are obtaining | أَنَا<br>أَنَالُ<br>I am obtaining | Both |  |

### Ism Tafdeel (Comparative/Superlative)

Vowel behaves normally

If its أَجُوفٌ و – Vowel appears as و

If its أَجُوفٌ ي – Vowel appears as ي

### Examples

Root Letters: أَفُولُ = ف و ل



Root Letters: أَفْعِلُ = ف ي ل

### Ism Siffa (Adjectives for Permanent Qualities)

Normally follows pattern: فَعِيلٌ

When the ي in فَعِيلٌ meets another vowel (و or ي) the two merge and the ي takes a Shadda and a Kasra (from the original 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter which was replaced with a vowel – فَوَيْلٌ - فَيَّيْلٌ)

### Examples

Root Letters: ف و ل = فَوَيْلٌ becomes فَيِّلٌ

Root Letters: ف ي ل = فَيَّيْلٌ becomes فَيِّلٌ

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Naqisun نَاقِصٌ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ – when one of the Root Letters is و or ي

Naqisun نَاقِصٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is و - نَاقِصٌ و

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is ي - نَاقِصٌ ي

All Families and Forms affected

### Big Families

Both نَاقِصٌ و and نَاقِصٌ ي behave in the same way

## General Rules

1. Past Tense ends in Alif Maksura ي
2. Present Tense ends in a Yah ي – except Family 5 تَفَعَّلَ and Family 6 تَفَاعَلَ – they end with Alif Maksura ي
3. Ism Far'il ends with Kasratin - ِ
4. Ism Mafool ends with Fatahtain - يَّ

## Family Specific Rules

The Masdar in each case follows a different pattern:

1. Families: 3 فَاعَلَ 4 أَفْعَلَ 7 اِنْفَعَلَ 8 اِفْتَعَلَ 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ –

Masdar ends with اء

2. Family 2 فَعَّلَ and Second Masdar in Family 3 فَاعَلَ - Masdar

ends in ة

3. Families: 5 تَفَعَّلَ and 6 تَفَاعَلَ ends with Fatahtain – يَّ

### Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَعِّلٌ                       | تَفْعِيلٌ       | يُفَعِّلُ                  | فَعَّلَ                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَعَّلٌ                       | تَفْعِيلٌ       | يُفَعَّلُ                  | فُعِّلَ                 |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُفَعِّلٌ                       | لَا تُفَعِّلُ   |                            | فَعِّلْ                 |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُزَكِّي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 2 - **فَعَّلَ** - Using **ز ك ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar             | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>مُزَكِّ</b>                  | <b>تَزْكِيَّةٌ</b> | <b>يُزَكِّي</b>            | <b>زَكَّى</b>           |
| The one who is purifying        | To purify          | He/It is being purified    | He/It purified          |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| <b>مُزَكَّى</b>                 | <b>تَزْكِيَّةٌ</b> | <b>يُزَكَّى</b>            | <b>زُكِّيَ</b>          |
| The thing which is purified     | To purify          | He is being purified       | He was purified         |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                    | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |

|                             |                          |                    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| مُزَكِّيٌّ                  | لَا تُزَكِّ              | زَكِّ              |
| Time and Place of purifying | You (Male) don't purify! | You (Male) purify! |

### فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ - Family 3

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَاعٍ                         | فِعَاءٌ<br>مُفَاعَاةٌ | يُفَاعِلُ                  | فَاعَى                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|                              |                       |                 |              |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مُفَاعِيَّ                   | فِعَاءٌ<br>مُفَاعَاةً | يُفَاعِي        | فُؤَعِي      |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |                       | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
| مُفَاعِيَّ                   |                       | لَا تُفَاعِ     | فَاعِ        |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form يُ has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 3 - فَاعَلَ - Using ل ق ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar  | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُلَاقٍ           | لِقَاءٌ | يُلَاقِي           | لَاقَى          |

|                                 |                       |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                 | مُلاَقَاةً            |                            |                         |
| The one who is meeting          | To meet               | He is meeting              | He met                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُلَاقٍ                         | لِقَاءٍ<br>مُلاَقَاةً | يُلَاقِي                   | لُوقِيَ                 |
| The one/thing which is met      | To meet               | He is being met            | He was met              |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُلَاقٍ                         |                       | لَا تُلَاقِ                | لَاقِ                   |
| Time and Place of meeting       |                       | You (Male) don't meet!     | You (Male) meet!        |



## Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense<br>Fi'l      | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْعِلٌ                        | إِفْعَاءٌ       | يُفْعِلُ                   | أَفْعَلَى               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْعَى                         | إِفْعَاءٌ       | يُفْعَى                    | أُفْعِيَ                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُفْعَى                         | لَا تُفْعِلُ    |                            | أَفْعِلْ                |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is

dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 4 - **أَفْعَلَ** - Using **ن ج و**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنَجِّ                         | إِنِّجَاءً | يُنَجِّي                   | أَنَجَّى                |
| The one who is saving           | To save    | He is saving               | He saved                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُنَجَّى                        | إِنِّجَاءً | يُنَجَّى                   | أُنَجِّي                |
| The one who is saved            | To save    | He is being saved          | He was saved            |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |

|                          |                        |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| مُنَجَّى                 | لا تُنَجِّ             | أَنْجِ           |
| Time and Place of saving | You (Male) don't save! | You (Male) save! |

### Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَفَعِّلٌ                     | تَفَعُّلاً | يَتَفَعَّلُ                | تَفَعَّلَ               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَفَعَّلٌ                     | تَفَعُّلاً | يُتَفَعَّلُ                | تُفَعِّلُ               |

| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مُتَفَعِّى                   | لا تَتَفَعَّ    | تَفَعَّ      |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ى** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ - Using م ن ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَمَنَّ                       | تَمَنَّى | يَتَمَنَّى                 | تَمَنَّى                |
| The one who is wishing          | To wish  | He is wishing              | He wished               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|                               |             |                        |                  |
|-------------------------------|-------------|------------------------|------------------|
| مُتَمَنِّئٌ                   | تَمَنِّيًّا | يُتَمَنَّى             | تُمْنِي          |
| The thing which is wished for | To wish     | It is being wished for | It was wished    |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)  |             | Forbidding Form        | Command Form     |
| مُتَمَنِّئٌ                   |             | لَا تَتَمَنَّ          | تَمَنَّ          |
| Time and Place of wishing     |             | You (Male) don't wish! | You (Male) wish! |

### تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُتَفَاعِلٌ       | تَفَاعِيلًا | يَتَفَاعَلُ        | تَفَاعَلَ       |

| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَّفَاعٍ                      | تَّفَاعِيًا | يُتَّفَاعَى                | تُفُوعِي                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |             | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُتَّفَاعٍ                      |             | لا تَتَّفَاعَ              | تَّفَاعَ                |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ - Using ج ف و

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُتَجَافٍ         | تَجَافِيًا | يَتَجَافَى         | تَجَافَى        |

|                                 |             |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                 |             |                            |                         |
| The one who is withdrawing      | To withdraw | He is withdrawing          | He withdrew             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَجَاوٍ                       | تَجَاوِيًا  | يُتَجَاوَى                 | تُجَوِّىَ               |
| The one who is withdrawn        | To withdraw | It is being withdrawn      | He was withdrawn        |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |             | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُتَجَاوٍ                       |             | لا تَتَجَاوَى              | تَجَاوَى                |
| Time and Place of withdrawing   |             | You (Male) don't withdraw! | You (Male) withdraw!    |

### Family 7 – اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Lazim Family – do not have Passive Forms

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنْفَعٍ                        | إِنْفِعَاءً | يَنْفَعِي                  | إَنْفَعَى               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A         | N/A                        | N/A                     |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |             | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُنْفَعِي                       |             | لَا تَنْفَعِ               | إَنْفَعِ                |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form يَنْفَعِي has been dropped (Yellow highlight)



Example of Family 7 - **إِنْفَعَلَ** - Using **ب غ ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                   | Masdar                        | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l            |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| مُنْبَغٍ                            | إِنْبِغَاءٌ                   | يُنْبَغِي                  | إِنْبَغَى                  |
| The thing which is appropriate      | To be appropriate             | It is appropriate          | It was appropriate         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)     | Masdar                        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l    |
| N/A                                 | N/A                           | N/A                        | N/A                        |
|                                     |                               |                            |                            |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)        | Forbidding Form               |                            | Command Form               |
| مُنْبَغِي                           | لا تَنْبَغِ                   |                            | إِنْبَغِ                   |
| Time and Place of being appropriate | You (Male) don't appropriate! |                            | You (Male) be appropriate! |

## Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْتَعٍ                        | اِفْتِعَاءٌ | يَفْتَعِيْ                 | اِفْتَعَى               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْتَعًى                       | اِفْتِعَاءٌ | يُفْتَعَى                  | اُفْتُعِيَ              |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |             | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفْتَعًى                       |             | لَا تَفْتَعِ               | اِفْتَعِ                |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form يُلْتَقَى has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ – Using ل ق ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُلْتَقٍ                        | اِلْتِقَاءٌ | يُلْتَقَى                  | اِلْتَقَى               |
| The one who is meeting          | To meet     | He is meeting              | He met                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُلْتَقًى                       | اِلْتِقَاءٌ | يُلْتَقَى                  | اُلْتُقِيَ              |
| The one who is met              | To meet     | It is being met            | He was met              |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |             | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |

|                           |                        |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| مُلْتَقَى                 | لا تَلْتَقِ            | اَلْتَقِ         |
| Time and Place of meeting | You (Male) don't meet! | You (Male) meet! |

### Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar        | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَفْعٍ                      | اِسْتِفْعَاءٌ | يَسْتَفْعِي                | اِسْتَفْعَى             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسْتَفْعَى                     | اِسْتِفْعَاءٌ | يُسْتَفْعَى                | اُسْتُفْعِيَ            |

| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مُسْتَفْعِي                  | لَا تَسْتَفْعِ  | اسْتَفْعِ    |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 10 - اسْتَفْعَلَ - Using ع ل ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَعْلِي                     | اسْتِعْلَاءً | يَسْتَعْلِي                | اسْتَعْلَى              |
| The one who is rising           | To rise      | He is rising               | He rose                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|                              |                        |                   |              |
|------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| مُسْتَعْلَى                  | اِسْتِعْلَاءً          | يُسْتَعْلَى       | اُسْتُعْلِيَ |
| The one who is risen         | To rise                | He is being risen | He was risen |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |                        | Forbidding Form   | Command Form |
| مُسْتَعْلَى                  | لا تَسْتَعْلِ          | اِسْتَعْلِ        |              |
| Time and Place of rising     | You (Male) don't rise! | You (Male) rise!  |              |

### Other Changes in Big Families

#### Past Tense

1. هُوَ version takes an Alif Maksura ي – if 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي
2. Alif Maksura ي – replaced by يا after هُوَ version
3. يا is removed for هُما – هِيَ – هُمْ (Feminine only) versions

4. **هُم** version – ends in “aw sound” **وَا** instead of “oo sound” **وَا**

### Family 3 – Past Tense Chart - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Grammatical Person | Plural                            | Dual                              | Singular                        | Gender    |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | <b>هُمْ</b><br><b>فَاعِلُوا</b>   | <b>هُمَا</b><br><b>فَاعِلَا</b>   | <b>هُوَ</b><br><b>فَاعِلِي</b>  | Masculine |
| Third Person       | <b>هِنَّ</b><br><b>فَاعِلِينَ</b> | <b>هُمَا</b><br><b>فَاعِلَتَا</b> | <b>هِيَ</b><br><b>فَاعِلَتْ</b> | Feminine  |

|               |                           |                           |                     |           |
|---------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>فَاعَيْتُمْ   | أَنْتُمَا<br>فَاعَيْتُمَا | أَنْتَ<br>فَاعَيْتَ | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِنَّ<br>فَاعَيْتِنَّ | أَنْتُمَا<br>فَاعَيْتُمَا | أَنْتِ<br>فَاعَيْتِ | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>فَاعَيْنَا      |                           | أَنَا<br>فَاعَيْتُ  | Both      |

يا is removed for هُما – هِيَ – هُمْ (Feminine only) versions (Yellow highlight)

Example of Past Tense Family 3 - فَاعَلَ - Using ل ق ي



| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular                              | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|---|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُم<br>لاقُوا<br>They all met                   | هُمَا<br>لاقِيَا<br>Both of them met (Men)          | هُوَ<br>لاقَى<br>He met               | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هُنَّ<br>لاقَيْنَ<br>They all met (Women)       | هُمَا<br>لاقَتَا<br>Both of them met (Women)        | هِيَ<br>لاقَتْ<br>She met             | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>لاقَيْتُمْ<br>You all met           | أَنْتُمَا<br>لاقَيْتُمَا<br>Both of you met (Men)   | أَنْتَ<br>لاقَيْتَ<br>You met (Man)   | Masculine |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُنَّ<br>لاقَيْتُنَّ<br>You all met (Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>لاقَيْتُمَا<br>Both of you met (Women) | أَنْتِ<br>لاقَيْتِ<br>You met (Woman) | Feminine  |

|              |  |                                     |      |
|--------------|--|-------------------------------------|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br><br>لَاقَيْنَا<br><br>We met | أَنَا<br><br>لَاقَيْتُ<br><br>I met | Both |
|--------------|--|-------------------------------------|------|

### Present Tense

1. يا is removed for هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sounds”
2. أَنْتِ and أَنْتِ forms look the same

### Family 3 – Present Tense Chart - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |                         |                           |                      |           |
|---------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُمْ<br>يُفَاعُونَ      | هُمَا<br>يُفَاعِيَانِ     | هُوَ<br>يُفَاعِي     | Masculine |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>يُفَاعِينَ     | هُمَا<br>تُفَاعِيَانِ     | هِيَ<br>تُفَاعِي     | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>تُفَاعُونَ  | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُفَاعِيَانِ | أَنْتَ<br>تُفَاعِي   | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>تُفَاعِينَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُفَاعِيَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تُفَاعِينَ | Feminine  |

|              |                    |                   |      |
|--------------|--------------------|-------------------|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>نُفَاعِي | أَنَا<br>أُفَاعِي | Both |
|--------------|--------------------|-------------------|------|

يا is removed for هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sounds” (Yellow highlight)

أَنْتِ and أَنْتَ forms look the same (Blue highlight)

Example of Present Tense Family 3 - فاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ – Using ل ق ي

| Grammatical Person | Plural                                    | Dual   | Singular                         | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|--|----------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>يُلاقُونَ<br>They all are meeting | هُمَا<br>يُلاقِيَانِ<br>Both of them are meeting (Men) | هُوَ<br>يُلاقِي<br>He is meeting | Masculine |

|               |  |   |  |           |
|---------------|--|---|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>يُلَاقِينَ</p> <p>They all are meeting (Women)</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>تُلَاقِيَانِ</p> <p>Both of them are meeting (Women)</p>    | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>تُلَاقِي</p> <p>She is meeting</p>              | Feminine  |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تُلَاقُونَ</p> <p>You all are meeting</p>       | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تُلَاقِيَانِ</p> <p>Both of you are meeting (Men)</p>   | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تُلَاقِي</p> <p>You are meeting (Man)</p>     | Masculine |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تُلَاقِينَ</p> <p>You all are meeting (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تُلَاقِيَانِ</p> <p>Both of you are meeting (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تُلَاقِينَ</p> <p>You are meeting (Woman)</p> | Feminine  |
| First Person  | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>نُلَاقِي</p> <p>We are meeting</p>                |   | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>أُلَاقِي</p> <p>I am meeting</p>               | Both      |

## Families – 5 تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ and 6 تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

In both Families the Present Tense Form ends in Alif Maksura **ى** – this creates a Fatah sound across the chart

### Example for Present Tense Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Grammatical Person | Plural                 | Dual                    | Singular             | Gender    |
|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>يَتَفَعَّلُونَ | هُمَا<br>يَتَفَعَّلَانِ | هُوَ<br>يَتَفَعَّلِي | Masculine |

|               |                            |                             |                          |           |
|---------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>تَتَفَعَّلْنَ     | هُمَا<br>تَتَفَعَّلَانِ     | هِيَ<br>تَتَفَعَّلِي     | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَتَفَعَّلُونَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَتَفَعَّلَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تَتَفَعَّلِي   | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>تَتَفَعَّلِينَ   | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَتَفَعَّلَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تَتَفَعَّلِينَ | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نَتَفَعَّلِي     |                             | أَنَا<br>أَتَفَعَّلِي    | Both      |

يا is removed for هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sounds” (Yellow highlight)

أَنْتِ and أَنْتَ forms look the same (Blue highlight)

Example of Present Tense Family 5 - تَفْعَلُ يَتَفَعَّلُ – Using م ن ي

| Grammatical Person | Plural   | Dual  | Singular                             | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|---|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُم<br>يَتَمَنُّونَ<br>They all are wishing            | هُمَا<br>يَتَمَنَّيَانِ<br>Both of them are wishing (Men)   | هُوَ<br>يَتَمَنَّى<br>He is wishing  | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هُنَّ<br>يَتَمَنَّيْنَ<br>They all are wishing (Women) | هُمَا<br>تَتَمَنَّيَانِ<br>Both of them are wishing (Women) | هِيَ<br>تَتَمَنَّى<br>She is wishing | Feminine  |



|               |  |   |   |           |
|---------------|--|---|---|-----------|
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَتَمَنُّونَ</p> <p>You all are wishing</p>           | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَتَمَنِّيَانِ</p> <p>Both of You are wishing (Men)</p>   | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَتَمَنِّي</p> <p>You are wishing</p>            | Masculine |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>تَتَمَنَّيْنَ</p> <p>You all are wishing (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَتَمَنِّيَانِ</p> <p>Both of You are wishing (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَتَمَنِّيْنَ</p> <p>You are wishing (Woman)</p> | Feminine  |
| First Person  | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>نَتَمَنِّي</p> <p>We are wishing</p>                    |   | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>أَتَمَنِّي</p> <p>I am wishing</p>                | Both      |

## Passive Past Tense

1. يا is removed for هُمْ to prevent “ew sound”

## Family 3 – Passive Past Tense Chart - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Grammatical Person | Plural            | Dual                | Singular          | Gender    |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>فُوعُوا   | هُمَا<br>فُوعِيَا   | هُوَ<br>فُوعِي    | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هُنَّ<br>فُوعِينَ | هُمَا<br>فُوعِيَتَا | هِيَ<br>فُوعِيَتْ | Feminine  |

|               |                          |                          |                    |           |
|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>فُوعِيتُمْ   | أَنْتُمَا<br>فُوعِيتُمَا | أَنْتَ<br>فُوعِيتَ | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِنَّ<br>فُوعِيتِنَّ | أَنْتُمَا<br>فُوعِيتُمَا | أَنْتِ<br>فُوعِيتِ | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>فُوعِينَا      |                          | أَنَا<br>فُوعِيتُ  | Both      |

يا is removed for هُمْ to prevent “ew sound” (Yellow highlight)

Example of Passive Past Tense Family 3 - فَاعَلَ - Using ل ق ي

|                    |        |      |          |        |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |   |   |  |           |
|---------------|---|---|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُم<br>لُوقُوا<br>They all were met                   | هُمَا<br>لُوقِيَا<br>Both of them were met (Men)          | هُوَ<br>لُوقِيَ<br>He was met              | Masculine |
| Third Person  | هِنَّ<br>لُوقِينَ<br>They all were met (Women)        | هُمَا<br>لُوقِيَتَا<br>Both of them were met (Women)      | هِيَ<br>لُوقِيَتْ<br>She was met           | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>لُوقَيْتُمْ<br>You all were met           | أَنْتُمَا<br>لُوقَيْتُمَا<br>Both of you were met (Men)   | أَنْتَ<br>لُوقِيتَ<br>You were met (Man)   | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>لُوقَيْتُنَّ<br>You all were met (Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>لُوقَيْتُمَا<br>Both of you were met (Women) | أَنْتِ<br>لُوقِيتِ<br>You were met (Woman) | Feminine  |

|              |                                    |                                |      |
|--------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>لُوقِينَا<br>We were met | أَنَا<br>لُوقِيتُ<br>I was met | Both |
|--------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------|

### Passive Present Tense

1. Passive Present ends with Alif Maksura ى which creates Fatah sounds throughout chart
2. Alif Maksura ى dropped in هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sound”
3. أَنْتِ and أَنْتُ forms look the same

### Family 3 – Passive Present Tense Chart - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Grammatical Person | Plural                 | Dual                      | Singular           | Gender    |
|--------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُم<br>يُفَاعُونَ      | هُمَا<br>يُفَاعِيَانِ     | هُوَ<br>يُفَاعِي   | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هِنَّ<br>يُفَاعِينَ    | هُمَا<br>تُفَاعِيَانِ     | هِيَ<br>تُفَاعِي   | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تُفَاعُونَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُفَاعِيَانِ | أَنْتَ<br>تُفَاعِي | Masculine |

|               |                        |                           |                        |          |
|---------------|------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>تُفَاعِلِينَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُفَاعِلَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تُفَاعِلِينَ | Feminine |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نُفَاعِلِي   | أَنَا<br>أُفَاعِلِي       |                        | Both     |

Alif Maksura ى dropped in هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sound” (Yellow highlight)

أَنْتِ and أَنْتِ forms look the same (Blue highlight)

Example of Passive Present Tense Family 3 - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ - Using ل  
ق ي

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |   |   |  |           |
|---------------|---|---|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُم<br>يُلاقُونَ<br>They all are being met              | هُمَا<br>يُلاقِيَانِ<br>Both of them are being met (Men)    | هُوَ<br>يُلاقِي<br>He is being met               | Masculine |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>يُلاقِينَ<br>They all are being met (Women)    | هُمَا<br>تُلاقِيَانِ<br>Both of them are being met (Women)  | هِيَ<br>تُلاقِي<br>She is being met              | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>تُلاقُونَ<br>You all are being met          | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُلاقِيَانِ<br>Both of you are being met (Men) | أَنْتَ<br>تُلاقِي<br>You are being met (Man)     | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>تُلاقِينَ<br>You all are being met (Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُلاقِيَانِ<br>Both of you are being met       | أَنْتِ<br>تُلاقِينَ<br>You are being met (Woman) | Feminine  |



|              |  |                                     |      |  |
|--------------|--|-------------------------------------|------|--|
|              |  | (Women)                             |      |  |
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>نُلَاقِي<br>We are being met | أَنَا<br>أُلَاقِي<br>I am being met | Both |  |

### Commanding and Forbidding Forms

In أَنْتَ form for Commanding/Forbidding – Vowel is removed

Rest of Commanding/Forbidding constructed normally

### Family 3 – Commanding and Forbidding Chart - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Grammatical Person | Plural           | Dual             | Singular         | Gender    |
|--------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------|
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ         | أَنْتُمَا        | أَنْتَ           | Masculine |
|                    | تُفَاعُونَ       | تُفَاعِيَانِ     | تُفَاعِيْ        |           |
|                    | Commanding Form: | Commanding Form: | Commanding Form: |           |
|                    | فَاعُوا          | فَاعِيَا         | فَاعٍ            |           |
| Second Person      | Forbidding Form: | Forbidding Form: | Forbidding Form: | Feminine  |
|                    | لا تُفَاعُوا     | لا تُفَاعِيَا    | لا تُفَاعِ       |           |
|                    | أَنْتِ           | أَنْتُمَا        | أَنْتِ           |           |
|                    | تُفَاعِينَ       | تُفَاعِيَانِ     | تُفَاعِيْ        |           |
| Second Person      | Commanding Form: | Commanding Form: | Commanding Form: | Feminine  |
|                    | فَاعِينَ         | فَاعِيَا         | فَاعِيْ          |           |
|                    | أَنْتِ           | أَنْتُمَا        | أَنْتِ           |           |
|                    | تُفَاعِينَ       | تُفَاعِيَانِ     | تُفَاعِيْ        |           |

|  |                                     |                                     |                                   |  |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
|  | Forbidding Form:<br>لا تُفَاعِلِينَ | Forbidding Form:<br>لا تُفَاعِلِيَا | Forbidding Form:<br>لا تُفَاعِلِي |  |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|

In أَنْتَ form for Commanding/Forbidding – Vowel is removed (Yellow highlight)

Example of Commanding and Forbidding Forms for Family 3 - فَاعِلَ  
 يُفَاعِلُ – Using ل ق ي – to meet

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular   | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|---|--|-----------|
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تُلَاقُونَ<br>Commanding Form:<br>لَاقُوا | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُلَاقِيَانِ<br>Commanding Form:<br>لَاقِيَا | أَنْتِ<br>تُلَاقِي<br>Commanding Form:<br>لَاقِي | Masculine |

|               |  |   |  |          |
|---------------|--|---|--|----------|
|               | <p>Forbidding Form:</p> <p>لا تُلَاقُوا</p>  | <p>Forbidding Form:</p> <p>لا تُلَاقِيَا</p>  | <p>You (man) meet!</p> <p>Forbidding Form:</p> <p>لا تُلَاقِي</p> <p>You (man) do not meet!</p>                            |          |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُ</p> <p>تُلَاقِيَنَّ</p> <p>Commanding Form:</p> <p>لَاقِيَنَّ</p> <p>Forbidding Form:</p> <p>لا تُلَاقِيَنَّ</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تُلَاقِيَانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form:</p> <p>لَاقِيَا</p> <p>Forbidding Form:</p> <p>لا تُلَاقِيَا</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تُلَاقِيَنَّ</p> <p>Commanding Form:</p> <p>لَاقِيَنَّ</p> <p>Forbidding Form:</p> <p>لا تُلَاقِيَنَّ</p> | Feminine |

## Ism Far'il

1. Masculine Singular Form - Rafa and Jar Status - take Kasratain ِ
2. Masculine Singular Form - Nasab Status takes يَّا
3. يا is present for every other form except Masculine Plural

## فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ – Masculine Chart for Family 3

Ism Fari'l is مُفَاعِلٌ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Plural        | Dual          | Singular     | Status         |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| مُفَاعِلُونَ  | مُفَاعِلَانِ  | مُفَاعِلٌ    | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُفَاعِلَيْنِ | مُفَاعِلَيْنِ | مُفَاعِلِيَّ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُفَاعِلِينَ  | مُفَاعِلَيْنِ | مُفَاعِلٌ    | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Masculine Singular Form - Rafa and Jar Status - take Kasratain ِ (Yellow highlight)

Masculine Singular Form - Nasab Status takes يَّا (Blue highlight)

يا is present for every other form except Masculine Plural (Green highlight)

Example for Masculine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلَ using ل ق ي

Ism Fari'l is مُلَاقٍ

| Plural     | Dual          | Singular   | Status         |
|------------|---------------|------------|----------------|
| مُلَاقُونَ | مُلَاقِيَانِ  | مُلَاقٍ    | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُلَاقِينَ | مُلَاقِيَيْنِ | مُلَاقِيًا | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُلَاقِينَ | مُلَاقِيَيْنِ | مُلَاقٍ    | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Ism Fari'l is مُفَاعِلٌ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Plural       | Dual            | Singular    | Status         |
|--------------|-----------------|-------------|----------------|
| مُفَاعِيَاتٌ | مُفَاعِيَتَانِ  | مُفَاعِيَةٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُفَاعِيَاتٍ | مُفَاعِيَتَيْنِ | مُفَاعِيَةً | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُفَاعِيَاتِ | مُفَاعِيَتَيْنِ | مُفَاعِيَةٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Example for Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ using ل ق ي

Ism Fari'l is مُلَاقٍ

| Plural       | Dual            | Singular    | Status         |
|--------------|-----------------|-------------|----------------|
| مُلَاقِيَاتٌ | مُلَاقِيَتَانِ  | مُلَاقِيَةٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُلَاقِيَاتٍ | مُلَاقِيَتَيْنِ | مُلَاقِيَةً | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُلَاقِيَاتِ | مُلَاقِيَتَيْنِ | مُلَاقِيَةٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

## Ism Mafool

1. Masculine Singular Forms end in **ي**
2. Masculine Dual and Feminine Plural Forms – Alif Maksura **ى** is

replaced by **يا**

## فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ – Masculine Chart for Family 3

Ism Mafool is **مُفَاعِلٌ**

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Plural       | Dual          | Singular  | Status         |
|--------------|---------------|-----------|----------------|
| مُفَاعِلُونَ | مُفَاعِلَانِ  | مُفَاعِلٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُفَاعِلِينَ | مُفَاعِلَيْنِ | مُفَاعِلٌ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُفَاعِلِينَ | مُفَاعِلَيْنِ | مُفَاعِلٌ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Masculine Singular Forms end in **ي** (Yellow highlight)



Masculine Dual Form – Alif Maksura ى is replaced by يا (Blue highlight)

Example for Masculine Chart for Family 3 – فاعَل using ل ق ي

Ism Mafool is مُلاقٍ

| Plural    | Dual         | Singular | Status         |
|-----------|--------------|----------|----------------|
| مُلاقُونَ | مُلاقِيَانِ  | مُلاقٍ   | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُلاقِينَ | مُلاقِيَيْنِ | مُلاقٍ   | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُلاقِينَ | مُلاقِيَيْنِ | مُلاقٍ   | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فاعَل يُفاعِلُ

Ism Mafool is مُفاعِلٌ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Plural       | Dual           | Singular   | Status         |
|--------------|----------------|------------|----------------|
| مُفَاعِيَاتٌ | مُفَاعَاتَانِ  | مُفَاعَاةٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُفَاعِيَاتٍ | مُفَاعَاتَيْنِ | مُفَاعَاةً | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُفَاعِيَاتِ | مُفَاعَاتَيْنِ | مُفَاعَاةٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Feminine Plural Form – Alif Maksura ي is replaced by يا (Yellow highlight)

Example for Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلَ using ل ق ي

Ism Mafool is مُلَاقِيٌ

| Plural       | Dual           | Singular   | Status         |
|--------------|----------------|------------|----------------|
| مُلَاقِيَاتٌ | مُلَاقَاتَانِ  | مُلَاقَاةٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُلَاقِيَاتٍ | مُلَاقَاتَيْنِ | مُلَاقَاةً | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُلَاقِيَاتِ | مُلَاقَاتَيْنِ | مُلَاقَاةٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

## Zharf

Same rules as Ism Mafool:

1. Masculine Singular Forms end in **يَ**
2. Masculine Dual Form – Alif Maksura **ى** is replaced by **يا**
3. Difference – Feminine Plural is used instead of Masculine plural –  
1 chart for both Masculine and Feminine

## Zharf Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلَ يَفَاعِلُ

Zharf is مُفَاعِلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Plural       | Dual          | Singular  | Status         |
|--------------|---------------|-----------|----------------|
| مُفَاعِلَاتُ | مُفَاعِلَانِ  | مُفَاعِلٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُفَاعِلَاتِ | مُفَاعِلَيْنِ | مُفَاعِلٌ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |

|              |               |            |             |
|--------------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| مُفَاعِيَاتٍ | مُفَاعِيَيْنِ | مُفَاعِيٍّ | جَرٌّ - Jar |
|--------------|---------------|------------|-------------|

Example Zharf Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلَ using ل ق ي

Zharf is مُلَاقِيٍّ

| Plural        | Dual           | Singular   | Status         |
|---------------|----------------|------------|----------------|
| مُلَاقِيَّاتٌ | مُلَاقِيَّانِ  | مُلَاقِيٍّ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُلَاقِيَّاتٍ | مُلَاقِيَّيْنِ | مُلَاقِيٍّ | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| مُلَاقِيَّاتٍ | مُلَاقِيَّيْنِ | مُلَاقِيٍّ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### Masdar

Masdar of most families fit normally into the Masculine chart

Exception – Family 5 – تَفَعَّلَ and Family 6 – تَفَاعَلَ

These two follow pattern of Ism Far'il:

1. Masculine Singular Form - Rafa and Jar Status - take Kasratāin ِ

2. Masculine Singular Form - Nasab Status takes يَا

3. يَا is present for every other form except Masculine Plural

4. Difference – Feminine Plural is used instead of Masculine plural –

1 chart for both Masculine and Feminine

Masdar Chart for Family 5 – فَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Zharf is مُتَفَعِّلٌ Ism Far'il is مُتَفَعِّعٌ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Plural       | Dual          | Singular   | Status         |
|--------------|---------------|------------|----------------|
| تَفَعَّلَاتُ | تَفَعَّلَانِ  | تَفَعَّلَ  | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| تَفَعَّلَاتِ | تَفَعَّلَيْنِ | تَفَعَّلَا | نَصَبٌ - Nasab |
| تَفَعَّلَاتٍ | تَفَعَّلَيْنِ | تَفَعَّلَ  | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

Example Masdar Chart for Family 5 – تَفَعَّلَ using م ن ي

Zharf is مُتَمَنٍّ Ism Far'il is مُتَمَنِّىً

| Plural       | Dual          | Singular   | Status         |
|--------------|---------------|------------|----------------|
| تَمَنِّيَاتُ | تَمَنِّيَانِ  | تَمَنٍّ    | رَفْعُ - Rafa  |
| تَمَنِّيَاتٍ | تَمَنِّيَيْنِ | تَمَنِّيَا | نَصَبُ - Nasab |
| تَمَنِّيَاتِ | تَمَنِّيَيْنِ | تَمَنٍّ    | جَرُّ - Jar    |

### Small Families

#### Past Tense/Present Tense

Some cases: the Harakat is replaced with long vowel

#### Sub Family 1- فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Past Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif ا

Present Tense “u sound” shows as a و

فَعَا يَفْعُو becomes فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

### Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Past Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif Maksura ى

Present Tense “i sound” shows as a Yah ي

فَعَى يَفْعِي becomes فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

### Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Past Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif Maksura ى

Present Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif Maksura ى

فَعَى يَفْعَى becomes فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

## Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Past Tense “i sound” shows as a Yah ي

Present Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif Maksura ى

فَعِيَ يَفْعَى becomes فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

### Passives

Follow the Pattern:

Passive Past Tense: فُعِيَ

Passive Present Tense: يُفْعَى

### Ism Far'il

Follows the Pattern: فَاعٍ

### Ism Mafool

For Sub Family 1- فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - follows pattern: مَفْعُوٌّ



For all other Sub Families – follows pattern: مَفْعِيٌّ

Zharf

Follows the Pattern: مَفْعِيٌّ

Ism Alatun

Follows the Pattern: مِفْعَاةٌ

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense<br>Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| فَاعٍ             | N/A    | يَفْعُوْ              | فَعَا           |

| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مَفْعُوٌّ                                   | N/A                          | يُفْعَى                    | فُعِيَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَاةٌ                                   | مَفْعَى                      | لَا تَفْعُ                 | أَفْعُ                  |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form فُ has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 1: فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using ت ل و

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
|                   |        |                    |                 |

|   |                              |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                              |                            |                         |
| تَالٍ                                       | تِلَاوَةً                    | يَتْلُو                    | تَلَا                   |
| The one who is reciting                     | To recite                    | He is reciting             | He recited/followed     |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَتْلُوءٌ                                   | تِلَاوَةً                    | يُتْلَى                    | تُلِيَ                  |
| The thing that is recited                   | To recite                    | It is being recited        | It was recited          |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِثْلَاءٌ                                   | مَتْلًى                      | لَا تَتْلُ                 | اَتْلُ                  |
| Tool for reciting                           | Time and Place of reciting   | You (Male) don't recite!   | You (Male) recite!      |

## Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعٍ                                       | N/A                          | يَفْعِي                    | فَعَّى                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعِيٌّ                                   | N/A                          | يُفْعَى                    | فُعِيَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَاةٌ                                   | مَفْعَى                      | لَا تَفْعِ                 | إِفْعِ                  |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 2: **رَمَى** Using **يُ** **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>رَامٍ</b>                    | <b>رَمْيَةٌ</b> | <b>يُرْمِي</b>             | <b>رَمَى</b>            |
| The one who is throwing         | To throw        | He is throwing             | He threw                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| <b>مَرْمِيٌّ</b>                | <b>رَمْيَةٌ</b> | <b>يُرْمَى</b>             | <b>رُمِيَ</b>           |
| The thing that is               | To throw        | It is being thrown         | It was thrown           |

|   |                              |                         |                   |
|---|------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| thrown                                      |                              |                         |                   |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form         | Command Form      |
| مِرْمَاةٌ                                   | مَرْمَى                      | لا تَرْمِ               | اَرْمِ            |
| Tool for throwing                           | Time and Place of throwing   | You (Male) don't throw! | You (Male) throw! |

### فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 3

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

|                                 |        |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
| فَاعٍ                           | N/A    | يَفْعَى                    | فَعَى                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|   |                              |                 |              |
|---|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
|   |                              |                 |              |
| مَفْعِيّ                                    | N/A                          | يُفْعَى         | فُعِيّ       |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
| مِفْعَاةٌ                                   | مَفْعَى                      | لَا تَفْعَ      | إِفْعَ       |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 3: فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ط غ ي

|                   |        |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|                   |        |                    |                 |

|   |                                 |                              |                         |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| طَاغٍ                                       | طُغْيَانًا                      | يُطْغَى                      | طَغِيَ                  |
| The one who is transgressing                | To transgress                   | He is transgressing          | He transgressed         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l   | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَطْغِيٌّ                                   | طُغْيَانًا                      | يُطْغَى                      | طَغِيَ                  |
| The thing that is transgressed              | To transgress                   | It is being transgressed     | It was transgressed     |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form              | Command Form            |
| مِطْغَاةٌ                                   | مَطْغًى                         | لَا تَطْغَ                   | إِطْغَ                  |
| Tool for transgressing                      | Time and Place of transgressing | You (Male) don't transgress! | You (Male) transgress!  |



## فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 4

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعٍ                                       | N/A                          | يَفْعِي                    | فَعِيَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعِيٌّ                                   | N/A                          | يُفْعَى                    | فُعِيَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَاةٌ                                   | مَفْعَى                      | لَا تَفْعَ                 | إِفْعَ                  |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 4: **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ** Using **ب ق ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar         | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>بَاقٍ</b>                    | <b>بَقَاءٌ</b> | <b>يَبْقَى</b>             | <b>بَقِيَ</b>           |
| The one who is remaining        | To remain      | He is remaining            | He remained             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar         | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| <b>مَبْقِيٌ</b>                 | <b>بَقَاءٌ</b> | <b>يُبْقَى</b>             | <b>بُقِيَ</b>           |
| The thing that is               | To remain      | It is being made           | It was made to          |

|   |                              |                          |                    |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| made to remain                              |                              | to remain                | remain             |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form          | Command Form       |
| مَبْقَاةٌ                                   | مَبْقَى                      | لَا تَبْقَ               | إِبْقَ             |
| Tool for remaining                          | Time and Place of remaining  | You (Male) don't remain! | You (Male) remain! |

### فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 5

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعٍ                           | N/A    | يَفْعِي                    | فَعِيَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|   |                              |                 |              |
|---|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
|   |                              |                 |              |
| مَفْعِيّ                                    | N/A                          | يُفْعَى         | فُعِيَ       |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
| مِفْعَاةٌ                                   | مَفْعَى                      | لَا تَفْعِ      | إِفْعِ       |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form يِ has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

### فَعْلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 6

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
|                   |        |                    |                 |

|   |                              |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                              |                            |                         |
| فَاعٍ                                       | N/A                          | يَفْعُوْ                   | فَعَا                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A   | N/A                          | N/A                        | N/A                     |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَاةٌ                                   | مَفْعَى                      | لَا تَفْعُ                 | أَفْعُ                  |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form فُعْ has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

## Other changes in Small Families

Similar to changes in Big Families but:

If 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is و – then و comes back in Past Tense and Present Tense charts

If 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is ي – then ي comes back in Past Tense and Present Tense charts

### Sub Family 1 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual   | Singular   | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَوْا<br>Present Tense:<br>يَفْعُونَ | هُمَا<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَوَا<br>Present Tense:<br>يَفْعُوَانِ | هُوَ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَا<br>Present Tense:<br>يَفْعُوُ | Masculine |

|               |  |  |   |           |
|---------------|--|--|---|-----------|
|               |  |  |   |           |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَوْنَ<br>Present Tense:<br>يَفْعُونَ      | هُمَا<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَتَا<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعُوَانِ         | هِيَ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَتْ<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعُوْ     | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَوْتُمْ<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعُونَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَوْتُمَا<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعُوَانِ | أَنْتَ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَوْتَ<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعُوْ | Masculine |

|               |  |   |   |          |
|---------------|--|---|---|----------|
|               |  |   |   |          |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>فَعَوْتُ</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَفْعُلُ</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>فَعَوْتُمَا</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَفْعُلَانِ</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>فَعَوْتِ</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَفْعِلِينَ</p> | Feminine |
| First Person  | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>فَعَوْنَا</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>نَفْعُو</p> |   | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>فَعَوْتُ</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>أَفْعُو</p>      | Both     |



|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

Example of Sub Family 1 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

using ت ل و

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual   | Singular   | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَّوْا</p> <p>They all recited</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>يَتْلُونَ</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَّوَا</p> <p>Both of them recited (Men)</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>يَتْلَوَانِ</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَا</p> <p>He recited/followed</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> | Masculine |

|              |  |  |   |          |
|--------------|--|--|---|----------|
|              | They all are reciting  | Both of them are reciting (Men)  | يَتْلُو<br>He is reciting/following   |          |
| Third Person | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَوْنَ</p> <p>They all recited (Women)</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>يَتْلُونَّ</p> <p>They all are reciting (Women)</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَتَا</p> <p>Both of them recited (Women)</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَتْلَوَانِ</p> <p>Both of them are reciting (Women)</p> | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَتْ</p> <p>She recited</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَتْلُو</p> <p>She is reciting</p> | Feminine |

|               |  |  |  |           |
|---------------|--|--|--|-----------|
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَوْتُمْ</p> <p>You all recited</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَتْلُونَ</p> <p>You all are reciting</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَوْتُمَا</p> <p>Both of You recited (Men)</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَتْلَوَانِ</p> <p>Both of You are reciting (Men)</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَوْتَ</p> <p>You recited (Man)</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَتْلُو</p> <p>You are reciting (Man)</p> | Masculine |
|               |  |  |  |           |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتِنَّ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَوْتُنَّ</p> <p>All of You recited (Women)</p>   | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَوْتُمَا</p> <p>Both of You recited (Women)</p>  | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>تَلَوْتَ</p> <p>You recited (Woman)</p>  | Feminine  |
|               |  |  |  |           |

|              |  |   |   |      |
|--------------|--|---|---|------|
|              | Present Tense:<br>تَتْلُونَ<br>You all are reciting (Women)  | Present Tense:<br>تَتْلُوَانِ<br>Both of You are reciting (Women) | Present Tense:<br>تَتْلِينَ<br>You are reciting (Woman)   |      |
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>Past Tense:<br>تَلَوْنَا<br>We recited<br><br>Present Tense:<br>نَتْلُو<br>We are reciting |   | أَنَا<br>Past Tense:<br>تَلَوْتُ<br>I recited<br><br>Present Tense:<br>أَتْلُو<br>I am reciting | Both |

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

## Sub Family 2 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

| Grammatical Person | Plural   | Dual  | Singular   | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|---|--|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>فَعَوْا</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>يَفْعُونَ</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>فَعَيَا</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>يَفْعِيَانِ</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>فَعَى</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>يَفْعِي</p> | Masculine |

|               |  |  |  |           |
|---------------|--|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَيْنَ<br>Present Tense:<br>يَفْعَيْنَ     | هُمَا<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَتَا<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعِيَانِ         | هِيَ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَتْ<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعِي     | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَيْتُمْ<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعُونَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَيْتُمَا<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعِيَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَيْتَ<br>Present Tense:<br>تَفْعِي | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَيْتِ<br>Present                         | أَنْتُمَا<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَيْتُمَا<br>Present                       | أَنْتِ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَيْتِ<br>Present                   | Feminine  |

|              |   |                       |   |      |
|--------------|---|-----------------------|---|------|
|              | Tense:<br>تَفْعِلْنَ  | Tense:<br>تَفْعِيَانِ | Tense:<br>تَفْعِلَنَّ   |      |
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَعَيْنَا<br>Present Tense:<br>نَفْعِي |                       | أَنَا<br>Past Tense:<br>فَعَعَيْتُ<br>Present Tense:<br>أَفْعِي | Both |

فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ - Example of Sub Family 2 - Past and Present Tense Chart

رمي using

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual   | Singular   | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person       | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَوْا</p> <p>They all threw</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>يَرْمُونَ</p> <p>They all are throwing</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَيَا</p> <p>Both of them threw (Men)</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>يَرْمِيَانِ</p> <p>Both of them are throwing (Men)</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَى</p> <p>He threw</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>يَرْمِي</p> <p>He is throwing</p> | Masculine |
| Third Person       | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَيْنَ</p> <p>They all threw (Women)</p>   | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَتَا</p> <p>Both of them threw (Women)</p>   | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَتْ</p> <p>She threw</p>  | Feminine  |



|               |   |   |  |           |
|---------------|---|---|--|-----------|
|               | Present Tense:<br>يَرْمِينَ<br>They all are throwing (Women)  | Present Tense:<br>تَرْمِيَانِ<br>Both of them are throwing (Women)  | Present Tense:<br>تَرْمِيْ<br>She is throwing  |           |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>Past Tense:<br>رَمَيْتُمْ<br>You all threw<br><br>Present Tense:<br>تَرْمُونَ<br>You all are throwing | أَنْتُمَا<br>Past Tense:<br>رَمَيْتُمَا<br>Both of You threw (Men)<br><br>Present Tense:<br>تَرْمِيَانِ<br>Both of You are throwing (Men) | أَنْتَ<br>Past Tense:<br>رَمَيْتَ<br>You threw (Man)<br><br>Present Tense:<br>تَرْمِيْ<br>You are throwing | Masculine |

|               |   |  |  |          |
|---------------|---|--|--|----------|
|               |   |  | (Man)  |          |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَيْتُنَّ</p> <p>All of You threw (Women)</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَرْمِينَ</p> <p>You all are throwing (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَيْتُمَا</p> <p>Both of You threw (Women)</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَرْمِيَانِ</p> <p>Both of You are throwing (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَيْتِ</p> <p>You threw (Woman)</p> <p>Present Tense:</p> <p>تَرْمِينَ</p> <p>You are throwing (Woman)</p> | Feminine |

| First Person | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَيْنَا</p> <p>We threw</p><br><p>Present Tense:</p> <p>نَرْمِي</p> <p>We are throwing</p> | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>Past Tense:</p> <p>رَمَيْتُ</p> <p>I threw</p><br><p>Present Tense:</p> <p>أَرْمِي</p> <p>I am throwing</p> | Both |
|--------------|--|---|------|
|--------------|--|---|------|

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Lafeefun لَفِيفٌ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Lafeefun Mafrukun لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ is when one of the Root Letters is و or ي

Lafeefun Mafrukun لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

1. When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي
2. Combination of 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is و or ي – Mithalun مِثَالٌ and 3<sup>rd</sup>

Root Letter is و or ي – Naqisun نَاقِصٌ

3. Same rules of Mithalun and Naqisun apply both in Small and Big Families

## Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُوعٍ                           | إِعَاءٌ         | يُوعِي                     | أُوعَى                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُوعًى                          | إِعَاءٌ         | يُوعَى                     | أُوعِيَ                 |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُوعًى                          | لَا تُوعِ       |                            | أُوعِ                   |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Masdar – **و** replaced with **ي** to prevent “ew sound” (Blue highlight)

Example of Family 4 - **أَفْعَلَ** - Using **و ص ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>مُوصٍ</b>                    | <b>إِيصَاءً</b> | <b>يُوصِي</b>              | <b>أَوْصَى</b>          |
| The one who is commanding       | To command      | He is commanding           | He commanded            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| <b>مُوصِيَّ</b>                 | <b>إِيصَاءً</b> | <b>يُوصَى</b>              | <b>أُوصِيَ</b>          |
| The one who is                  | To command      | He is being                | He was                  |

|                              |  |                           |                     |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------|---------------------|
| commanded                    |  | commanding                | commanded           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |  | Forbidding Form           | Command Form        |
| مُوصِيٌّ                     |  | لا تُوصِ                  | أُوصِ               |
| Time and Place of commanding |  | You (Male) don't command! | You (Male) command! |

## Sub Family 2 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l    | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| وَاعٍ             | N/A    | يَعِي                 | وَعَى           |
| Ism Mafool (the)  | Masdar | Passive Present Tense | Passive Past    |



| thing acted on)                             |                              | Fi'l            | Tense Fi'l   |
|---|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مَوْعِيٌّ                                   | N/A                          | يُوعَى          | وُعِيَ       |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
| مِيعَاةٌ                                    | مَوْعَى                      | لَا تَعِ        | عِ           |

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Ism Alatun – و replaced with **ي** to prevent “ew sound” (Blue highlight)

Example using Sub Family 2: **وَلِي** Using **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ**

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|

|   |                               |                            |                         |
|---|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                               | Fi'l                       |                         |
| وَالٍ                                       | وَلَايَةً                     | يَلِي                      | وَلَى                   |
| The one who is befriending                  | To befriend                   | He is befriending          | He befriended           |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَوْلِيٌّ                                   | وَلَايَةً                     | يُؤَلَى                    | وُلِيَ                  |
| The one who is befriended                   | To befriend                   | He is being befriended     | He was befriended       |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)  | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِثْلًا                                     | مَوْلَى                       | لَا تَلِ                   | لِ                      |
| Tool for befriending                        | Time and Place of befriending | You (Male) don't befriend! | You (Male) befriend!    |

## Lafeefun Makrunun لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ is when one of the Root Letters is و or ي

## Lafeefun Makrunun لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

1. When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي
2. Behaves like Naqisun (when 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي)
3. Same rules of Naqisun apply both in Small and Big Families

## Family 3 - فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
|                   |        |                    |                 |

|                                 |                       |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَاوٍ                         | فِوَاءٌ<br>مُفَاوَاةٌ | يُفَاوِي                   | فَاوَى                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَاوِي                        | فِوَاءٌ<br>مُفَاوَاةٌ | يُفَاوَى                   | فُؤَوِيَ                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفَاوِي                        |                       | لَا تُفَاوِ                | فَاوِ                   |

Treated like a normal Naqisun

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 3 - فاعِلَ - Using س و ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                | Masdar                | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسَاوٍ                          | سِوَاءٌ<br>مُسَاوَاةً | يُسَاوِي                   | سَاوَى                  |
| The one who is equalizing        | To equalize           | He is equalizing           | He equalized            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)  | Masdar                | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسَاوًى                         | سِوَاءٌ<br>مُسَاوَاةً | يُسَاوَى                   | سُوِيَ                  |
| The one/thing which is equalized | To equalized          | He is being equalized      | He was equalized        |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)     | Forbidding Form       |                            | Command Form            |
| مُسَاوًى                         | لَا تُسَاوِ           |                            | سَاوِ                   |

|                              |                            |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
|                              |                            |                      |
| Time and Place of equalizing | You (Male) don't equalize! | You (Male) equalize! |

## Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاوٍ                           | N/A    | يَفْوِي                    | فَوَى                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْوِيٌّ                       | N/A    | يُفْوَى                    | فُويَ                   |

| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
|---|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مِفْوَاةٌ                                   | مَفْوًى                      | لَا تَفْوِ      | اِفْوِ       |

Treated like a normal Naqisun

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form ي has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 2: فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using ك و ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar  | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|-----------------|
| كَاوٍ             | كَيًّا  | يَكْوِي            | كَوَى           |
| The one who is    | To iron | He is ironing      | He ironed       |

|   |                              |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ironing                                     |                              |                            |                         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَكْوِيٌّ                                   | كَيًّا                       | يُكْوَى                    | كُوِيَ                  |
| The thing which is ironed                   | To iron                      | It is being ironed         | It was ironed           |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِكْوَاةٌ                                   | مَكْوًى                      | لَا تَكْوِ                 | اِكْوِ                  |
| Tool for ironing                            | Time and Place of ironing    | You (Male) don't iron!     | You (Male) iron!        |

### فَعْلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي



| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                     | N/A                          | يَفْعِلُ                   | فَعَّلَ<br>فَعَّلَ      |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِّلَ<br>فُعِّلَ      |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْيَاةٌ                                   | مَفْيًى                      | لَا تَفْعِلْ               | اَفْعِلْ                |

Treated like a normal Naqisun

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Past Tense can be treated as a Lafeefun or a Mudhaff

Example using Sub Family 4: **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ** Using **ع ي ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar             | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>عِي</b>                      | <b>عَيَّا</b>      | <b>يُعِي</b>               | <b>عِي</b><br><b>عِي</b> |
| The one who is incapable of     | To be incapable of | He is incapable of         | He was incapable of      |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l  |
| <b>مَعِي</b>                    | <b>عَيَّا</b>      | <b>يُعِي</b>               | <b>عِي</b>               |

|   |                                      |                                   |                             |
|---|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
|   |                                      |                                   |                             |
| The one who is made incapable of            | To be incapable of                   | He is being made incapable of     | He was made incapable of    |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)         | Forbidding Form                   | Command Form                |
| مِغْيَاةٌ                                   | مَعْيٍ                               | لَا تَعْيٍ                        | إِغْيٍ                      |
| Tool for being incapable of                 | Time and Place of being incapable of | You (Male) don't be incapable of! | You (Male) be incapable of! |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Irregular Verbs - Moodaarefun مُضَاعَفٌ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are same - letters combine and take a Shadda e.g. شَقَّ (Root Letters: ش ق ق)

All Families affected except the two which already have Shadda in them:

Family 2 فَعَّلَ and Family 5 تَفَعَّلَ

### Big Families

The combination form behave in the same way across the Big Families

Families 2 and 5 unaffected

### Rules

1. The same 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root letters combine and take a Shadda
2. Three Forms of Command and Forbidding produced
  - 1<sup>st</sup> Form: The last letter takes a Fatah and keeps the Shadda
  - 2<sup>nd</sup> Form: The last letter takes a Kasra and keeps the Shadda

- 3<sup>rd</sup> Form: The Shadda is dropped – the two letters separate and a normal Command or Forbidding form is produced

### Family 3 - فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                 | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَاعِلٌ                       | فِلَالًا<br>مُفَالَّةً | يُفَاعِلُ                  | قَالَ                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                 | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَاعِلٌ                       | فِلَالًا<br>مُفَالَّةً | يُفَاعِلُ                  | فُؤِلَ                  |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                        | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفَاعِلٌ                       |                        | لَا تُفَاعِلْ              | قَالَ                   |

|  |             |       |
|--|-------------|-------|
|  | لَا تُقَالُ | قَالَ |
|  | لَا تُقَالِ | قَالِ |

Ism Far'il – Ism Mafool – Zharf – all look the same (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense – Passive Present Tense – looks the same (Blue highlight)

Past Tense – 1<sup>st</sup> Command Form – looks the same (Dark blue highlight)

1<sup>st</sup> Masdar Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Black highlight)

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Purpose highlight)

Example of Family 3 - فَاعَلَ - Using ض ر ر

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar                 | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُضَارٌّ          | ضِرَارًا<br>مُضَارَّةً | يُضَارُّ           | ضَارَّ          |

|                                 |                        |   |                             |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| The one who is harming          | To harm                | He is harming                                 | He harmed                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                 | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                    | Passive Past Tense Fi'l     |
| مُضَارٌّ                        | ضَرَارًا<br>مُضَارَّةً | يُضَارُّ                                      | ضُوِّرَ                     |
| The one who is harmed           | To harm                | He is being harmed                            | He was harmed               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                        | Forbidding Form                               | Command Form                |
| مُضَارٌّ                        |                        | لَا تُضَارُّ<br>لَا تُضَارِّ<br>لَا تُضَارِرْ | ضَارَّ<br>ضَارِّ<br>ضَارِرْ |
| Time and Place of harming       |                        | You (Male) don't harm!                        | You (Male) harm!            |

## Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                                   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l                 |
|---------------------------------|--|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| مُفِلٌّ                         | إِفْلَالًا                               | يُفِلُّ                    | أَفْلََّ                        |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                                   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l         |
| مُفَلٌّ                         | إِفْلَالًا                               | يُفَلُّ                    | أُفِلَّ                         |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form                          |                            | Command Form                    |
| مُفَلٌّ                         | لا تُفِلَّ<br>لا تُفَلَّ<br>لا تُفِلِّلْ |                            | أَفِلَّ<br>أَفِلَّ<br>أَفِلِّلْ |



The Harakat on the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is no longer a Sukoon – the Fatah from the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter has moved over to the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter: E.g. normally

أَفْعَلْ becomes أَفْلَّ

In Masdar the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Yellow highlight)

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Blue highlight)

Example of Family 4 - أَفْعَلْ - Using ع د د ع

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُعِدٌّ                         | إِعْدَادًا | يُعِدُّ                    | أَعَدَّ                 |
| The one who is preparing        | To prepare | He is preparing            | He prepared             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|                              |            |  |                      |
|------------------------------|------------|--|----------------------|
| مُعَدُّ                      | إِعْدَادًا | يُعَدُّ                                  | أُعَدُّ              |
| The thing which is prepared  | To prepare | It is being prepared                     | It was prepared      |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |            | Forbidding Form                          | Command Form         |
| مُعَدُّ                      |            | لا تُعَدُّ<br>لا تُعَدِّ<br>لا تُعَدِّدُ | أُعَدِّ<br>أُعَدِّدُ |
| Time and Place of preparing  |            | You (Male) don't prepare!                | You (Male) prepare!  |

## تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|

|                                 |          |   |                               |
|---------------------------------|----------|---|-------------------------------|
|                                 |          |   |                               |
| مُتَّفَالٌ                      | تَفَالًا | يَتَّفَالُ                                      | تَفَالٌ                       |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                      | Passive Past Tense Fi'l       |
| مُتَّفَالٌ                      | تَفَالًا | يُتَّفَالُ                                      | تُفُولٌ                       |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |          | Forbidding Form                                 | Command Form                  |
| مُتَّفَالٌ                      |          | لا تَتَّفَالُ<br>لا تَتَّفَالُ<br>لا تَتَّفَالُ | تَفَالٌ<br>تَفَالُ<br>تَفَالُ |

Ism Far'il – Ism Mafool – Zharf – all look the same (Yellow highlight)

Past Tense – 1<sup>st</sup> Command Form – looks the same (Dark blue highlight)

In Masdar – the Shadda remains (unlike some other Big Families) –(Blue highlight)

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Black highlight)

Example of Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ - Using م س س م

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l          |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| مُتَمَّاسٌ                      | تَمَاسًا | يَتَمَّاسُ                 | تَمَّاسَ                 |
| The one who is touching         | To touch | He is touching             | He touched (one another) |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l  |
| مُتَمَّاسٌ                      | تَمَاسًا | يُتَمَّاسُ                 | تُمُوسَ                  |
| The one who is touched          | To touch | He is being touched        | He was touched           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |          | Forbidding Form            | Command Form             |

|                            |   |                                      |
|----------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| مُتَمَّاسٌ                 | لا تَتَمَّاسٌ<br>لا تَتَمَّاسٌ<br>لا تَتَمَّاسَسُنْ | تَمَّاسٌ<br>تَمَّاسٌ<br>تَمَّاسَسُنْ |
| Time and Place of touching | You (Male) don't touch!                             | You (Male) touch!                    |

### Family 7 – اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Lazim Family – do not have Passive Forms

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنْقَلٌ                        | اِنْفِلَالًا | يَنْقَلُ                   | اِنْقَلَّ               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|                              |     |   |                               |
|------------------------------|-----|---|-------------------------------|
| N/A                          | N/A | N/A                                       | N/A                           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |     | Forbidding Form                           | Command Form                  |
| مُنْقَلٌ                     |     | لا تَنْقَلْ<br>لا تَنْقَلْ<br>لا تَنْقَلِ | انْقَلْ<br>انْقَلْ<br>انْقَلِ |

Ism Far'il – Zharf – look the same (Yellow highlight)

Past Tense – 1<sup>st</sup> Command Form – looks the same (Dark blue highlight)

In Masdar the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Blue highlight)

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Black highlight)

Example of Family 7 - انْفَعَلَ - Using ق ض ض

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|

|                                 |               |   |                                  |
|---------------------------------|---------------|---|----------------------------------|
|                                 |               |   |                                  |
| مُنْقَضٌ                        | إِنْقِضَاظًا  | يَنْقُضُ                                  | إِنْقَضَ                         |
| The one who is being dropped    | To be dropped | He is being dropped                       | He was dropped                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                | Passive Past Tense Fi'l          |
| N/A                             | N/A           | N/A                                       | N/A                              |
|                                 |               |   |                                  |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |               | Forbidding Form                           | Command Form                     |
| مُنْقَضٌ                        |               | لا تَنْقُضْ<br>لا تَنْقُضْ<br>لا تَنْقِضْ | إِنْقَضْ<br>إِنْقُضْ<br>إِنْقِضْ |
| Time and Place of being dropped |               | You (Male) don't be dropped!              | You (Male) be dropped!           |

## Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْتَلٌ                        | اِفْتِلَالًا               | يَفْتَلُ                   | اِفْتَلَّ               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْتَلٌ                        | اِفْتِلَالًا               | يُفْتَلُ                   | اُفْتِلَّ               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form            |                            | Command Form            |
| مُفْتَلٌ                        | لا تَفْتَلْ<br>لا تَفْتَلْ |                            | اِفْتَلْ<br>اِفْتَلْ    |



|  |               |            |
|--|---------------|------------|
|  | لا تَفْتَلِلْ | اِفْتَلِلْ |
|--|---------------|------------|

Ism Far'il – Ism Mafool – Zharf – all look the same (Yellow highlight)

Past Tense – 1<sup>st</sup> Command Form – looks the same (Dark blue highlight)

In Masdar the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Blue highlight)

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Black highlight)

Example of Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ - Using ر د د

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُرْتَدٌّ                       | إِرْتِدَادًا | يَرْتَدُّ                  | إَرْتَدَّ               |
| The one who is turning back     | To turn back | He is turning back         | He turned back          |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|                                |              |   |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------|---|--------------------------------------|
|                                |              |   |                                      |
| مُرْتَدٌّ                      | إِرْتِدَادًا | يُرْتَدُّ                                     | أُرْتُدَّ                            |
| The one who is turned back     | To turn back | He is being turned back                       | He was turned back                   |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)   |              | Forbidding Form                               | Command Form                         |
| مُرْتَدٌّ                      |              | لا تَرْتَدُّ<br>لا تَرْتَدِّ<br>لا تَرْتَدِدْ | إِرْتَدَّ<br>إِرْتَدِّ<br>إِرْتَدِدْ |
| Time and Place of turning back |              | You (Male) don't turn back!                   | You (Male) turn back!                |

### Family 10 - إِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

|                   |        |               |                 |
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|

|                                 |             | Fi'l  |  |
|---------------------------------|-------------|---|--|
| مُسْتَفِلٌّ                     | إِسْتِفْلًا | يُسْتَفِلُّ                                       | إِسْتَفَلَ                               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                        | Passive Past Tense Fi'l                  |
| مُسْتَفِلٌّ                     | إِسْتِفْلًا | يُسْتَفِلُّ                                       | أُسْتُفِلَّ                              |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |             | Forbidding Form                                   | Command Form                             |
| مُسْتَفِلٌّ                     |             | لا تَسْتَفِلُّ<br>لا تَسْتَفِلِّ<br>لا تَسْتَفِلْ | إِسْتَفِلَّ<br>إِسْتَفِلِّ<br>إِسْتَفِلْ |

The original Sukoon on the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter has been removed when the Shadda is present e.g. **إِسْتَفَّلَ** becomes **إِسْتَفَّلْ**

Past Tense and Present Tense - the Sukoon on the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is replaced by the Harakat on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter – اِسْتَفْعَلَ becomes

اِسْتَفْلٌ and يَسْتَفْعِلُ becomes يَسْتَفِلُ

In Masdar the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Blue highlight)

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Black highlight)

Example of Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ – Using ز ل ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar           | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَزِلُّ                     | اِسْتِزْلَالًا   | يَسْتَزِلُّ                | اِسْتَزَلَ              |
| The one who is causing to slip  | To cause to slip | He is causing to slip      | He caused to slip       |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar           | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسْتَزَلُّ                     | اِسْتِزْلَالًا   | يُسْتَزَلُّ                | اُسْتُزِلَّ             |

|                                   |                  |  |   |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|--|---|
|                                   |                  |  |   |
| The one who is made to slip       | To cause to slip | He is being made to slip                           | He was made to slip                       |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)      |                  | Forbidding Form                                    | Command Form                              |
| مُسْتَزِلُّ                       |                  | لا تَسْتَزِلَّ<br>لا تَسْتَزِلَّ<br>لا تَسْتَزِلُّ | اِسْتَزِلَّ<br>اِسْتَزِلَّ<br>اِسْتَزِلُّ |
| Time and Place of causing to slip |                  | You (Male) don't cause to slip!                    | You (Male) cause to slip!                 |

### Other Changes in all Families

Past Tense – the Shadda is dropped from هُنَّ version onwards – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done

Present Tense - the Shadda is dropped only for هُنَّ and أَنْتِ versions – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done

## Family 4 – Past Tense Chart - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural                   | Dual                       | Singular             | Gender    |
|--------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>أَفَلُّوا        | هُمَا<br>أَفَلَّا          | هُوَ<br>أَفَلَّ      | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هِنَّ<br>أَفَلَّيْنَ     | هُمَا<br>أَفَلَّتَا        | هِيَ<br>أَفَلَّتْ    | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>أَفَلَلْتُمْ | أَنْتُمَا<br>أَفَلَلْتُمَا | أَنْتَ<br>أَفَلَلْتَ | Masculine |

|               |                       |                            |                      |          |
|---------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>أَفْلَلْتِ  | أَنْتُمَا<br>أَفْلَلْتُمَا | أَنْتِ<br>أَفْلَلْتِ | Feminine |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>أَفْلَلْنَا |                            | أَنَا<br>أَفْلَلْتُ  | Both     |

Past Tense – the Shadda is dropped from هُنَّ version onwards – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done

Example of Past Tense Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ - Using ع د د

| Grammatical Person | Plural                                 | Dual   | Singular                       | Gender    |
|--------------------|--|--|--------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>أَعَدُّوا<br>They all prepared | هُمَا<br>أَعَدَّا<br>Both of them prepared (Men) | هُوَ<br>أَعَدَّ<br>He prepared | Masculine |

|               |  |  |  |           |
|---------------|--|--|--|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>أَعَدَدْنَ<br>They all prepared (Women)       | هُمَا<br>أَعَدَّتَا<br>Both of them prepared (Women)       | هِيَ<br>أَعَدَّتْ<br>She prepared            | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>أَعَدَدْتُمْ<br>You all prepared           | أَنْتُمَا<br>أَعَدَدْتُمَا<br>Both of you prepared (Men)   | أَنْتَ<br>أَعَدَدْتَ<br>You prepared (Man)   | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتِنَّ<br>أَعَدَدْتِنَّ<br>You all prepared (Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>أَعَدَدْتُمَا<br>Both of you prepared (Women) | أَنْتِ<br>أَعَدَدْتِ<br>You prepared (Woman) | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>أَعَدَدْنَا<br>We prepared                   |  | أَنَا<br>أَعَدَدْتُ<br>I prepared            | Both      |



## Family 4 – Present Tense Chart - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural                | Dual                   | Singular          | Gender    |
|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>يُفْلُونَ     | هُمَا<br>يُفْلَانِ     | هُوَ<br>يُفِلُّ   | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هِنَّ<br>يُفْلِنَنَّ  | هُمَا<br>تُفْلَانِ     | هِيَ<br>تُفِلُّ   | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تُفْلُونَ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُفْلَانِ | أَنْتَ<br>تُفِلُّ | Masculine |

|               |                    |                        |                      |          |
|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|----------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>تُفْلِنِ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُفْلَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تُفْلَيْنِ | Feminine |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نُفِلُ   |                        | أَنَا<br>أُفِلُّ     | Both     |

Present Tense - the Shadda is dropped only for أَنْتِ and أَنْتِ versions  
– 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done (Yellow highlight)

Example of Present Tense Family 4 - يُفْعِلُ – Using ع د د

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |   |   |   |           |
|---------------|---|---|---|-----------|
| Third Person  | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>يُعِدُّونَ</p> <p>They all are preparing</p>           | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>يُعِدَّانِ</p> <p>Both of them are preparing (Men)</p>    | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>يُعِدُّ</p> <p>He is preparing</p>           | Masculine |
| Third Person  | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>يُعِدِّدْنَ</p> <p>They all are preparing (Women)</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>تُعِدَّانِ</p> <p>Both of them are preparing (Women)</p>  | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>تُعِدُّ</p> <p>She is preparing</p>          | Feminine  |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تُعِدُّونَ</p> <p>You all are preparing</p>        | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تُعِدَّانِ</p> <p>Both of you are preparing (Men)</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تُعِدُّ</p> <p>You are preparing (Man)</p> | Masculine |

|               |   |  |   |          |
|---------------|---|--|---|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>تُعِدُّنَ<br>You all are preparing (Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>تُعِدَّانِ<br>Both of you are preparing (Women) | أَنْتِ<br>تُعِدِّينَ<br>You are preparing (Woman) | Feminine |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نُعِدُّ<br>We are preparing                   |  | أَنَا<br>أَعِدُّ<br>I am preparing                | Both     |

### Small Families

#### Rules

1. The same 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root letters combine and take a Shadda
2. Three Forms of Command and Forbidding produced
  - 1<sup>st</sup> Form: The last letter takes a Fatah and keeps the Shadda
  - 2<sup>nd</sup> Form: The last letter takes a Kasra and keeps the Shadda
  - 3<sup>rd</sup> Form: The Shadda is dropped – the two letters separate and a normal Command or Forbidding form is produced

3. Past Tense looks the same for all Sub Families – pattern: **فَلَّ**

4. Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root

Letter is moved to the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter

### Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are **ل**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar               | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| قَالٌ                           | N/A                  | يَقُولُ                    | قَالَ                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar               | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَقْلُوبٌ                       | N/A                  | يُقَالُ                    | قُلِّ                   |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the  | Zharf (Place/Time of | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |

| Action with) | Action)  |            |         |
|--------------|----------|------------|---------|
| مِفْلٌ       | مَفْلٌ   | لا تَفُلَّ | فُلٌ    |
| مِفْلَالٌ    | مَفِلٌ   | لا تَفُلَّ | فُلٌ    |
| مِفْلَةٌ     | مَفْلَةٌ | لا تَفُلُّ | أَفُلُّ |

Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is moved to the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter – يَفْعُلُ becomes يَفُلُّ

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form, Forbidding Forms and Ism Mafool and 2<sup>nd</sup> Ism Alatun Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Sarf is carried out (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 1: فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using ظ ن ن

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| ظَانٌ             | ظَانًا | يَظُنُّ            | ظَنَّ           |

|   |                              |   |                           |
|---|------------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| The one who is assuming                     | To assume                    | He is assuming                            | He assumed                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                | Passive Past Tense Fi'l   |
| مَظْنُونٌ                                   | ظَنَّا                       | يُظَنُّ                                   | ظُنَّ                     |
| The thing that is being assumed             | To assume                    | It is being assumed                       | It was assumed            |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form                           | Command Form              |
| مِظْنٌ<br>مِظْنَانٌ<br>مِظْنَةٌ             | مَظْنٌ<br>مَظِنٌ<br>مَظْنَةٌ | لَا تَظُنَّ<br>لَا تَظُنَّ<br>لَا تَظُنُّ | ظُنَّ<br>ظُنَّ<br>أَظُنُّ |
| Tool for assuming                           | Time and Place of assuming   | You (Male) don't assume!                  | You (Male) assume!        |

## Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَالٌ                                       | N/A                          | يَفْلُ                     | فَلَّ                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْلُولٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفَلُّ                    | فُلَّ                   |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْلٌ                                      | مَفْلٌ                       | لا تَفِلْ                  | فِلْ                    |
| مِفْلَالٌ                                   | مَفِلٌ                       | لا تَفِلْ                  | فِلْ                    |
| مِفْلَةٌ                                    | مَفْلَةٌ                     | لا تَفِلْ                  | إِفِلْ                  |



|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is moved to the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter – يَفْعَلُ becomes يَفِلُّ

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form, Forbidding Forms and Ism Mafool and 2<sup>nd</sup> Ism Alatun Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Sarf is carried out (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 2: فَرَّ فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ Using ف ر ر

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَارٌّ                          | فِرَارًا | يَفِرُّ                    | فَرَّ                   |
| The one who is fleeing          | To flee  | He is fleeing              | He fled                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|   |                              |  |                        |
|---|------------------------------|--|------------------------|
| مَفْرُورٌ                                   | فِرَارًا                     | يُفَرُّ                                | فُرِّ                  |
| The thing that is fled from                 | To flee                      | It is being fled from                  | It was fled from       |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form                        | Command Form           |
| مِفْرٌ<br>مِفْرَارٌ<br>مِفْرَةٌ             | مَفَرٌ<br>مَفِرٌ<br>مَفَرَةٌ | لا تَفِرُّ<br>لا تَفِرُّ<br>لا تَفِرُّ | فِرْ<br>فِرْ<br>اِفِرْ |
| Tool for fleeing                            | Time and Place of fleeing    | You (Male) don't flee!                 | You (Male) flee!       |

### فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 3

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

|                   |        |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|

|   |                              |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                              |                            |                         |
| فَالٌ                                       | N/A                          | يَفَلُّ                    | فَلَّ                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْلُولٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفَلُّ                    | فُلَّ                   |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْلٌ                                      | مَفْلٌ                       | لا تَفَلُّ                 | فَلَّ                   |
| مِفْلَالٌ                                   | مَفِلٌ                       | لا تَفَلِّ                 | فَلَّ                   |
| مِفْلَةٌ                                    | مَفْلَةٌ                     | لا تَفَلِّلُ               | إِفْلَلُ                |

Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is moved to the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter – يَفْعَلُ becomes يَفَلُّ

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form, Forbidding Forms and Ism Mafool and 2<sup>nd</sup> Ism Alatun Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Sarf is carried out (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 3: فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using م س س م

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مَاسٌّ                          | مَسًّا   | يَمَسُّ                    | مَسَّ                   |
| The one who is touching         | To touch | He is touching             | He touched              |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَمْسُوسٌ                       | مَسًّا   | يُمَسُّ                    | مُسَّ                   |
| The one who is touched          | To touch | He is being touched        | He was touched          |

| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form         | Command Form      |
|---|------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| مِمَّسٍّ                                    | مَمَّسٍّ                     | لَا تَمَسَّ             | مَسَّ             |
| مِمَّسَّاسٍ                                 | مَمَّسٍّ                     | لَا تَمَسَّ             | مَسَّ             |
| مِمَّسَّةً                                  | مَمَّسَّةً                   | لَا تَمَسَّسْ           | إِمَّسَّسْ        |
| Tool for touching                           | Time and Place of touching   | You (Male) don't touch! | You (Male) touch! |

### فَعْلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| قَالَ             | N/A    | يَقُولُ            | قَالَ           |

|   |                              |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                              |                            |                         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْلُوءٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفَلُّ                    | فُلَّ                   |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْلٌ                                      | مَفْلٌ                       | لا تَفَلْ                  | فَلْ                    |
| مِفْلَالٌ                                   | مَفِلٌ                       | لا تَفَلِّ                 | فَلِّ                   |
| مِفْلَةٌ                                    | مَفْلَةٌ                     | لا تَفَلِّلْ               | إِفْلَلْ                |

Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is moved to the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter – يَفْعَلُ becomes يُفَلُّ

3<sup>rd</sup> Command Form, Forbidding Forms and Ism Mafool and 2<sup>nd</sup> Ism Alatun Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Sarf is carried out (Yellow highlight)

Identical to Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ - يَفْعَلُ - only differentiate between the two when looking at other changes e.g. the Past Tense chart for each

Example using Sub Family 4: ظ ل ل Using فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar    | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ظَالٌّ                          | ظُلُوءًا  | يُظَلُّ                    | ظَلَّ                   |
| The one who is remaining        | To remain | He is remaining            | He remained             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar    | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَظْلُوءٌ                       | ظُلُوءًا  | يُظَلُّ                    | ظُلَّ                   |
| The one who is made to remain   | To remain | He is being made to remain | He was made to remain   |

| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form          | Command Form       |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| مِظْلٌ                                      | مَظْلٌ                       | لا تَظَلَّ               | ظَلَّ              |
| مِظْلَالٌ                                   | مَظِلٌ                       | لا تَظَلَّ               | ظَلَّ              |
| مِظْلَةٌ                                    | مَظْلَةٌ                     | لا تَظَلَّلْ             | إِظْلَلْ           |
| Tool for remaining                          | Time and Place of remaining  | You (Male) don't remain! | You (Male) remain! |

### Other Changes in all Families

Ism Tafdeel (Comparative/Superlative) – if 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same – they join and take a Shadda – and the Sukoon on the 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is replaced with Fatah e.g. أَفْعَلُ becomes أَفْلٌ

Past Tense – the Shadda is dropped from هُنَّ version onwards – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done – the hidden Harakat on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter returns

Present Tense - the Shadda is dropped only for هُنَّ and أَنْتُنَّ versions – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done – the hidden Harakat on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter returns



## Sub Family 1 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural                 | Dual                     | Singular           | Gender    |
|--------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>فَلُّوا        | هُمَا<br>فَلَّا          | هُوَ<br>فَلَّ      | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هُنَّ<br>فَلَّلْنَ     | هُمَا<br>فَلَّتَا        | هِيَ<br>فَلَّتْ    | Feminine  |
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>فَلَلْتُمْ | أَنْتُمَا<br>فَلَلْتُمَا | أَنْتَ<br>فَلَلْتَ | Masculine |

|               |                     |                          |                    |          |
|---------------|---------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتِ<br>فَلَلْتِ  | أَنْتُمَا<br>فَلَلْتُمَا | أَنْتِ<br>فَلَلْتِ | Feminine |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>فَلَلْنَا |                          | أَنَا<br>فَلَلْتُ  | Both     |

Past Tense – the Shadda is dropped from هُنَّ version onwards – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done – the hidden Harakat on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter (Fatah) returns

Example for Past Tense Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ using ظ ن ن

|                    |        |      |          |        |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |  |   |   |           |
|---------------|--|---|---|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُم<br>ظَنُّوا<br>They all assumed                   | هُمَا<br>ظَنَّا<br>Both of them assumed (Men)           | هُوَ<br>ظَنَّ<br>He assumed               | Masculine |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ<br>ظَنَّ<br>They all assumed (Women)           | هُمَا<br>ظَنَّتَا<br>Both of them assumed (Women)       | هِيَ<br>ظَنَّتْ<br>She assumed            | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>ظَنْنْتُمْ<br>All of You assumed         | أَنْتُمَا<br>ظَنْنْتُمَا<br>Both of you assumed (Men)   | أَنْتَ<br>ظَنْنْتَ<br>You assumed (Man)   | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>ظَنْنُنَّ<br>All of You assumed (Women) | أَنْتُمَا<br>ظَنْنْتُمَا<br>Both of you assumed (Women) | أَنْتِ<br>ظَنْنْتِ<br>You assumed (Woman) | Feminine  |

|              |   |  |      |
|--------------|---|--|------|
| First Person | نَحْنُ<br><br>ظَنَنْتَا<br><br>We assumed | أَنَا<br><br>ظَنَنْتُ<br><br>I assumed | Both |
|--------------|---|--|------|

### Sub Family 1 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural                  | Dual                     | Singular             | Gender    |
|--------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br><br>يَفْعُلُونَ | هُمَا<br><br>يَفْعُلَانِ | هُوَ<br><br>يَفْعُلُ | Masculine |

|               |                        |                        |                      |           |
|---------------|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Third Person  | هِنَّ<br>يَفْلُنَّ     | هُمَا<br>تَفْلَانِ     | هِيَ<br>تَفْلُ       | Feminine  |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَفْلُونِ  | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفْلَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تَفْلُ     | Masculine |
| Second Person | أَنْتُنَّ<br>تَفْلُنَّ | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفْلَانِ | أَنْتِ<br>تَفْلَيْنِ | Feminine  |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ<br>نَفْلُ       |                        | أَنَا<br>أَفْلُ      | Both      |

Present Tense - the Shadda is dropped only for هُنَّ and أَنْتِ versions  
 – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done – the hidden Harakat (Dhamma) on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter returns (Yellow highlight)

Example for Present Tense Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ using ظ ن ن

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular                          | Gender    |
|--------------------|---|---|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ<br>يَظُنُّونَ<br>They all are assuming         | هُمَا<br>يَظُنَّانِ<br>Both of them are assuming (Men)  | هُوَ<br>يَظُنُّ<br>He is assuming | Masculine |
| Third Person       | هُنَّ<br>يَظْنُنَّ<br>They all are assuming (Women) | هُمَا<br>تَظْنَانِ<br>Both of them are assuming (Women) | هِيَ<br>تَظْنُ<br>She assuming    | Feminine  |

|               |   |  |   |           |
|---------------|---|--|---|-----------|
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَظُنُّونَ</p> <p>All of You are assuming</p>          | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَظُنَّانِ</p> <p>Both of you are assuming (Men)</p>   | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَظُنُّ</p> <p>You are assuming (Man)</p>      | Masculine |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>تَظُنُّنَّ</p> <p>All of You are assuming (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَظُنَّانِ</p> <p>Both of you are assuming (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَظُنِّينَ</p> <p>You are assuming (Woman)</p> | Feminine  |
| First Person  | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>نَظُنُّ</p> <p>We are assuming</p>                       |  | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>أَظُنُّ</p> <p>I am assuming</p>                | Both      |

Making Moodaarefun Light and Lightest

Making it Light

Same rules apply as normal

1. If Fi'l ends with Dhamma change it to Fatah
2. If Fi'l ends with ن in ending combination words – remove the ن

### Making it Lightest

1. If Fi'l ends with Dhamma – there are 3 versions (just like the Commanding and Forbidding Forms):
  - 1<sup>st</sup> Form: The last letter takes a Fatah and keeps the Shadda
  - 2<sup>nd</sup> Form: The last letter takes a Kasra and keeps the Shadda
  - 3<sup>rd</sup> Form: The Shadda is dropped – the two letters separate and a normal Sarf is done
2. If Fi'l ends with ن in ending combination words – remove the ن

### Light and Lightest Present Tense Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|                    |        |      |          |        |



|              |   |   |  |           |
|--------------|---|---|--|-----------|
| Third Person | <p>هُمْ</p> <p>يَفْلُؤْنَ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>يَفْلُؤُوا</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>يَفْلُؤُوا</p>  | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>يَفْلَاَنِ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>يَفْلَاَّ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>يَفْلَاَّ</p> | <p>هُوَ</p> <p>يَفْلُُّ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>يَفْلُِّ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>يَفْلُِّ</p> <p>يَفْلُِّ</p> <p>يَفْلُِّلْ</p> | Masculine |
| Third Person | <p>هُنَّ</p> <p>يَفْلُنْنَ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>يَفْلُنْنَ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>يَفْلُنْنَ</p> | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>تَفْلَانِ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَفْلَاَّ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَفْلَاَّ</p>  | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>تَفْلُُّ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَفْلُِّ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَفْلُِّ</p> <p>تَفْلُِّ</p>                   | Feminine  |

|               |   |   |  |           |
|---------------|---|---|--|-----------|
|               |   |   | تَفْلُنْ   |           |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَفْلُونْ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَفْلُوا</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَفْلُوا</p> | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَفْلَانِ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَفْلَا</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَفْلَا</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَفْلُ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَفْلَ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَفْلَ</p> <p>تَفْلَ</p> <p>تَفْلُ</p> | Masculine |

|               |           |           |            |          |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|
| Second Person | أَنْتِ    | أَنْتُمَا | أَنْتِ     | Feminine |
|               | تَقُلْنَ  | تَقُلَانِ | تَقُلَيْنِ |          |
|               | Light:    | Light:    | Light:     |          |
|               | تَقُلْنَ  | تَقُلَا   | تَقُلَيَّ  |          |
|               | Lightest: | Lightest: | Lightest:  |          |
|               | تَقُلْنَ  | تَقُلَا   | تَقُلَيَّ  |          |
| First Person  | نَحْنُ    |           |            | Both     |
|               | أَنَا     |           |            |          |
|               | أَقُلُّ   |           |            |          |
|               | Light:    |           |            |          |
|               | أَقُلَّ   |           |            |          |
|               | Lightest: |           |            |          |
|               | أَقُلَّ   |           |            |          |
|               | أَقُلَّ   |           |            |          |
|               | أَقُلَّ   |           |            |          |
|               | أَقُلُّ   |           |            |          |
|               | أَقُلُّ   |           |            |          |
|               | أَقُلُّ   |           |            |          |
|               | أَقُلُّ   |           |            |          |

NOTE: as per usual – the هُنَّ and أَنْتِ – look the same in all 3 forms:  
Normal, Light and Lightest (Yellow highlight)

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Example of Light and Lightest Present Tense Sub Family 1

using ظ ن ن

| Grammatical Person | Plural     | Dual       | Singular                   |
|--------------------|------------|------------|----------------------------|
| Third Person       | هُمْ       | هُمَا      | هُوَ                       |
|                    | يَظُنُّونَ | يَظُنَّانِ | يَظُنُّ                    |
|                    | Light:     | Light:     | Light:                     |
|                    | يَظْنُوْ   | يَظْنَا    | يَظْنُ                     |
|                    | Lightest:  | Lightest:  | Lightest:                  |
|                    | يَظْنُوْ   | يَظْنَا    | يَظْنُ<br>يَظْنُ<br>يَظْنُ |

|               |  |   |   |
|---------------|--|---|---|
| Third Person  | <p>هَنَّ</p> <p>يَظُنُّنَ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>يَظُنُّنَ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>يَظُنُّنَ</p>     | <p>هُمَا</p> <p>تَظُنَّانِ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَظُنَّا</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَظُنَّا</p>     | <p>هِيَ</p> <p>تَظُنُّ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَظُنَّ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَظُنَّ</p> <p>تَظُنَّ</p> <p>تَظُنُّ</p> |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَظُنُّونَ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَظُنُّوْ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَظُنُّوْ</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَظُنَّانِ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَظُنَّا</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَظُنَّا</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَظُنُّ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَظُنَّ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَظُنَّ</p> <p>تَظُنَّ</p>              |

|               |   |   |  |
|---------------|---|---|--|
|               |   |   | تَظُنُّ  |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُ</p> <p>تَظُنُّ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَظُنُّ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَظُنُّ</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَظُنَّانِ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَظُنَّا</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَظُنَّا</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَظُنِّي</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>تَظُنِّي</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>تَظُنِّي</p> |
| First Person  | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>نَظُنُّ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>نَظُنُّ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>نَظُنُّ</p> |   | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>أَظُنُّ</p> <p>Light:</p> <p>أَظُنُّ</p> <p>Lightest:</p> <p>أَظُنُّ</p>     |

|  |                     |                     |
|--|---------------------|---------------------|
|  | نَظُنُّ<br>نَظْنُنُ | أَظُنُّ<br>أَظْنُنُ |
|--|---------------------|---------------------|

### Commanding and Forbidding Versions

Same rule as making it in the Lightest Form:

3. If Fi'l ends with Dhamma – there are 3 versions:
  - 1<sup>st</sup> Form: The last letter takes a Fatah and keeps the Shadda
  - 2<sup>nd</sup> Form: The last letter takes a Kasra and keeps the Shadda
  - 3<sup>rd</sup> Form: The Shadda is dropped – the two letters separate and a normal Sarf is done
4. If Fi'l ends with ن in ending combination words – remove the ن

### Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular  |
|--------------------|---|---|---|
| Second Person      | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَفْعُلُونَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فُتُّوا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَفْعُلُوا</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعُلَانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فُلَا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَفْعَلَا</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَفْعُلُ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فُلْ</p> <p>فُلْ</p> <p>أَفْعُلْ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَفْعُلْ</p> <p>لَا تَفْعُلْ</p> <p>لَا تَفْعُلْ</p> |



| Second Person | أَنْتُ               | أَنْتُمَا            | أَنْتِ               |
|---------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
|               | تَفُلِّلَنَّ         | تَفُلِّلَانِ         | تَفُلِّلِيَنَّ       |
|               | Commanding<br>Form = | Commanding<br>Form = | Commanding<br>Form = |
|               | أَفُلِّلَنَّ         | فُلِّلَا             | فُلِّلِي             |
|               | Forbidding Form<br>= | Forbidding<br>Form = | Forbidding<br>Form = |
|               | لا تَفُلِّلَنَّ      | لا تَفُلِّلَا        | لا تَفُلِّلِي        |

فَعَلَ - Example of Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 1 -  
 يَفْعُلُ using ظ ن ن - to assume

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|
|                    |        |      |          |

| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَظُنُّونَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>ظُنُّوْ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَظُنُّوْ</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَظُنَّانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>ظُنَّا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَظُنَّا</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَظُنُّ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>ظَنَّ</p> <p>ظَنَّ</p> <p>أَظُنُّ</p> <p>You (man) assume!</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَظَنَّ</p> <p>لا تَظَنَّ</p> <p>لا تَظُنُّ</p> <p>You (man) do not assume!</p> |
|---------------|--|---|--|
|---------------|--|---|--|

| Second Person | أَنْتُ               | أَنْتُمَا            | أَنْتِ               |
|---------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
|               | تَظُنُّنَ            | تَظُنَّانِ           | تَظُنِّيْنَ          |
|               | Commanding<br>Form = | Commanding<br>Form = | Commanding<br>Form = |
|               | أُظُنُّنَ            | ظُنَّا               | ظُنِّيْ              |
|               | Forbidding Form<br>= | Forbidding<br>Form = | Forbidding<br>Form = |
|               | لَا تَظُنُّنَ        | لَا تَظُنَّا         | لَا تَظُنِّيْ        |

## فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 2

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|
|                    |        |      |          |

|               |   |  |   |
|---------------|---|--|---|
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَفِلُّونَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فُلُّوا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَفِلُّوا</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفِلَّانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فَلَّا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَفِلَّا</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَفِلُّ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فِلِّ</p> <p>فِلِّ</p> <p>إِفْلِلْ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَفِلَّ</p> <p>لَا تَفِلَّ</p> <p>لَا تَفِلِّلْ</p> |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَفِلِّينَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p>  | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفِلَّانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p>  | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَفِلِّينَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p>  |

|  |                                  |                                 |                                 |
|--|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
|  | إِفْلِنَ                         | فَلَا                           | فَلْيَ                          |
|  | Forbidding Form =<br>لا تَفْلِنَ | Forbidding Form =<br>لا تَفْلَا | Forbidding Form =<br>لا تَفْلِي |

فَعَلَ - Example of Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 2  
 using ف ر ر - to flee يَفْعِلُ

| Grammatical Person | Plural                                      | Dual   | Singular                               |
|--------------------|---|--|--|
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَفِرُّونَ<br>Commanding Form = | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفِرَّانِ<br>Commanding Form = | أَنْتَ<br>تَفِرُّ<br>Commanding Form = |

|  |  |   |  |
|--|--|---|--|
|  | <p>فِرُّوْ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفِرُّوْ</p>  | <p>فِرَّا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفِرَّا</p>                                   | <p>فِرَّ</p> <p>فِرِّ</p> <p>اِفِرِّ</p> <p>You (man) flee!</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفِرِّ</p> <p>لا تَفِرِّ</p> <p>لا تَفِرِّ</p> <p>You (man) do not flee!</p> |
|  | <p>Second Person</p> <p>أَنْتُ</p> <p>تَفِرُّنَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>اِفِرُّنَ</p> <p>Forbidding Form</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفِرَّانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فِرَّا</p> <p>Forbidding</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَفِرِّيْنَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فِرِّيْ</p> <p>Forbidding</p>   |

|  |               |             |              |
|--|---------------|-------------|--------------|
|  | =             | Form =      | Form =       |
|  | لا تَفْرِزْنَ | لا تَفِرَّا | لا تَفِرِّيْ |

### فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 3

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual   | Singular  |
|--------------------|---|--|---|
| Second Person      | أَنْتُمْ<br>تَفْعُلُونَ<br>Commanding Form =<br>فَعُلُوا<br>Forbidding Form | أَنْتُمَا<br>تَفْعَلَانِ<br>Commanding Form =<br>فَلاَّ<br>Forbidding Form = | أَنْتَ<br>تَفْعُلُ<br>Commanding Form =<br>فَلاَ<br>Forbidding Form |

|               |  |  |  |
|---------------|--|--|--|
|               | <p>=</p> <p>لا تَفْعُلُوا</p>  | لا تَفْعَلْ  | <p>إِفْعَلْ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفْعَلْ</p> <p>لا تَفْعَلْ</p> <p>لا تَفْعَلْ</p>                    |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>إِفْعَلْنَ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفْعَلْنَ</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَفْعَلَانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فَلَا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفْعَلَا</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَفْعَلِينَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>فَلْيَ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لا تَفْعَلِي</p> |



## فَعَلَ - Example of Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 3

يَفْعَلُ using م س س – to touch

| Grammatical Person | Plural  | Dual  | Singular  |
|--------------------|---|---|---|
| Second Person      | <p>أَنْتُمْ</p> <p>تَمْسُونِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>مَسُّوْ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَمْسُوْ</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَمْسَانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>مَسَّا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَمَسَّا</p> | <p>أَنْتَ</p> <p>تَمْسُ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>مَسَّ</p> <p>مَسَّ</p> <p>إِمْسَسْ</p> <p>You (man) touch!</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَمَسَّ</p> <p>لَا تَمَسَّ</p> |

|               |  |  |   |
|---------------|--|--|---|
|               |  |  | <p>لَا تَمَسَّسْ</p> <p>You (man) do not touch!</p>   |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُ</p> <p>تَمَسَّسْ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>إِمَسَّسْ</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَمَسَّسْ</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>تَمَسَّسَانِ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>مَسَّا</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَمَسَّا</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>تَمَسَّسِينَ</p> <p>Commanding Form =</p> <p>مَسِّي</p> <p>Forbidding Form =</p> <p>لَا تَمَسِّي</p> |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Four Letter Roots - الْفِعْلُ الرَّبَاعِيُّ

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

Most Arabic words have 3 Root Letters

Some rare Fi'l have 4 Root Letters

2 Types:

1. Past Tense has no extra letters (Small Families 4 Root Letters) -

رُبَاعِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ

2. Past Tense has extra letters (Big Families 4 Root Letters) - رُبَاعِيٌّ

مَزِيدٌ فِيهِ

Small Families with 4 Root Letters

رُبَاعِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ

Only 1 Family occurs in the Quran

### Small Family with 4 Root Letters

For memorization the ف ل ر ع Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَعِّلٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفَعِّلُ                  | فَعَّلَ                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَعَّلٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفَعَّلُ                  | فُعِّلَ                 |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| N/A   | مُفَعِّلٌ                    | لا تُفَعِّلُ               | فَعِّلْ                 |

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

Example of Small Family with 4 Root Letters using ب ع ث ر

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُبَعِّرٌ                       | بَعَثَرَةً | يُبَعِّرُ                  | بَعَثَرَ                |
| The one who is scattering       | To scatter | He is scattering           | He scattered            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُبَعَّرٌ                       | بَعَثَرَةً | يُبَعَّرُ                  | بُعِثِرَ                |
| The thing that is scattered     | To scatter | It is being scattered      | It was scattered        |

| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form           | Command Form        |
|---|------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| N/A   | مُبَعَثَرٌ                   | لَا تُبَعَثَرُ            | بَعَثَرُ            |
| Tool for scattering                         | Time and Place of scattering | You (Male) don't scatter! | You (Male) scatter! |

### Big Families with 4 Root Letters

رُبَاعِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ

Only 1 Family occurs in the Quran

### Big Family with 4 Root Letters

For memorization the ر ل ع ف Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar         | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُفَعِّلٌ         | إِفْعِلْرَارًا | يَفْعَلِرُّ        | إِفْعَلَّرَ     |

|                                 |                |   |  |
|---------------------------------|----------------|---|--|
|                                 |                |   |  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar         | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                      | Passive Past Tense Fi'l                |
| مُفْعَلَرٌ                      | إِفْعِلْرَارًا | يُفْعَلَرُ                                      | أُفْعِلِرَ                             |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                | Forbidding Form                                 | Command Form                           |
| مُفْعَلَرٌ                      |                | لا تَفْعَلِرَ<br>لا تَفْعَلِرِ<br>لا تَفْعَلِرْ | إِفْعَلِرْ<br>إِفْعَلِرِ<br>إِفْعَلِرْ |

Example of Big Family with 4 Root Letters using ق ش ع ر

|                   |        |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|                   |        |                    |                 |



|                                 |                |   |  |
|---------------------------------|----------------|---|--|
|                                 |                |   |  |
| مُقَشَعِرٌّ                     | إِقْشَعْرَارًا | يُقَشَعِرُّ   | إِقْشَعَرَ                                 |
| The one who is shivering        | To shiver      | He is shivering                                     | He shivered                                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar         | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                          | Passive Past Tense Fi'l                    |
| مُقَشَعِرٌّ                     | إِقْشَعْرَارًا | يُقَشَعِرُّ   | أُقْشَعِرُّ                                |
| The one who is made to shiver   | To shiver      | He is being made to shiver                          | He was made to shiver                      |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                | Forbidding Form                                     | Command Form                               |
| مُقَشَعِرٌّ                     |                | لا تَقْشَعِرُّ<br>لا تَقْشَعِرُّ<br>لا تَقْشَعِرْزُ | إِقْشَعِرُّ<br>إِقْشَعِرُّ<br>إِقْشَعِرْزُ |
| Time and Place of shivering     |                | You (Male) don't shiver!                            | You (Male) shiver!                         |

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Using a Dictionary

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

There are many Arabic dictionaries available for looking up the meanings of words and the Family to which a Fi'l belongs as well as other things.

Most Arabic dictionaries will require the 3 Root Letters of the word being searched.

The following is an example of a website which contains many Arabic dictionaries and how it can be used to search Arabic words:

<https://ejtaal.net/>

::: projects hosted on ejtaal.net :::

### Arabic language resources

- **Arabic Almanac (Powered by Mawrid reader)** \*\*\* new \*\*\*  
Allows searching in Hans Wehr, Lane's Lexicon and J. G. Hava all on a single page, 20 root based arabic dictionaries in 6 different languages.
- **Mawrid Reader - al-Mawrid et al** \*\*\* new \*\*\*  
Allows searching in al-Mawrid and Lughat al Quran.
- **Mabhat alTalib - Lisan al Arab et al** \*\*\* new \*\*\*  
Allows searching in text based dictionaries. Still in beta development at present.
- **Find the nearest HMC outlet with this HMC Map App** \*\*\* last updated 2012/9/1 \*\*\*
- **Hidayat in Nahw**  
A summary of Arabic grammar that I prepared as part of course work.
- **Various Resources**

### Astronomy

- **Fly through the stars in your browser (based on GAIA DR3 data)** \*\*\* new \*\*\*

### Infosec

- A partial walkthrough of the bWAPP Bee-box
- A walkthrough of the Lord of the Root VM


### Programming

- Github repos
- Google Street View Time Lapse videos

### Misc

- My collection of funny slashdot comments
- What's in a hacker's home?
- various documents and howtos
- various binary files
- Thought provoking quotes

Email: ejtaal at gmail dot com

Created with 

Powered by  
**Electrons**

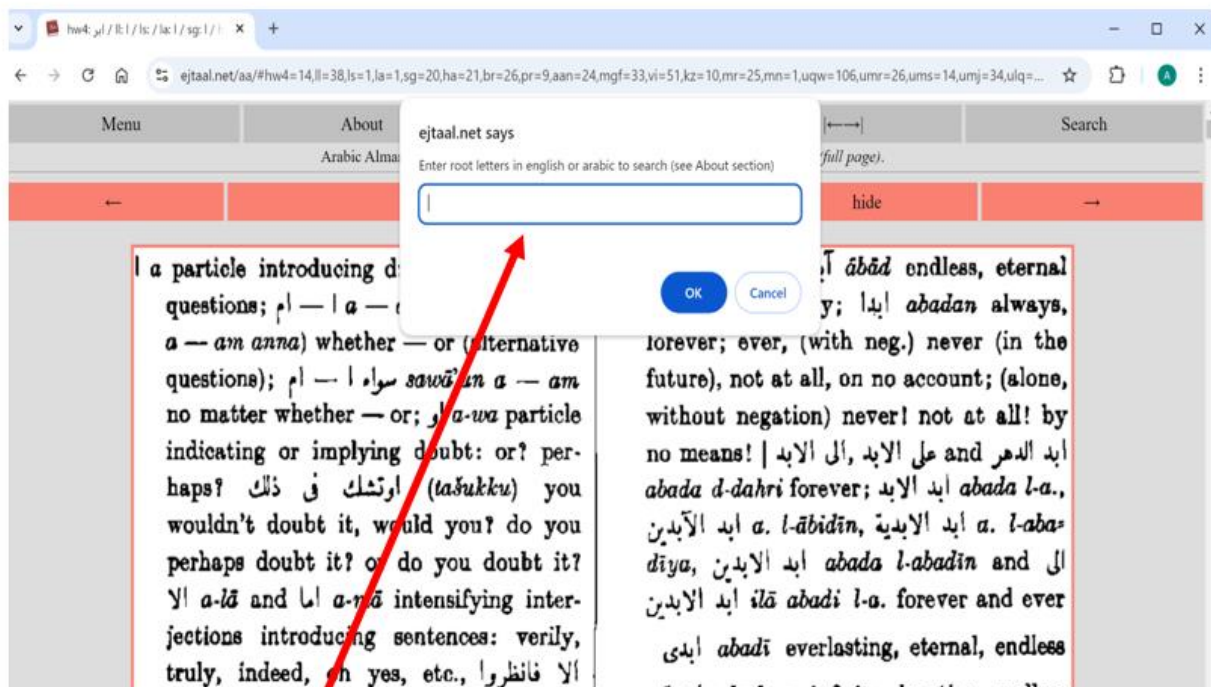
Best viewed with  
**Links Opera Firefox**

Select "Arabic Almanac"

| Menu   | About                      | Column  | Search |
|--|----------------------------|---|--------|
| Arabic Almanac v6.1 - powered by Mawrid Reader v3.1   Viewing mode: Desktop (full page).   |                            |   |        |
| ←  | 1. Hans Wehr 4th ed. (hw4) | hide  | →      |
| Hans Wehr 4th ed., page 1 (of 1303)  |                            |   |        |
| <p><b>a</b> particle introducing direct and indirect questions; <b>أَمْ</b> — <b>ا</b> <b>a</b> — <b>am</b> (also <b>أَمْ</b> <b>am</b> <b>anna</b>) whether — or (alternative questions); <b>أَمْ</b> — <b>سَوَاءً</b> <b>sawāʿun a</b> — <b>am</b> no matter whether — or; <b>ا</b> <b>a-wa</b> particle indicating or implying doubt: or? perhaps? <b>أَوْتَشْكُ</b> <b>(tašukku)</b> you wouldn't doubt it, would you? do you perhaps doubt it? or do you doubt it? <b>أَلَا</b> <b>a-lā</b> and <b>أَمَّا</b> <b>a-mā</b> intensifying interjections introducing sentences: verily, truly, indeed, oh yes, etc., <b>أَلَا فَانظُرُوا</b> <b>(fa-nẓurū)</b> oh, do look! why, look! <b>أَمَّا أَنَّهُ</b> <b>(innahu)</b> why, he is ...!</p> <p><b>أَب</b> <b>āb</b> August (month; <i>Syr., Leb., Jord., Ir.</i>)</p> <p><b>أَب</b> <b>al-āb</b> <i>(Chr.)</i> the Father (God)</p> <p><b>أَبَر</b> <b>see</b> <b>أَبَر</b></p> <p><b>أَبَدًا</b> <b>abba</b> <i>u</i> to long, yearn <b>إِلَى</b> <b>watanihi</b></p> |                            | <p><b>أَبَد</b> <b>abad</b> pl. <b>آبَاد</b> <b>ābād</b> endless, eternal duration, eternity; <b>أَبَدًا</b> <b>abadan</b> always, forever; ever, (with neg.) never (in the future), not at all, on no account (alone, without negation) never! not at all! by no means! <b>أَبَدِ الدَّهْرَ</b> <b>al-ābid</b>, <b>أَبَدِ الدَّهْرَ</b> <b>abada d-dahri</b> forever; <b>أَبَدِ الدَّهْرَ</b> <b>abada l-a.</b>, <b>أَبَدِ الدَّهْرَ</b> <b>a. l-ābidin</b>, <b>أَبَدِ الدَّهْرَ</b> <b>a. l-ābadiya</b>, <b>أَبَدِ الدَّهْرَ</b> <b>abada l-abadin</b> and <b>إِلَى</b> <b>أَبَدِ الدَّهْرَ</b> <b>abadi</b> <i>l-a.</i> forever and ever <b>أَبَدِي</b> <b>abadī</b> everlasting, eternal, endless <b>أَبَدِيَّة</b> <b>abadiya</b> infinite duration, endless time, eternity</p> <p><b>أَبَدِي</b> <b>ābid</b> resident, nonmigratory (bird); wild, untamed</p> <p><b>أَبَدِيَّة</b> <b>abida</b> pl. <b>أَوَادِبِد</b> <b>awāḍibid</b> unusual thing; prodigious event; resident bird; wild animal; monster <b>أَبَدِ الدُّنْيَا</b> <b>a. ad-dunyā</b> the Wonders of the World</p> |        |

Using Hans Wehr 4<sup>th</sup> Edition Dictionary (1<sup>st</sup> one on the list)

Select “Search”



Enter 3 Root Letters of word being searched

Example: to search نصر

Type in ن ص ر

نصر *naṣara u* (*naṣr*, نصر *nuṣūr*) to help, aid, assist (على • s.o. against); to render victorious, let triumph (على • s.o. over; of God); to deliver (من • s.o. from), keep, protect, save II to Christianize, convert to Christianity (• s.o.) III to help, aid, assist, support, defend, protect (• s.o.) V to try to help, seek to support (ل s.o.), stand up for s.o. (ل); to become a Christian VI to render mutual assistance, help each other VIII to come to s.o.'s (ل) aid, be on s.o.'s (ل) side, side with s.o. (ل); to stand up for, maintain (ل s.th., one's opinion); to be victorious; to gain a victory, triumph (على over); to take revenge (من on) X to ask (• s.o.) for assistance

نصار *nāṣir* pl. -ūn, انصار *aṣār*, نصر *nuṣār* helper; protector; granting victory | اخذ بنصره to help s.o.

انصار *aṣār* (pl.) adherents, followers, partisans, sponsors, patrons, friends; الانصار the Medinan followers of Mohammed who granted him refuge after the Hegira

الناصرة *an-nāṣira* Nazareth

ناصرى *nāṣirī* of Nazareth; Nazarene; (pl. -ūn) Nasserist, adherent of Gamāl 'Abd an-Nāṣir, the late President of Egypt

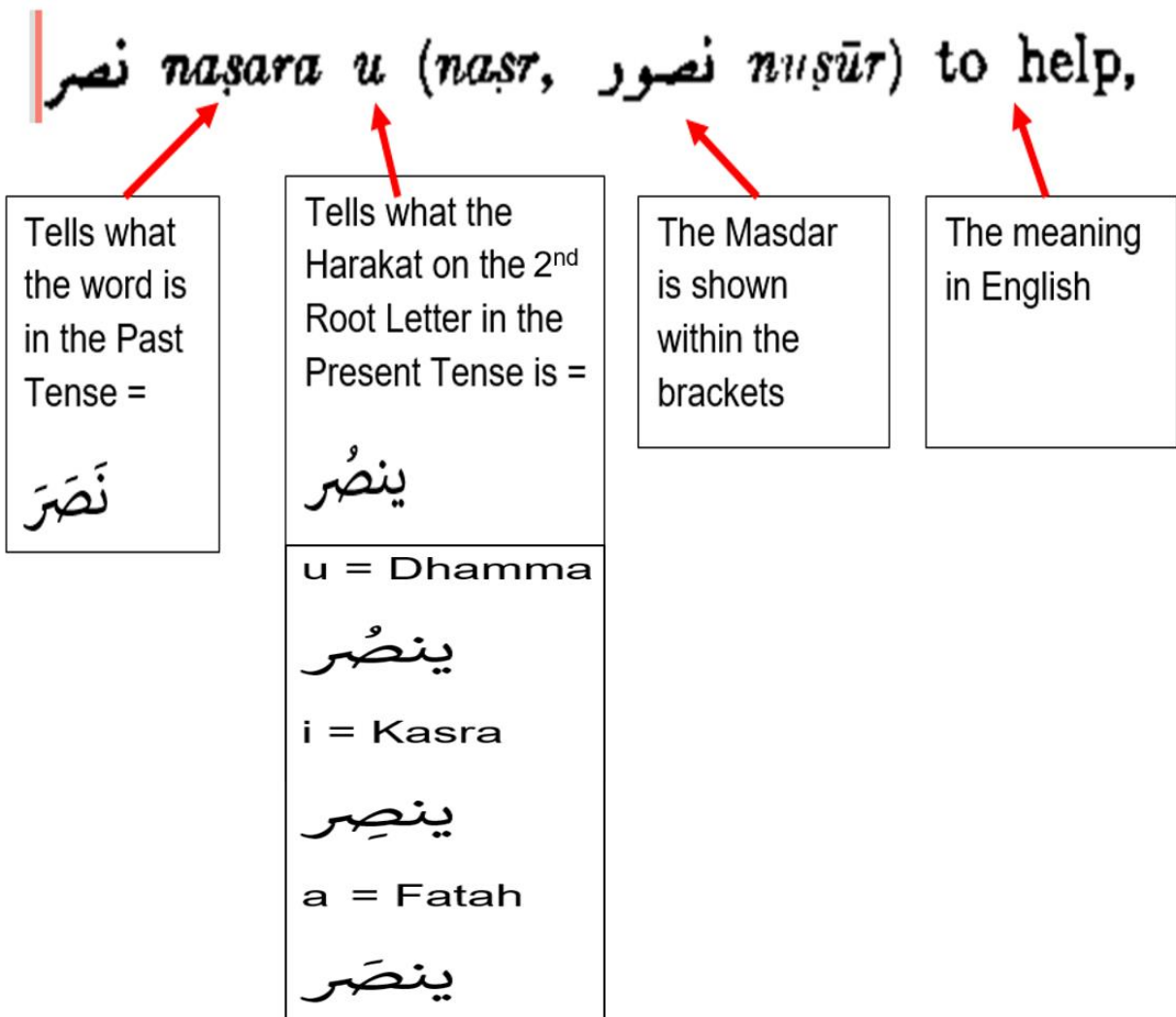
الناصرية *an-nāṣiriyya* Nasserism (see ناصري)

May have to scroll back and forth a few pages until the correct word is found

Its meanings are discussed when applied to the different families

E.g. Family 2 – means to become a Christian

Family 5 – means to try to help



NOTE: this first line in the dictionary discusses the 3 root letters in the Small Families and the meanings when the 3 root letters are applied to the Big Families are discussed straight after, as explained earlier

Another example using a Fi'l from the Big Families:



Example word: يُسَلِّمُ

This is a Present Tense Fi'l - هُوَ version as يُ at the start and Dhamma at end indicates this

The يُ has a Dhamma at the beginning only in Families 2, 3 and 4

It cannot be from Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ as this Family has a Shadda in it

It cannot be Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ as this Family has an extra Alif added to it

Therefore, must be Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ - أَسْلَمَ يُسَلِّمُ

3 root letters are therefore: س ل م

Inserting these 3 root letters into the Arabic dictionary shown previously:

Menu

About

Column

|←→|

Search

Searched for: من ل د | Arabic Almanac v6.1 - powered by Mawrid Reader v3.1 | Viewing mode: Desktop (full page).

←

I. Hans Wehr 4th ed. (hw4)

hide

→

س | Hans Wehr 4th ed., page 495 (of 1303)

495

سلم

(*muqāwim*) resistor (*el.*); السك الهوائي ○ (*hawāʾi*) antenna, aerial; انتظم في (ال) (*antazam fī (al-)*) to be a member of an organization and the like; to join an organization and the like, e.g., الانضمام الى (*al-inṭizam il-*) السك البحري (*baḥrī*) entrance into the navy (as also سك في سلك) (*anḫarṭ fī silka*)

سلم *salima* a سلامة *salāma*, سلام *salām* to be safe and sound, unharmed, unimpaired, intact, safe, secure; to be unobjectionable, blameless, faultless; to be certain, established, clearly proven (fact); to be free (من from); to escape (من a danger) II to preserve, keep from injury, protect from harm (s.o.), save (s.o. from); to hand over intact (s.th., ل or الى to s.o.); to hand over, turn over, surrender (s.o., s.th., ل or الى to s.o.); to deliver (s.o. or الى to s.o.); to lay down (arms); to surrender, give o.s. up (ل or الى to); to submit,

سلك *silki* by wire, wire (adj.)

لاسلكي *lā-silki* wireless; radio, broadcasting (adj. and n.); radiogram; radio specialist | اشارة لاسلكية (*išāra*) radio message; عامل لاسلكي radio operator

سلكة *silkā* pl. سلك *silak* wire; thread; string (also, of a musical instrument)

NOTE: the first line in the dictionary discusses the 3 Root Letters in the Small Families

سلم *salima a* (سلامة *salāma*, سلام *salām*) to be safe and sound, unharmed, unim-

Tells what the word is in the Past Tense =

سَلِمَ

Tells what the Harakat on the 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter in the Present Tense is =

يَسْلَمُ

If the letter in the dictionary is U =  
Dhamma

i = Kasra

a = Fataha

The Masdar is shown within the brackets

The meaning in English

But as the word يُسْلِمُ was from the Family 4 – أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Need to search for the Family 4 in roman numerals = IV and note down the meaning:

سلم *salima a* (سلامة *salāma*, سلام *salām*) to be safe and sound, unharmed, unimpaired, intact, safe, secure; to be unobjectionable, blameless, faultless; to be certain, established, clearly proven (fact); to be free (من from); to escape (من a danger) II to preserve, keep from injury, protect from harm (• s.o.), save (من • s.o. from); to hand over intact (• s.th., ل or الى to s.o.); to hand over, turn over, surrender (•, • s.o., s.th., ل or الى to s.o.); to deliver (• ل or الى to s.o. s.th.); to lay down (• arms); to surrender, give o.s. up (ل or الى to); to submit, resign o.s. (ل or الى to); to greet, salute (على s.o.); to grant salvation (God to the Prophet); to admit, concede, grant (ب s.th.); to consent (ب to s.th.), approve (ب of s.th.), accept, sanction, condone (ب s.th.) | سلم امره الى الله (*amrahū*) to commit one's cause to God, resign o.s. to the will of God; سلم روحه (*rūḥahū*) to give up the ghost; سلم نفسه الاخير (*naḥasahū*) to breathe one's last, be in the throes of death; سلم نفسه للجوليس (*naḥsahū*) to give o.s. up to the police; سلم الىه على الحسنى والاساءة (*ḥusnā, isā'a*) to put o.s. at s.o.'s mercy; سلم لى عليه (*sallim*) give him my best regards! remember me to him! سلم صلى الله عليه وسلم (*sallā*) God bless him and grant him salvation (eulogy after the name of the Prophet Mohammed) III to keep the peace, make one's peace, make up (• with s.o.) IV to forsake, leave, desert, give up, betray (• s.o.); to let sink, drop (رأسه الى ركبتيه) *ra'sahū i. rukbataihi* one's head to one's knees); to hand over, turn over (الى to s.o., • or • s.o. or s.th.); to leave, abandon (الى • s.th. to s.o.); to deliver up, surrender, expose (الى • s.o. to) → to commit o.s., resign o.s. (لله to the will of God, with

The popular meaning is to surrender/commit to the will of Allah, the Exalted

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Analysis of Some Surahs

Video series link:

[https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb\\_n](https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n)

In order to appreciate understanding Arabic Grammar and how it helps to understand the meaning of the Holy Quran, this chapter will go through some Surahs from the Holy Quran while discussing the different concepts and vocabulary learned in this curriculum.

### Surah 114 An Nas

Verse 1: قُلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ النَّاسِ

قُلْ –

Command Form – أَنْتَ version

Present tense هُوَ version is يَقُولُ (He says) - Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun (2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is a vowel)

3 Root Letters are either - ق ي ل or ق و ل - looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ق و ل and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ - يَفْعُلُ -

Therefore - Command Form - “You” masculine أَنْتَ version becomes قُلْ  
To determine it is Command form rule out other possibilities:  
Cannot be Past Tense Fi'l - too short and Sukoon at the end

Cannot be Present Tense Fi'l - too short and does not start with ت, ي, ا  
or ن

Does not follow any Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf or Ism Alatun patterns

Cannot be a Forbidding as no لَا in front of it

So left only with Command Form - Follows pattern of Ajwafun Command Form as well

Meaning: Say! (You Male)

- أَعُوذُ -

Starts with أ and ends with letter with Dhamma - so it is a Present tense Fi'l  
Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun

3 Root Letters are either - ع و ذ or ع ي ذ – looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ع و ذ and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ  
يَفْعُلُ

Ends with Dhamma = Present Tense

أ at beginning indicates the أَنَا form

Meaning: I seek refuge

– بِرَبِّ النَّاسِ

Harf of Jar بِ so makes next Ism رَبِّ in Jar Status - the Majroor

The Majroor رَبِّ – is Light and no ال on it so it is a Mudhaf

Second Ism النَّاسِ is the Mudhaf Alai and is in Jar Status  
As Mudhaf Alai is Proper - Mudhaf is Proper

Meaning of verse: with the Lord of People

Verse 2: مَلِكِ النَّاسِ



First Ism **مَلِكٍ** is in Jar Status - this Status is carried over from the last verse

It is a Badal of the Eedhafa fragment at the end of Verse 1 **رَبِّ النَّاسِ**

The meaning "also known as" can be inserted between the two verses

This Badal is an Eedhafa fragment as well

The first Ism **مَلِكٍ** is Light and no **ال** on it = Mudhaf

The second Ism **النَّاسِ** is in Jar Status and is the Mudhaf Alai

As Mudhaf Alai is Proper - Mudhaf is Proper

Meaning of verse: the King of People

Verse 3: **إِلَهُ النَّاسِ**

First Ism **إِلَهُ** is in Jar Status - this Status is carried from the last verse

It is a second Badal of the Eedhafa fragment at the end of Verse 1 **رَبِّ النَّاسِ**

The meaning "also known as" can be inserted between the two verses

This Badal is an Eedhafa fragment as well

The first Ism **إِلَهِ** is Light and no **ال** on it = Mudhaf

The second Ism **النَّاسِ** is in Jar Status and is the Mudhaf Alai

As Mudhaf Alai is Proper - Mudhaf is Proper

Meaning of verse: the God of People

Verse 4: **مِنْ شَرِّ الْوَسْوَاسِ الْخَنَّاسِ**

Harf of Jar **مِنْ** (from) - makes **شَرِّ** in Jar Status - the Majroor

The Majroor - **شَرِّ** - is a Mudhaf - Light and no **ال** on it

The next Ism **الْوَسْوَاسِ** is a Mudhaf Alai - in Jar Status - only an Ism can be Mudhaf Alai

The next Ism **الْخَنَّاسِ** - **ال** on it indicates it is an Ism - is also in Jar Status

Also all the other 3 Ism properties (Gender, Number and Type) match between this Ism and previous one (**الْوَسْوَاسِ** - the Mudhaf Alai) = Mawsoof Siffa Fragment

Meaning of verse: From the evil of the retreating whisperer

Verse 5: الَّذِي يُوسَّوسُ فِي صُدُورِ النَّاسِ

The Ism Mawsool الَّذِي is needed so that the Present Tense Fi'l

الْوَسَّاسِ acts as a Siffa (description) for the Ism in verse 4 as this Ism is Proper – if the Ism was Common the Ism Mawsool is not needed

The Ism Mawsool الَّذِي matches in Number and Gender (Single and Masculine) to the Ism الْوَسَّاسِ

As يُوسَّوسُ starts with a ي and ends with a Dhamma - it is a Fi'l in Present tense هُوَ version - Fi'l with Four Root Letters

Meaning: to whisper thoughts to others

Next - Harf of Jar فِي (in) makes next Ism into Jar Status صُدُورِ - the Majroor

The Majroor صُدُورِ is a Mudhaf - Light and no ال on it

Makes next Ism النَّاسِ into Jar Status - the Mudhaf Alai

Meaning of Verse: the one who whispers [evil] into the breasts of mankind

Verse 6: مِنَ الْجِنَّةِ وَالنَّاسِ

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism الْجِنَّةِ into Jar Status - the Majroor

The Harf of Jar مِنْ has a Fatah on it in the verse in order to connect it to the next word for smooth recitation and the ا in ال on the Ism الْجِنَّةِ is ignored as it does not have a Hamza on it. So the Nun on مِنْ connects straight to the Laam on الْجِنَّةِ

The Ataf وَ (and) carries over the Status of the Ism before it الْجِنَّةِ to the Ism after it النَّاسِ - so it is in Jar Status also

Meaning of Verse: From among the jinn and mankind

Surah 113 Al Falaq

Verse 1: قُلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ الْفَلَقِ

قُلْ -

Command Form – أَنْتَ version

Present tense هُوَ version is يَقُولُ (He says) - Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun (2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is a vowel)

3 Root Letters are either - ق ي ل or ق و ل – looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ق و ل and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ – يَفْعُلُ –

Therefore - Command Form – “You” masculine أَنْتَ version becomes قُلْ  
To determine it is Command form rule out other possibilities:  
Cannot be Past Tense Fi'l - too short and Sukoon at the end

Cannot be Present Tense Fi'l - too short and does not start with ت, ي, ا  
or ن

Does not follow any Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf or Ism Alatun patterns

Cannot be a Forbidding as no لَا in front of it

So left only with Command Form - Follows pattern of Ajwafun Command Form as well

Meaning: Say! (You Male)

– اَعُوْذُ

Starts with اَ and ends with letter with Dhamma - so it is a Present tense Fi'l  
Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun

3 Root Letters are either - ع و ذ or ع ي ذ – looking both up in the  
dictionary shows that it is ع و ذ and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ  
يَفْعُلُ

Ends with Dhamma = Present Tense

اَ at beginning indicates the اَنَا form

Meaning: I seek refuge

– رَبِّ الْفَلَقِ

Harf of Jar بِ so makes next Ism رَبِّ in Jar Status - the Majroor

The Majroor رَبِّ - is Light and no ال on it so it is a Mudhaf

Second Ism الْفَلَقِ - has ال so it is an Ism - is the Mudhaf Alai and is in  
Jar Status

As Mudhaf Alai is Proper - Mudhaf is Proper

Meaning of Verse: Say! I seek refuge with the Lord of Daybreak

Verse 2: مِنْ شَرِّ مَا خَلَقَ

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism in Jar Status شَرِّ - the Majroor

The Majroor شَرِّ is Light and No ال on it - Mudhaf

The next word مَا is the Mudhaf Alai – it is in Jar Status

The next word خَلَقَ has 3 Root Letters only with all Fatah across - fits the pattern of Past Tense Fi'l of the Small Families - هُوَ version

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Meaning of verse: From the evil of what He created

Verse 3: وَمِنْ شَرِّ غَاسِقٍ إِذَا وَقَبَ

Ataf وَ (and)

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism in Jar Status شَرِّ - the Majroor

The Majroor شَرِّ is Light and No ال on it - Mudhaf

The next Ism غَاسِقٍ is the Mudhaf Alai (only Ism can be Mudhaf Alai) – it is in Jar Status

Next word إِذَا - means “when” - pushes meaning into Future tense

Next word وَقَب has 3 Root Letters only with all Fatah across - fits the pattern of Past Tense Fi'l of the Small Families - هُوَ version

Irregular verb Mithalun (1st root letter is vowel)

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: He/it becomes dark

Meaning of Verse: And from the evil of darkness when it becomes dark/settled

Verse 4: وَمِنْ شَرِّ النَّفْثِ فِي الْعُقَدِ

Ataf وَ (and)

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism in Jar Status - شَرِّ - the Majroor

The Majroor شَرِّ is Light and No ال on it - Mudhaf

The next Ism النَّفْثِ is the Mudhaf Alai – it is in Jar Status

The Ism النَّفْثِ - Harf of Jar only comes with an Ism - has the female plural ending combination اتِ



Meaning: those women who blow

- فِي الْعُقَدِ

Harf of Jar فِي (in) makes next Ism in Jar Status - الْعُقَدِ - the Majroor

Meaning of Verse: And from the evil of the blowers (who blow) in knots

Verse 5: وَمِنْ شَرِّ حَاسِدٍ إِذَا حَسَدَ

Ataf وَ (and)

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism in Jar Status - شَرِّ - the Majroor

The Majroor شَرِّ is Light and No ال on it - Mudhaf

The next Ism حَاسِدٍ is the Mudhaf Alai (only Ism can be Mudhaf Alai) – it is in Jar Status

Follows the Ism Far'il pattern found in small families فَاعِلٌ

Meaning: the one who is jealous

- إِذَا حَسَدَ

Next word إِذَا - means “when” - pushes meaning into Future Tense

Next word حَسَدَ has 3 Root Letters only with all Fatah across - fits the pattern of Past Tense Fi'l of the Small Families - هُوَ version

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Meaning: He envied

Meaning of Verse: And from the evil of an envier when he envies

### Surah 112 Al Ikhlas

Verse 1: قُلْ هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ

قُلْ –

Command Form – أَنْتَ version

Present tense هُوَ version is يَقُولُ (He says) - Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun (2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is a vowel)

3 Root Letters are either - ق ي ل or ق و ل – looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ق و ل and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ

يَفْعُلُ –

Therefore - Command Form – “You” masculine أَنْتَ version becomes قُلْ

To determine it is Command form rule out other possibilities:  
Cannot be Past Tense Fi'l - too short and Sukoon at the end

Cannot be Present Tense Fi'l - too short and does not start with ت, ي, ا  
or ن

Does not follow any Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf or Ism Alatun patterns

Cannot be a Forbidding as no لَا in front of it

So left only with Command Form - Follows pattern of Ajwafun Command Form as well

Meaning: Say! (You Male)

– هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ

Next word هُوَ is an Independent Pronoun meaning “He”

It creates a noun sentence

Break in chain as no grammatical connection between هُوَ and next Ism -

the word اللَّهُ - the word "is" goes in between the two isms

Meaning: He is Allah (SWT)

Next word أَحَدٌ is an Ism

Meaning of Verse: Say, "He is Allāh, [who is] One

Verse 2: اللَّهُ الصَّمَدُ

No grammatical link between two Isms in this Noun Sentence so "is" can be inserted in between

Meaning: Allah (SWT) is the Eternal Refuge

Verse 3: لَمْ يَلِدْ وَلَمْ يُولَدْ

The word لَمْ means "did not" and is one of the words which makes the Present Tense in Lightest form

Next word يَلِدْ is therefore a Fi'l in the Present Tense Lightest form -

Sukoon at the end indicates that - هُوَ version.

Irregular verb Mithalun - 1st root is a vowel

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: He did not give birth

- وَلَمْ يُوَلِّدْ

Ataf وَ (and)

The word لَمْ means "did not" and is one of the words which makes the Present Tense in Lightest form

Next word يُوَلِّدْ is therefore a Fi'l Present tense in Lightest form - Sukoon

at the end indicates that - هُوَ version.

Irregular verb Mithalun - 1st root is a vowel

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

All the Harakat are at the top and Present Tense - which indicates Passive Present Tense Fi'l (doer is unknown)

Meaning: He was not given birth to

Meaning of Verse: He neither begets nor is given birth to

Verse 4: وَلَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ كُفُوًا أَحَدٌ

Ataf وَ (and)

The word لَمْ means "did not" and is one of the words which makes the Present Tense in Lightest form

Next word يَكُنْ is therefore a Fi'l Present tense in Lightest form - Sukoon at the end indicates that - هُوَ version.

Incomplete Verb - كَانَ and sisters

Outside doer (known as the Ism of كَانَ) is أَحَدٌ

Follows rules of Outside Doer:

Matches Fi'l يَكُنْ in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هُوَ or هِيَ versions

Meaning: anyone is not

لَهُ كُفُّوا أَحَدٌ .

Next word لَهُ is Harf of Jar لَ (for) with Attached pronoun هُ - indicates possession

Meaning: for Him

Next Ism كُفُّوا

Khabr of كَانَ - so it is in Nasab Status

Meaning: equivalent

Meaning of Verse: Nor is anyone to Him any equivalent

Surah 111 Al Masad

Verse 1: تَبَّتْ يَدَا أَبِي لَهَبٍ وَتَبَّ

First word تَبَّتْ is a Past tense Fi'l in هِيَ version - the ت with a Sukoon at the end indicates that

Irregular verb Moodaarefun - Shadda on ب indicates that

1st Root letter ت

2nd and 3rd Root letters ب

Looking it up in dictionary shows that it is from Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: she/it perished

Outside doer is يَدَا أَبِي لَهَبٍ

The word يَدَا is Feminine because it is a body part in a pair

Follows Outside Doer rules:

Matches Fi'l تَبَّتْ in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هِيَ version

The Ism يَدَا is a Mudhaf - Light no ال - normal version يَدَانِ has the ending combination ان and the ن has been dropped to make it Light

The next Ism أَبِي is Mudhaf Alai and the second Mudhaf

The next Ism لَهَبٍ is the second Mudhaf Alai

Only Isms can be part of the Eedhafa fragment

Meaning: Hands of Abu Lahab have perished - can be considered a supplication too: may the hands of Abu Lahab perish

- وَتَبَّ

Ataf وَ (and) - has a Shadda on it to connect to previous word for smooth recitation

Next word تَبَّ is a Past tense Fi'l in هُوَ version

Irregular verb Moodaarefun - Shadda on ب indicates that



1st Root letter ت

2nd and 3rd Root letters ب

Looking it up in dictionary shows that it is from Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: He perished

Meaning of Verse: May the hands of Abū Lahab perish, and he has perished

Verse 2: مَا أَغْنَىٰ عَنْهُ مَالُهُ وَمَا كَسَبَ

The first word مَا is for negation - only one that makes sense

The next word أَغْنَىٰ is a Past Tense Fi'l - هُوَ version

Irregular verb Naqisun - the ي at the end indicates that

Cannot be Present Tense Fi'l - does not end with Dhamma or ي which is typically seen in Naqis and the أ at the beginning of أَغْنَىٰ cannot be the

أَنَا version in Present tense as the sentence would not make sense

Does not follow any Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf, Ism Alatun or Commanding form patterns

Cannot be a Forbidding as no لَا in front of it

So it is a Past tense Fi'l - Family 4 - which explains the أ (Hamza) at the start

3 Root Letters are غ ن ي

Looking up in dictionary for Family 4 – meaning is to avail/help

As Fi'l is in هُوَ version - look for outside doer

Outside Doer is مَالُهُ

Follows Outside Doer rules:

Matches Fi'l أَغْنَى in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هُوَ version

Second Outside Doer because of the Ataf مَا كَسَبَ وَ is

The Ataf وَ carries over the Rafa Status and all other outside doer rules followed

مَا كَسَبَ .

The Harf مَا is Ism Mawsool – means “whatever”

The Seelatun Masool is كَسَبَ

The Seelatun Masool كَسَبَ is a Fi'l has 3 root letters and Fatah across

all 3 letters - indicates Past Tense Fi'l - one of the Small Families - هُوَ  
version

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Meaning: whatever he earned

The last word عَنْهُ - is a Harf of Jar عَنْ (from/about) with Attached  
Pronoun هُ

Meaning: from him

Meaning of Verse: His wealth nor what he earned will avail/help him

Verse 3: سَيَصْلِي نَارًا ذَاتَ لَهَبٍ

The first word سَيَصْلِي is a Fi'l - Present Tense هُوَ version

The س at the beginning is the Harf which means “soon” and pushes the  
Present Tense meaning to the Future Tense

The ي at beginning of the Fi'l يَصْلِي indicates it is a Present Tense

Irregular verb Naqisun - ي at the end indicates that

3 Root Letters are ص ل ي

Looking it up in a dictionary shows it is Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ

Meaning: He will burn

Next Ism نَارًا is Mafool Feehee - answers question where he will be burned  
- Nasab Status

Next Isms ذَاتَ لَهَبٍ acts as a Siffa (description) for the previous Ism

نَارًا – so it is Nasab in status

And is a Eedhafa fragment

Mudhaf - ذَاتَ - light and no ال on it

Mudhaf Alai - لَهَبٍ - is in Jar Status

Meaning: a fire, possessor of intense flames

Meaning of Verse: He will [enter to] burn in a fire, possessor of intense flames

Verse 4: وَآمَرَآتُهُ حَمَّالَةَ الْخَطَبِ

Second Outside doer **إِمْرَأَتُهُ** - to the Fi'l **سَيَصِلِي** in verse 3 - because of the Ataf **وَ**

The Ataf **وَ** carries over the Rafa Status and all other Outside Doer rules followed:

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l **سَيَصِلِي** is in **هُوَ** version

Even though the Outside Doer does not Matches Fi'l **سَيَصِلِي** in Gender yet it is acceptable in these rare cases

The Outside Doer **إِمْرَأَتُهُ** - is an Eedhafa fragment

Mudhaf - **إِمْرَأَتُ** - Light and no **ال** on it

Mudhaf Alai - Attached Pronoun **هُ**

Meaning: His wife

- **حَمَّالَةَ الْخَطْبِ**

Next Isms **حَمَّالَةَ الْخَطْبِ** are an Eedhafa Fragment

Act as a Haal for the Ism **وَأَمْرَأَتُهُ** - Nasab in Status

Mudhaf – حَمَّالَةٌ – Light and no ال on it

Mudhaf Alai - الْحَطْبِ - is in Jar Status

Only Isms are part of an Eedhafa fragment

Meaning of Verse: And his wife [as well] - the carrier of firewood

Verse 5: فِي جِيدِهَا حَبْلٌ مِّن مَّسَدٍ

Harf of Jar فِي (in) makes next Ism جِيد into Jar Status - the Majroor (can only be an Ism)

The Majroor جِيد is Mudhaf - Light and no ال on it

Mudhaf Alai - Attached Pronoun هَا

Meaning: in her neck

No grammatical connection between جِيدِهَا and next Ism حَبْلٌ in this Noun sentence - so "is" inserted in between

Meaning: in her neck is a rope

- مِّنْ مَّسَدٍ

Next word is a Harf of Jar مِّنْ (from) - has a Shadda on it to connect to previous Ism حَبْلٌ for smoothness of recitation

Makes next Ism مَّسَدٍ – into Jar Status – the Majroor (only Ism can be a Majroor)

Meaning of Verse: Around her neck is a rope from [twisted] fiber

### Surah 110 An Nasr

Verse 1: إِذَا جَاءَ نَصْرُ اللَّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ

First word إِذَا means “when” and creates conditional statement – it pushes the meaning into the Future Tense - even when a Past Tense Fi'l has been used and has no grammatical effect on other words

Next word جَاءَ is a Past Tense Fi'l - هُوَ version

Irregular verb combination of Mahmuzun – when one of the root letters is Hamza - and Ajwafun – when 2<sup>nd</sup> root letter is a vowel

3 Root Letters are either - ج ي ء or ج و ء – looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ج ي ء and follows Sub Family 2 Pattern فَعَلَ  
يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: He/it came (because of the conditional statement meaning becomes: when he/it will come)

As Past Tense Fi'l جَاءَ is in - هُوَ version - look for Outside Doer

Outside Doer is نَصْرُ اللَّهِ

Follows the rules of an Outside Doer:

Matches Fi'l جَاءَ in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هُوَ version

The Outside Doer is an Eedhafa fragment

Mudhaf - نَصْرُ - Light and no ال on it

Mudhaf Alai - (the word) اللَّهُ - it is in Jar Status

Meaning: when the help of Allah (SWT) comes



- وَالْفَتْحُ

Second Outside Doer جَاءَ - the Ataf وَ (and)

carries the Rafa Status over from the first Outside Doer نَصَرَ اللّٰهَ

Follows the rules of an Outside Doer:

Matches جَاءَ in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هُوَ version

Meaning of Verse: When the victory of Allāh and the conquest comes

Verse 2: وَرَأَيْتَ النَّاسَ يَدْخُلُونَ فِي دِينِ اللّٰهِ أَفْوَاجًا

Ataf وَ (and) carries over the conditional statement made in the verse 1

Next word رَأَيْتَ is a Fi'l Past Tense - أَنْتَ version - Sukoon on second to

last letter ي followed by ت with a Fatah on it indicates this

Irregular verb combination Naqisun – 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is a vowel – and

Mahmuzun – when one of the root letters is a ع

Cannot be a Present Tense Fi'l- does not begin with ن or ت - ي - ا

Does not follow pattern of other words: Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf or Ism Alatun either

3 Root Letters are: ر ء ي

Meaning: You saw (but because of conditional statement from previous verse being carried over meaning is pushed into future tense - when you see)

The next word النَّاسِ is the Mafool Beehee - answers questions what do you see - Nasab Status

Meaning: the people

– يَدْخُلُونَ فِي دِينِ اللَّهِ أَفْوَاجًا

Rest of verse up to the word اللَّهُ is Mafool Haal - answers question in what state to you see the people in - entire thing is in Nasab Status

Within Mafool Haal –

Next word يَدْخُلُونَ is Fi'l Present Tense - هُمْ version - the ي at the beginning and the ending combination وَنَ at the end indicates this

The Present tense هُوَ version is therefore يَدْخُلُ

3 Root Letters are: د خ ل

Meaning: they enter (“they” refers to the people mentioned directly before)

Next is the Harf of Jar **فِي** (in) and makes next Ism **دِينَ** in Jar Status - the Majroor (only an Ism can be a Majroor)

The Majroor **دِينَ** - is Light and no **ال** - Mudhaf

The Mudhaf Alai is (the word) **اللَّهِ** - it is in Jar Status

The last Ism **أَفْوَاجًا** is another Mafool Haal - Answers the question in what state do they enter - Nasab Status

It is Heavy and does not follow any Fi'l pattern – therefore it must be an Ism

Meaning of Verse: And you see the people entering into the religion of Allāh in multitudes.

Verse 3: **فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ ۚ إِنَّهُ كَانَ تَوَّابًا**

The Harf **فَ** (then) is often placed between the Condition and the Response of the Condition when the two are different

In this case the Condition in verse 1 was connected to a Past Tense Fi'l and in this verse the Response of the Condition is connected to a Command Form

Next word **سَبِّحْ** is in Command form - Family 2 - **أَنْتَ - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ**

version

The Shaada indicates it is Family 2 and the Sukoon indicates Commanding

Form also

It does not follow the pattern of Present Tense, Past Tense, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf, Forbidding form and therefore it is Commanding form

3 Root Letters: س ب ح

Meaning: You (male) glorify!

Next word بِحَمْدٍ is a Har of Jar Fragment

Har of Jar بِ (with) makes next Ism حَمْدٍ in Jar Status - the Majroor (only an Ism can be a Majroor)

The Majroor حَمْدٍ is Light and no ال on it - Mudhaf

The next Ism رَبِّ - is Mudhaf Alai and is the next Mudhaf - Light and no ال

The Mudhaf Alai in رَبِّكَ is the Attached Pronoun كَ – meaning “you”

Meaning: You glorify! with the praise of your Lord

– وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ إِنَّهُ كَانَ تَوَّابًا

Next Harf is Ataf وَ (and)

Next word اسْتَغْفِرْهُ is a Command Form - Family 10 - اسْتَفْعَلَ

يَسْتَفْعِلُ - أَنْتَ version


The **اِسْتِ** at the beginning indicates it is Family 10 and Sukoon on the

last letter **ر** indicates Commanding form also

It does not follow the pattern of Present Tense, Past Tense, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf, Forbidding form and therefore it is Commanding form


3 Root Letters: **ر ف غ**

Meaning: You (male) seek forgiveness!

Next is an Attached Pronoun  which is Mafool Beehee - answers the question who to seek forgiveness from

Meaning: You (male) seek forgiveness of Him!

**اِنَّهٗ كَانَ تَوَّابًا**

Harf of Nasab **اِنَّ** (certainly) with its Ism  - Attached Pronoun – meaning “He”

Next word **كَانَ** is an Incomplete Verb - **هُوَ** version  
Meaning: He was

Next word **تَوَّابًا** is the Khabr of the Incomplete Verb **كَانَ** - which is Nasab in Status

Meaning: Certainly, He was (always) accepting of repentance

Meaning of Verse: Then exalt with the praise of your Lord and ask forgiveness of Him. Indeed, He was (always) accepting of repentance

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

## Vocabulary List

It is vital to become familiar with this Vocabulary List chapter. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied. The Table of Contents Sidebar should be utilized in order to switch between tabs within the Vocabulary List chapter as well as the relevant chapters throughout the book.

### Nouns

#### General Isms

| Isim                                | Meaning  | Isim                                      | Meaning        |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|----------------|
| آيَةٌ - Single<br>آيَاتٌ - Plural   | Sign     | بَيِّنَةٌ - Single<br>بَيِّنَاتٌ - Plural | Clear evidence |
| جَبَلٌ - Single<br>جِبَالٌ - Plural | Mountain | أَنْعَامٌ                                 | Cattle         |

|   |         |  |             |
|---|---------|--|-------------|
| بَحْرٌ  | Sea     | شَمْسٌ                                 | Sun         |
| قَمَرٌ  | Moon    | لَيْلٌ                                 | Nighttime   |
| نَهَارٌ   | Daytime | لَيْلَةٌ - Single<br>لَيَالٍ - Plural  | Night       |
| يَوْمٌ - Single<br>أَيَّامٌ - Plural            | Day     | أَرْضٌ                                 | Earth       |
| سَّمَاءٌ -<br>Single<br>سَمَآوَاتٌ -<br>Plural  | Sky     | رَسُولٌ -<br>Single<br>رُسُلٌ - Plural | Messenger   |
| نَبِيٌّ - Single<br>أَنْبِيَاءٌ - Plural        | Prophet | أَجْرٌ - Single<br>أُجُورٌ - Plural    | Reward      |
| شَيْطَانٌ -<br>Single<br>شَيَاطِينُ -<br>Plural | Satan   | أَعْلٌ                                 | Term a time |



|  |               |                      |                                    |
|--|---------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| الْآخِرَةُ                                   | The hereafter | ثَوَابٌ<br>جَزَاءٌ   | Reward                             |
| جَنَّةٌ - Single<br>جَنَّاتٍ -<br>Plural     | Garden        | جَحِيمٌ<br>جَهَنَّمَ | Hellfire                           |
| حِسَابٌ                                      | Reckoning     | سَاعَةٌ              | Hour (the Day of Judgement)        |
| صَاحِبٌ -<br>Single<br>أَصْحَابٌ -<br>Plural | Companion     | عَاقِبَةٌ            | The final outcome                  |
| عَذَابٌ<br>عِقَابٌ                           | Punishment    | قِيَامَةٌ            | Day of Standing (Day of Judgement) |
| لِقَاءٌ                                      | Meeting       | مُسَمًّى             | Fixed                              |
| نَارٌ  | Fire          | نَهْرٌ - Single      | River                              |

|  |                    |   |             |
|--|--------------------|---|-------------|
|  |                    | أَنْهَرُ - Plural                         |             |
| وَيْلٌ                                     | Destruction for... | يَوْمَئِذٍ                                | On that day |
| إِلَهٌ - Single<br>آلِهَةٌ - Plural        | God                | شَرِيكٌ -<br>Single<br>شُرَكَاءُ - Plural | Partner     |
| شَهَادَةٌ -<br>Single<br>شُهُودٌ - Plural  | Witness            | عَرْشٌ                                    | Throne      |
| عَهْدٌ<br>مِيثَاقٌ                         | Promise/Covenant   | غَيْبٌ                                    | Unseen      |
| كِتَابٌ -<br>Single<br>كُتُبٌ - Plural     | Book               | كَلِمَةٌ                                  | Word        |
| مَلَكٌ - Single<br>مَلَائِكَةٌ -<br>Plural | Angel              | مَلِكٌ                                    | King        |

|                                     |                      |           |                           |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------|---------------------------|
| أَمْرٌ – Single<br>أُمُورٌ - Plural | Matter/Situation     | مَلِكٌ    | King                      |
| حَقٌّ                               | Right/Truth          | تَقْوَى   | Fearing Allah (SWT)/Piety |
| حِكْمَةٌ                            | Wisdom               | حَمْدٌ    | Praise                    |
| دِينٌ                               | Religion/Way of life | زَكَاةٌ   | Obligatory charity        |
| صَلَاةٌ                             | Prayer               | نُورٌ     | Light                     |
| آلَاءِ                              | Favours              | سَلْطَانٌ | Authority                 |
| فَضْلٌ<br>نِعْمَةٌ                  | Favour/Bounty        | مَاءٌ     | Water                     |
| مُلْكٌ                              | Kingdom              | بَأْسٌ    | Punishment                |
| جَمِيعٌ                             | All together         | سَوَاءٌ   | Equal                     |

|   |                  |   |             |
|---|------------------|---|-------------|
| فَرِيقٌ   | Party/Group      | عَمَلٌ – Single<br>أَعْمَالٌ -<br>Plural      | Action      |
| سَيِّئَةٌ –<br>Single<br>سَيِّئَاتٌ -<br>Plural | Bad Deed         | حَسَنَةٌ –<br>Single<br>حَسَنَاتٌ -<br>Plural | Good deed   |
| إِثْمٌ  | Sin              | ذَنْبٌ  | Error       |
| حَرَامٌ   | Unlawful         | إِسْمٌ – Single<br>أَسْمَاءٌ - Plural         | Name        |
| حَدِيثٌ   | Speech/New event | طَيِّبَةٌ – Single<br>طَيِّبَاتٌ -<br>Plural  | Pure/Good   |
| نَفْسٌ – Single<br>أَنْفُسٌ - Plural            | Soul             | رُوحٌ   | Soul/Spirit |
| زَوْجٌ – Single                                 | Pair/Spouse      | رَجُلٌ – Single                               | Man         |

|                     |                       |                     |        |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|--------|
| أَزْوَاجٌ - Plural  |                       | رِجَالٌ - Plural    |        |
| إِمْرَأَةٌ - Single | Woman                 | وَلَدٌ - Single     | Child  |
| نِسَاءٌ - Plural    |                       | أَوْلَادٌ - Plural  |        |
| وَالِدٌ             | Father                | أُمٌّ - Single      | Mother |
| أَبٌ                |                       | أُمَّهَاتٌ - Plural |        |
| - Single            |                       |                     |        |
| آبَاءٌ - Plural     |                       |                     |        |
| ذُرِّيَّةٌ          | Offspring/Descendants | إِبْنٌ - Single     | Son    |
|                     |                       | بَنُونَ - Plural    |        |
| أَخٌ - Single       | Brother               | إِبْنٌ - Single     | Son    |
| إِخْوَانٌ - Plural  |                       | بَنُونَ - Plural    |        |
|                     |                       |                     |        |
| أَخٌ - Single       | Brother               | إِبْنٌ - Single     | Son    |

|   |                  |   |              |
|---|------------------|---|--------------|
| - إِخْوَانٌ<br>Plural                           |                  | - بَنُونَ Plural                          |              |
| - أُخْتُ<br>Single<br><br>- أَخَوَاتُ<br>Plural | Sister           | - بِنْتُ Single<br><br>- بَنَاتُ Plural   | Daughter     |
| - أُمَّةٌ Single<br><br>- أُمَمٌ Plural         | Nation/Community | قَوْمٌ                                    | People       |
| - إِنْسَانٌ<br>Single<br><br>- نَاسٌ Plural     | Human            | - ذَكَرٌ Single<br><br>- ذُكُورٌ Plural   | Male         |
| - أَنْثَى Single<br><br>- إناثٌ Plural          | Female           | - عَبْدٌ Single<br><br>- عِبَادٌ Plural   | Slave        |
| - عَدُوٌّ Single<br><br>- أَعْدَاءُ Plural      | Enemy            | - كَافِرٌ Single<br><br>- كُفَّارٌ Plural | Disbelievers |

|  |                  |                                      |                |
|--|------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------|
| مُجْرِمٌ                                   | Criminal         | مَلَأُ                               | Chiefs/Leaders |
| وَلِيٌّ – Single<br>أَوْلِيَاءُ - Plural   | Friend/Protector | بَيْتٌ – Single<br>بُيُوتٌ - Plural  | House          |
| دَارٌ – Single<br>دِيَارٌ - Plural         | Abode/Home       | دُنْيَا                              | World          |
| سَبِيلٌ –<br>Single<br>سُبُلٌ - Plural     | Path             | صِرَاطٌ                              | Path           |
| عَالَمٌ – Single<br>عَالَمِينَ -<br>Plural | World            | فِتْنَةٌ                             | Trial          |
| قَرْيَةٌ – Single<br>قُرَى - Plural        | Village/Town     | مَالٌ – Single<br>أَمْوَالٌ - Plural | Wealth         |
| مَتَاعٌ                                    | Provision        | مَسْجِدٌ –<br>Single                 | Mosque         |

|                  |       |                       |  |
|------------------|-------|-----------------------|--|
|                  |       | مَسَاجِدُ -<br>Plural |  |
| مَكَانٌ - Single | Place |                       |  |

### Ism Siffa – Descriptions

| Ism   | Meaning | Ism     | Meaning      |
|---|---------|---------|--------------|
| أَوَّلٌ -<br>Masculine<br>أُولَى - Feminine   | First   | حَمِيمٌ | Close friend |
| آخِرٌ -<br>Masculine<br>آخِرَةٌ -<br>Feminine | Last    | خَبِيرٌ | Aware        |



|  |                      |         |                             |
|--|----------------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| <p>آخر -<br/>Masculine</p> <p>أُخْرَى -<br/>Feminine</p> | Other                | سَمِيعٌ | The one who listens         |
| أَمِينٌ  | Trustworthy          | شَكُورٌ | Grateful                    |
| بَصِيرٌ  | The one who sees     | عَزِيزٌ | Mighty                      |
| كَرِيمٌ  | Noble/Generous       | غَفُورٌ | The forgiver                |
| تَوَّابٌ   | Repeatedly Forgiving | قَدِيرٌ | The powerful                |
| حَفِيزٌ  | Protector            | نَذِيرٌ | The warner                  |
| حَكِيمٌ  | Wise                 | نَصِيرٌ | The helper                  |
| حَلِيمٌ  | Forbearing           | وَكَيلٌ | The one who manages affairs |
| حَمِيدٌ  | Praiseworthy         | شَدِيدٌ | The strong                  |
| عَلِيٌّ  | The high             | عَلِيمٌ | The knower                  |
| كَبِيرٌ  | Big                  | كَثِيرٌ | Plenty                      |
| رَحِيمٌ  | Merciful             | عَظِيمٌ | Supreme                     |

### Ism Tafdeel – Comparatives

| Ism      | Meaning       | Ism      | Meaning       |
|----------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| أَشَدُّ  | More severe   | أَعْلَمُ | More knowing  |
| أَعْلَى  | More higher   | أَقْرَبُ | Closer        |
| أكْبَرُ  | Bigger        | أَكْثَرُ | More          |
| أَحْسَنُ | Better        | أَحَقُّ  | More entitled |
| أَذْنَى  | Less          | أَظْلَمُ | More unjust   |
| أَهْدَى  | Better guided | أَوْلَى  | Nearer        |

### Ism Charts

### Masculine Chart

| Plural      | Dual         | Singular | Status         |
|-------------|--------------|----------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنُونَ | مُؤْمِنَانِ  | مُؤْمِنٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ | مُؤْمِنَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنٌ | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنِينَ | مُؤْمِنَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### Feminine Chart

| Plural      | Dual           | Singular   | Status         |
|-------------|----------------|------------|----------------|
| مُؤْمِنَاتُ | مُؤْمِنَتَانِ  | مُؤْمِنَةٌ | رَفْعٌ - Rafa  |
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ | مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنَةٌ | نَصْبٌ - Nasab |
| مُؤْمِنَاتٍ | مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ | مُؤْمِنَةٍ | جَرٌّ - Jar    |

### Independent and Attached Pronoun Chart

| Grammatical Person | Plural | Dual | Singular | Gender |
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|
|--------------------|--------|------|----------|--------|

|               |                                |  |                   |           |
|---------------|--------------------------------|--|-------------------|-----------|
| Third Person  | هُم                            | هُمَا                                  | هُوَ              | Masculine |
|               | Attached Pronouns              | Attached Pronouns                      | Attached Pronouns |           |
|               | هُم<br>هِم<br>They             | هُمَا<br>هِمَا<br>Both of them         | هُ<br>هِ<br>He/It |           |
| Third Person  | هُنَّ                          | هُمَا                                  | هِيَ              | Feminine  |
|               | Attached Pronouns              | Attached Pronouns                      | Attached Pronoun  |           |
|               | هُنَّ<br>هِنَّ<br>They (Women) | هُمَا<br>هِمَا<br>Both of them (Women) | هَا<br>She/It     |           |
| Second Person | أَنْتُمْ                       | أَنْتُمَا                              | أَنْتَ            | Masculine |
|               | Attached Pronoun               | Attached Pronoun                       | Attached Pronoun  |           |
|               | كُمْ<br>All of You             | كُمَا<br>You Two                       | كَ<br>You         |           |

|               |   |  |  |          |
|---------------|---|--|--|----------|
|               |   |  |  |          |
| Second Person | <p>أَنْتُنَّ</p> <p>Attached Pronoun</p> <p>كُنَّ</p> <p>All of You (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتُمَا</p> <p>Attached Pronoun</p> <p>كُمَا</p> <p>You Two (Women)</p> | <p>أَنْتِ</p> <p>Attached Pronoun</p> <p>لِ</p> <p>You</p>                       | Feminine |
| First Person  | <p>نَحْنُ</p> <p>Attached Pronoun</p> <p>نَا</p> <p>We</p>                      |  | <p>أَنَا</p> <p>Attached Pronouns</p> <p>نِي (Nasab)</p> <p>ي (Jar)</p> <p>I</p> | Both     |

### Common Jaars (Harf of Jars)

|                    |         |                    |         |
|--------------------|---------|--------------------|---------|
| Jaar (Harf of Jar) | Meaning | Jaar (Harf of Jar) | Meaning |
|--------------------|---------|--------------------|---------|

|         |   |        |                 |
|---------|---|--------|-----------------|
| بِ      | With                                    | عَنْ   | About/Away From |
| تَ      | I Swear by<br>(used for Allah SWT only) | عَلَى  | Upon/On/Against |
| كَ      | Like<br>(comparison)                    | حَتَّى | Until           |
| لِ / لَ | For (possession)                        | إِلَى  | To/Towards      |
| وَ      | I Swear by                              | مُنْذُ | Since/For       |
| مِنْ    | From                                    | مُذْ   | Since           |
| فِي     | In                                      | خِلَا  | Except          |
| رُبَّ   | Maybe                                   | حَاشَا | Except          |
| عَدَا   | Except                                  |        |                 |

#### Harf of Nasab Table

| Harf of Nasab | Meaning            | Harf of Nasab | Meaning |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------|---------|
| إِنَّ         | Certainly/No Doubt | لَكِنَّ       | However |

|         |           |         |                             |
|---------|-----------|---------|-----------------------------|
| أَنَّ   | That      | لَعَلَّ | Perhaps, So that, Hopefully |
| كَأَنَّ | As Though | لَيْتَ  | If Only                     |
| بِأَنَّ | Because   | لِأَنَّ | Because                     |

### Special Mudhaf (Zharf) Chart – 1

| Special Mudhaf | Meaning                | Special Mudhaf | Meaning               | Special Mudhaf | Meaning                              |
|----------------|------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| بَيْنَ         | Between                | مَعَ           | With                  | قَدَّامَ       | Right in Front of                    |
| حَوْلَ         | Around/<br>Surrounding | أَمَامَ        | In Front of           | لَدَى          | In the<br>Presence of                |
| عِنْدَ         | With/By/At             | خَلْفَ         | Behind                | فَوْقَ         | Above                                |
| مِنْ<br>لَدُنْ | Especially<br>From     | وَرَاءَ        | Far Beyond/<br>Behind | تَحْتَ         | Below                                |
| قَبْلَ         | Before                 | بَعْدَ         | After                 | دُونِ          | Besides/<br>Other Than/<br>Less Than |

## Special Mudhaf Chart – 2

| Special Mudhaf | Meaning             | Special Mudhaf | Meaning       | Special Mudhaf | Meaning                |
|----------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|------------------------|
| بَعْضٌ         | Some of/<br>Part of | أَيُّ          | Any/<br>Which | كُلُّ          | All/<br>Each/<br>Every |
| مِثْلُ         | Similar             | نَفْسُ         | The Same      | غَيْرُ         | Other than/<br>Non     |

## Five Special Isms that appear as Mudhafs

|                                |         | As Mudhaf   |                |               |
|--------------------------------|---------|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| Non Mudhaf<br>(Normal Version) | Meaning | جَرُّ - Jar | نَصَبٌ - Nasab | رَفْعٌ - Rafa |
| أَبٌ                           | Father  | أَبِي       | أَبَا          | أَبُو         |
| أَخٌ                           | Brother | أَخِي       | أَخَا          | أَخُو         |



|                              |              |       |       |       |
|------------------------------|--------------|-------|-------|-------|
| حَمُّ                        | In-Law       | حَمِي | حَمَا | حَمُو |
| فَمُّ                        | Mouth        | فِي   | فَا   | فُو   |
| N/A (only comes as a Mudhaf) | Possessor of | ذِي   | ذَا   | ذُو   |

### Body Parts in Pairs

Both Singular and Dual Forms are Feminine

| Isim    | Meaning | Isim   | Meaning | Isim     | Meaning  |
|---------|---------|--------|---------|----------|----------|
| شَفَّةٌ | Lips    | أُذُنٌ | Ear     | يَدٌ     | Hand     |
| قَدَمٌ  | Foot    | رِجْلٌ | Leg     | عَيْنٌ   | Eye      |
| سَاقٌ   | Shin    | خَدٌ   | Cheek   | مِرْفَقٌ | Elbow    |
| كَعْبٌ  | Ankle   | عَقِبٌ | Heel    | مَنْكِبٌ | Shoulder |

### Feminine Set by Arabs

Arabic Term: مُؤَنَّثٌ سَمَاعِيٌّ

Some Isms are Feminine because the Arabs referred to them in that way

| Ism       | Meaning  | Ism      | Meaning  |
|-----------|--|----------|----------|
| أَرْضٌ    | Land   | رِيحٌ    | Wind     |
| حَرْبٌ    | War  | دَارٌ    | House    |
| بُئْرٌ    | Water Well   | كَأْسٌ   | Cup      |
| خَمْرٌ    | Alcohol  | سَعِيرٌ  | Hellfire |
| جَهَنَّمُ | Hellfire (Partly Flexible – name of a Proper place – so it is Light) | سَّمَاءٌ | Sky      |
| نَفْسٌ    | Self   | شَمْسٌ   | Sun      |
| نَارٌ     | Fire   | دَلْوٌ   | Bucket   |
| سَبِيلٌ   | Path   | طَرِيقٌ  | Path     |
| عَصَا     | Staff/Stick (non-Flexible)   |          |          |

### Some Broken Plurals

| Plural | Singular | Meaning | Plural | Singular | Meaning |
|--------|----------|---------|--------|----------|---------|
|--------|----------|---------|--------|----------|---------|

|           |            |                 |             |          |          |
|-----------|------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|----------|
| أَزْوَاجٌ | زَوْجٌ     | One of a Pair   | نِعَمٌ      | نِعْمَةٌ | Blessing |
| نِسَاءٌ   | إِمْرَأَةٌ | Woman           | شُهَدَاءُ   | شَاهِدٌ  | Witness  |
| أَفئِدَةٌ | فَوَادٌ    | Emotional Heart | أَنْبِيَاءُ | نَبِيٌّ  | Prophet  |

### Plural by Meaning Examples

Isms which refer to a group so are considered plural

| Isim   | Meaning                | Isim   | Meaning      |
|--------|------------------------|--------|--------------|
| خَصْمٌ | An Argumentative Group | آلٌ    | A Family     |
| جُنْدٌ | An Army                | نَاسٌ  | A People     |
| قَوْمٌ | A People               | قَرْنٌ | A Generation |
| حِزْبٌ | A Group                | أَهْلٌ | A Family     |

### Pointer Table for Close/Near

|  |        |      |          |
|--|--------|------|----------|
|  | Plural | Dual | Singular |
|--|--------|------|----------|

|           |           |           |        |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------|
| Masculine | هَؤُلَاءِ | هَذَانِ   | هَذَا  |
| Meaning   | These     | These Two | This   |
| Feminine  | هَؤُلَاءِ | هَتَانِ   | هَذِهِ |
| Meaning   | These     | These Two | This   |

### Pointer Table for Far

|           |           |           |          |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
|           | Plural    | Dual      | Singular |
| Masculine | أُولَئِكَ | ذَٰئِكَ   | ذَٰلِكَ  |
| Meaning   | Those     | Those Two | That     |
| Feminine  | أُولَئِكَ | تَئِكَ    | تَٰلِكَ  |
| Feminine  | Those     | Those Two | That     |

### Chart for Dual Pointers

|                  |                     |           |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| Nasab/Jar - Dual | Rafa - Dual         | Meaning   |
| هَذَيْنِ         | هَذَانِ - Masculine | These Two |

|          |                    |           |
|----------|--------------------|-----------|
| هَتَيْنِ | هَتَانِ - Feminine | These Two |
| ذَيْنِكَ | ذُنِكَ - Masculine | Those Two |
| تَيْنِكَ | تُنِكَ - Feminine  | Those Two |

### Light Version Chart

Makes the next Present Tense Fi'l in Light version

The Light Words:

| Word               | Meaning   |
|--------------------|---|
| أَنَّ              | To (connector – I want to go to school)<br>that<br>lest |
| لَنْ               | Will not – Translates in to the Future Tense            |
| لِ / كَيْ / لِكَيْ | So that<br>In order                                     |
| إِذَا / إِذَا      | In that case  |
| حَتَّى             | Until   |

### Lightest Version Chart

Makes the next Present Tense Fi'l in Lightest version

#### The Lightest Words

| Word   | Meaning  |
|--------|--|
| إِنْ   | If (also used in conditional statements – If this...then that)   |
| لَمْ   | Did not (gives Past Tense meaning, even though it connects with Present/Future tense Fi'l)                             |
| لَمَّا | Not yet (this word also means “when” but in this case it is not the version which makes Present/Future tense Lightest) |
| وَلْ   | And should   |
| فَلْ   | Then should  |
| لِ     | Should   |

### Some Harfs of Ataf

| Harf of Ataf | Meaning |
|--------------|---------|
|--------------|---------|

|        |                               |
|--------|-------------------------------|
| وَ     | And                           |
| ثُمَّ  | Then (after some time)        |
| أَمَّا | Either                        |
| فَ     | Then (after a short duration) |
| بَلْ   | Rather                        |
| لَكِنْ | However                       |

### Some Question Words

| Question Word | Meaning | Example in Noun Sentence       | Example in Verb Sentence   |
|---------------|---------|--------------------------------|--|
| أَيُّ         | Which   | أَيُّ هُوَ ؟<br>(which is it?) | فِي أَيِّ مَكَانٍ تَعْمَلُ ؟<br>(In which place do you work in? – or In which place does she work in?) |

|                 |                                   |   |   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| هَلْ / أَ       | Questions with a Yes or No Answer | هَلْ أَنْتَ<br>جَائِعٌ؟ (are you (masculine) hungry?)           | هَلْ تَأْكُلُ؟<br>(are you eating? - or is she eating?)       |
| كَيْفَ          | How                               | كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟<br>(how are you (masculine)?)                   | كَيْفَ فَعَلْتَ<br>ذَلِكَ؟ (How did you (masculine) do that?) |
| لِمَ / لِمَاذَا | Why                               | لِمَاذَا أَنْتَ<br>سَعِيدٌ؟ (why are you (masculine) happy?)    | لِمَاذَا أَكَلْتَ؟<br>(why did you (masculine) eat?)          |
| أَيْنَ          | Where                             | أَيْنَ أَنْتَ<br>ذَاهِبٌ؟<br>(where are you (masculine) going?) | أَيْنَ ذَهَبْتَ؟<br>(where did you (masculine) go?)           |
| مَاذَا / مَا    | What                              | مَا هُوَ الْيَوْمَ؟<br>(what day is it?)                        | مَاذَا فَعَلْتَ؟<br>(what did you (masculine) do?)            |
| مَنْ            | Who                               | مَنْ أَنْتَ؟<br>(Who are you                                    | مَنْ يَأْكُلُ؟<br>(who (masculine)                            |



|          |  |   |   |
|----------|--|---|---|
|          |  | (masculine)?                                | is eating?)   |
| مَتَى    | When   | مَتَى الْرَحْلَةُ؟<br>(when is the flight?) | مَتَى سَيَأْتِي الْعِقَابُ؟<br>(when will the punishment come?) |
| أَيَّانَ | When (asked in a surprising or sarcastic tone) |   |   |
| أَنَّى   | How (asked in a surprising or sarcastic tone)  |   |   |

### Ism Mowsool Chart

| Ism Mowsool Chart |           |          |
|-------------------|-----------|----------|
|                   | مَنْ      | مَا      |
|                   | Whoever   | Whatever |
| Plural            | Dual      | Single   |
| الَّذِينَ         | الَّذَانِ | الَّذِي  |

|                               |                         |                         |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
|                               |                         |                         |
| Those who (Masculine)         | The two who (Masculine) | The one who (Masculine) |
| <p>أَلَايَ</p> <p>أَلَايَ</p> | أَلَتَانِ               | أَلَتِي                 |
| Those who (Feminine)          | The two who (Feminine)  | The one who (Feminine)  |

### Expressing Wish/Desire Words

| Word          | Meaning                 |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| لَيْتَ        | If only (Harf of Nasab) |
| لَعَلَّ       | Perhaps (Harf of Nasab) |
| عَسَى         | Hopefully/Perhaps       |
| لَوْ/ لَوْلَا | If/Had/                 |

|      |                             |
|------|-----------------------------|
| هَلْ | Did/Is (Yes or no question) |
|------|-----------------------------|

### Numbers in the Quran

| Number      | Meaning | Number             | Meaning |
|-------------|---------|--------------------|---------|
| وَاحِدٌ     | 1       | أَرْبَعُونَ        | 40      |
| إِثْنَانِ   | 2       | خَمْسُونَ          | 50      |
| ثَلَاثَةٌ   | 3       | سِتُّونَ           | 60      |
| أَرْبَعَةٌ  | 4       | سَبْعُونَ          | 70      |
| خَمْسَةٌ    | 5       | ثَمَانُونَ         | 80      |
| سِتَّةٌ     | 6       | تِسْعٌ وَتِسْعُونَ | 99      |
| سَبْعَةٌ    | 7       | مِئَةٌ             | 100     |
| ثَمَانِيَةٌ | 8       | مِئَتَانِ          | 200     |
| تِسْعَةٌ    | 9       | ثَلَاثُ مِئَةٍ     | 300     |

|                        |    |                   |         |
|------------------------|----|-------------------|---------|
| عَشْرَةٌ /<br>عَشْرَةٌ | 10 | أَلْفٌ            | 1,000   |
| أَحَدَ عَشَرَ          | 11 | أَلْفَانِ         | 2,000   |
| إِثْنَا عَشَرَ         | 12 | ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ  | 3,000   |
| تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ        | 19 | خَمْسَةُ آلَافٍ   | 5,000   |
| عِشْرُونَ              | 20 | خَمْسُونَ أَلْفًا | 50,000  |
| ثَلَاثُونَ             | 30 | مِئَةُ أَلْفٍ     | 100,000 |

### Ordinal Numbers in the Quran

| Ordinal Number | Meaning |
|----------------|---------|
| أَوَّلَ        | First   |
| ثَانِ          | Second  |
| ثَالِثُ        | Third   |

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| رَابِعٌ | Fourth |
| سَادِسٌ | Sixth  |
| ثَامِنٌ | Eighth |

### Fractions in the Quran

| Fractions | Meaning    |
|-----------|------------|
| نِصْفٌ    | Half       |
| ثُلُثٌ    | One third  |
| ثُلُثَانِ | Two thirds |
| رُبْعٌ    | One fourth |
| خُمْسٌ    | One fifth  |
| سُدُسٌ    | One sixth  |
| ثُمْنٌ    | One eighth |

## **Verbs**

A complete chart for each Family will be provided as a template and the information for the rest of the Fi'ls will only include: Past Tense, Present Tense and Masdar

Using the template and the knowledge from the relevant chapter of this book the rest of the chart can be formed

## Family Parts

Every Family البَابُ includes the following parts

| Family Part                                       | Meaning  |
|---|--|
| الفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي                                | Past Tense Fi'l                                    |
| الفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ                             | Present/Future Tense Fi'l                          |
| الفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي الْمَبْنِي<br>لِلْمَجْهُولِ    | Passive Past Tense Fi'l                            |
| الفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ الْمَبْنِي<br>لِلْمَجْهُولِ | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                         |
| فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ                                  | Commanding Fi'l                                    |
| فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ                                  | Forbidding Fi'l                                    |
| المَصْدَرُ  | Idea (Masdar) – Ism                                |
| إِسْمُ فَاعِلٍ                                    | The Doer of the Action (Ism Far'il) – Ism          |
| إِسْمُ مَفْعُولٍ                                  | The thing the Action is done to (Ism Mafool) - Ism |

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| إِسْمُ ظَرْفٍ | Time/Place the Action takes place (Zharf) - Ism |
|---------------|---|

### Small Families have extra Family Parts

They take the same form across all Sub Families

| Family Part        | Meaning  | Pattern                             |
|--------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| إِسْمُ آلَةٍ       | A Tool/Device for doing the action (Ism Alatun) - Ism  | مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ<br>مِفْعَلَةٌ |
| إِسْمُ تَفْضِيلٍ   | Comparatives/Superlatives (Ism Tafdeel) - Ism          | أَفْعَلٌ                            |
| إِسْمُ صِفَةٍ      | Adjectives for Permanent Qualities (Ism Siffa) - Ism   | فَعِيلٌ<br>فَعِلٌ                   |
| إِسْمُ مُبَالَغَةٍ | A Magnified version of the Doer (the Ism Far'il) - Ism | فَعَّالٌ<br>فَعْلَانُ               |



|  |  |                                 |
|--|--|---------------------------------|
|  |  | فَعُولٌ<br>فِعْعِيلٌ<br>فُعُوءٌ |
|--|--|---------------------------------|

## Small Families – Regular Verbs

### فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 1

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                     | N/A                          | يَفْعُلُ                   | فَعَلَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |

|            |            |             |          |
|------------|------------|-------------|----------|
| مِفْعَلٌ   | مَفْعَلٌ   | لا تَفْعُلْ | أَفْعُلْ |
| مِفْعَالٌ  | مَفْعِلٌ   |             |          |
| مِفْعَلَةٌ | مَفْعَلَةٌ |             |          |

| Meaning        | Masdar  | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|----------------|---------|---------------|------------|
| To help        | نَصْرٌ  | يَنْصُرُ      | نَصَرَ     |
| To reach       | بُلُوغٌ | يَبْلُغُ      | بَلَغَ     |
| To leave       | تَرْكٌ  | يَتْرُكُ      | تَرَكَ     |
| To gather      | حَشْرٌ  | يَحْشُرُ      | حَشَرَ     |
| To judge       | حُكْمٌ  | يَحْكُمُ      | حَكَّمَ    |
| To come out    | خُرُوجٌ | يَخْرُجُ      | خَرَجَ     |
| To be immortal | خُلُودٌ | يَخْلُدُ      | خَلَدَ     |

|                   |        |          |        |
|-------------------|--------|----------|--------|
| To create         | خَلَقَ | يَخْلُقُ | خَلَقَ |
| To enter          | دَخَلَ | يَدْخُلُ | دَخَلَ |
| To remember       | ذَكَرَ | يَذْكُرُ | ذَكَرَ |
| To provide        | رَزَقَ | يَرْزُقُ | رَزَقَ |
| To prostrate      | سَجَدَ | يَسْجُدُ | سَجَدَ |
| To perceive       | شَعَرَ | يَشْعُرُ | شَعَرَ |
| To be grateful    | شَكَرَ | يَشْكُرُ | شَكَرَ |
| To be true/honest | صَدَقَ | يَصْدُقُ | صَدَقَ |
| To worship        | عَبَدَ | يَعْبُدُ | عَبَدَ |
| To be corrupt     | فَسَقَ | يَفْسُقُ | فَسَقَ |
| To kill           | قَتَلَ | يَقْتُلُ | قَتَلَ |
| To sit            | قَعَدَ | يَقْعُدُ | قَعَدَ |
| To write          | كَتَبَ | يَكْتُبُ | كَتَبَ |
| To disbelieve     | كَفَرَ | يَكْفُرُ | كَفَرَ |

|                  |           |          |        |
|------------------|-----------|----------|--------|
| To be ungrateful |           |          |        |
| To plan          | نَظَرَ    | يَنْظُرُ | نَظَرَ |
| To study         | دِرَاسَةً | يَدْرُسُ | دَرَسَ |
| To settle        | سَكَنًا   | يَسْكُنُ | سَكَنَ |
| To attend        | حُضُورًا  | يَحْضُرُ | حَضَرَ |
| To request       | طَلَبًا   | يَطْلُبُ | طَلَبَ |
| To fall          | سُقُوطًا  | يَسْقُطُ | سَقَطَ |
| To claim         | زَعَمًا   | يَزْعُمُ | زَعَمَ |
| To include       | شُمُولًا  | يَشْمُلُ | شَمَلَ |
| To plan          | مَكْرًا   | يَمْكُرُ | مَكَرَ |

## فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ - Sub Family 2

For memorization the **ل ع ل** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                     | N/A                          | يَفْعِلُ                   | فَعَلَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَلٌ                                    | مَفْعَلٌ                     | لا تَفْعِلْ                | اَفْعِلْ                |
| مِفْعَالٌ                                   | مَفْعِلٌ                     |                            |                         |
| مِفْعَلَةٌ                                  | مَفْعَلَةٌ                   |                            |                         |

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

| Meaning          | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To hit           | ضَرْبٌ     | يَضْرِبُ      | ضَرَبَ     |
| To carry         | حَمْلٌ     | يَحْمِلُ      | حَمَلَ     |
| To be patient    | صَبْرٌ     | يَصْبِرُ      | صَبَرَ     |
| To wrong/oppress | ظُلْمٌ     | يَظْلِمُ      | ظَلَمَ     |
| To recognize     | مَعْرِفَةٌ | يَعْرِفُ      | عَرَفَ     |
| To understand    | عَقْلٌ     | يَعْقِلُ      | عَقَلَ     |
| To forgive       | مَغْفِرَةٌ | يَغْفِرُ      | غَفَرَ     |
| To decree        | قَدْرٌ     | يَقْدِرُ      | قَدَرَ     |
| To lie           | كَذِبٌ     | يَكْذِبُ      | كَذَبَ     |
| To earn          | كَسَبٌ     | يَكْسِبُ      | كَسَبَ     |

|                    |          |          |        |
|--------------------|----------|----------|--------|
| To possess         | مَلَكَ   | يَمْلِكُ | مَلَكَ |
| To return          | رَجُوعًا | يَرْجِعُ | رَجَعَ |
| To sit             | جُلُوسًا | يَجْلِسُ | جَلَسَ |
| To descend         | نُزُولًا | يَنْزِلُ | نَزَلَ |
| To tie             | رَبَطًا  | يَرْبِطُ | رَبَطَ |
| To defeat/overcome | غَلَبًا  | يَغْلِبُ | غَلَبَ |



## فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 3

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Isim Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                             | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|--|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                      | N/A                                | يَفْعَلُ                   | فَعَلَ                  |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                    | N/A                                | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ<br>مِفْعَلَةٌ          | مَفْعَلٌ<br>مَفْعِلٌ<br>مَفْعَلَةٌ | لا تَفْعَلُ                | إِفْعَلْ                |

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

| Meaning              | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|----------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To open/give victory | فَتْحٌ     | يَفْتَحُ      | فَتَحَ     |
| To dispatch/raise    | بَعَثٌ     | يَبْعَثُ      | بَعَثَ     |
| To make/place        | جَعَلَ     | يَجْعَلُ      | جَعَلَ     |
| To gather            | جَمَعَ     | يَجْمَعُ      | جَمَعَ     |
| To go                | ذَهَابٌ    | يَذْهَبُ      | ذَهَبَ     |
| To raise             | رَفَعَ     | يَرْفَعُ      | رَفَعَ     |
| To bewitch           | سَحَرَ     | يَسْحَرُ      | سَحَرَ     |
| To act righteously   | مَصْلَحَةٌ | يَصْلَحُ      | صَلَحَ     |
| To curse             | لَعَنَ     | يَلْعَنُ      | لَعَنَ     |
| To benefit           | نَفَعَ     | يَنْفَعُ      | نَفَعَ     |

|                 |           |          |        |
|-----------------|-----------|----------|--------|
| To advise       | نَصِيحَةً | يُنْصَحُ | نَصَحَ |
| To prevent      | مَنْعًا   | يَمْنَعُ | مَنَعَ |
| To cut          | قَطْعًا   | يَقْطَعُ | قَطَعَ |
| To be humble    | خُشُوعًا  | يَخْشَعُ | خَشَعَ |
| To become clear | ظُهُورًا  | يَظْهَرُ | ظَهَرَ |

## فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Isim Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                             | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|--|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                      | N/A                                | يَفْعَلُ                   | فَعِلَ                  |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                    | N/A                                | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ<br>مِفْعَلَةٌ          | مَفْعَلٌ<br>مَفْعِلٌ<br>مَفْعَلَةٌ | لا تَفْعَلُ                | إِفْعَلْ                |

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

| Meaning               | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-----------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To listen             | سَمَاعَةٌ | يَسْمَعُ      | سَمِعَ     |
| To grief              | حُزْنٌ    | يَحْزَنُ      | حَزِنَ     |
| To consider           | حَسَبٌ    | يَحْسَبُ      | حَسِبَ     |
| To guard/memorize     | حِفْظٌ    | يَحْفَظُ      | حَفِظَ     |
| To lose               | خُسْرٌ    | يَخْسَرُ      | خَسِرَ     |
| To have mercy         | رَحْمَةٌ  | يَرْحَمُ      | رَحِمَ     |
| To witness/be present | شُهُودٌ   | يَشْهَدُ      | شَهِدَ     |
| To know               | عِلْمٌ    | يَعْلَمُ      | عَلِمَ     |
| To do/work            | عَمَلٌ    | يَعْمَلُ      | عَمِلَ     |
| To dislike            | كُرْهٌ    | يَكْرَهُ      | كَرِهَ     |

|               |        |          |         |
|---------------|--------|----------|---------|
| To drink      | شَرِبَ | يَشْرَبُ | شُرِبَا |
| To be angry   | غَضِبَ | يَغْضَبُ | غَضِبَا |
| To wear       | لَبَسَ | يَلْبَسُ | لَبَسَا |
| To be happy   | فَرِحَ | يَفْرَحُ | فَرَحَا |
| To be thirsty | عَطِشَ | يَعْطِشُ | عَطِشَا |
| To remain     | لَبِثَ | يَلْبِثُ | لَبِثَا |
| To understand | فَقِهَ | يَفْقَهُ | فَقِهَا |
| To be sick    | مَرَضَ | يَمْرَضُ | مَرَضَا |
| To scorn      | سَخِرَ | يَسْخَرُ | سَخِرَا |

## فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ - Sub Family 5

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                     | N/A                          | يَفْعِلُ                   | فَعِلَ                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَفْعُولٌ                                   | N/A                          | يُفْعَلُ                   | فُعِلَ                  |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ                       | مَفْعَلٌ<br>مَفْعِلٌ         | لا تَفْعِلُ                | اِفْعِلْ                |

|            |            |  |  |
|------------|------------|--|--|
| مِفْعَلَةٌ | مَفْعَلَةٌ |  |  |
|------------|------------|--|--|

| Meaning        | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|----------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To consider    | حِسْبَانٌ  | يَحْسِبُ      | حَسِبَ     |
| To gain spoils | غَنِيْمَةٌ | يَغْنِمُ      | غَنِمَ     |
| To rush        | عَجَلٌ     | يَعْجِلُ      | عَجَلَ     |



## فَعْلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 6

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

| Isim Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                             | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|--|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| فَاعِلٌ                                      | N/A                                | يَفْعُلُ                   | فَعَّلَ                 |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A  | N/A                                | N/A                        | N/A                     |
| Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِفْعَلٌ<br>مِفْعَالٌ<br>مِفْعَلَةٌ          | مَفْعَلٌ<br>مَفْعِلٌ<br>مَفْعَلَةٌ | لَا تَفْعُلْ               | أَفْعُلْ                |

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

| Meaning           | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To be noble       | كَرَمَةٌ  | يَكْرُمُ      | كَرَّمَ    |
| To be heavy       | ثِقَلٌ    | يَثْقُلُ      | ثَقُلَ     |
| To be weak        | ضَعْفًا   | يَضْعُفُ      | ضَعُفَ     |
| To gain insight   | بَصِيرَةً | يَبْصُرُ      | بَصَرَ     |
| To become big/old | كِبْرًا   | يَكْبُرُ      | كَبُرَ     |

## Small Families – Irregular Verbs

### مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Example of Sub Family 1 - ء ك ل Using فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is Hamza ء

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar  | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ءَاكِلٌ                         | أَكَلًا | يَأْكُلُ                   | أَكَلَ                  |
| The one who is eating           | To eat  | He is eating               | He ate                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar  | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|   |                                    |                       |                 |
|---|------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| مَأْكُولٌ                                   | أَكَلًا                            | يَأْكُلُ              | أُكِلَ          |
| The thing that is eaten                     | To eat                             | It is being ate       | It was eaten    |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form       | Command Form    |
| مِنْكَلٌ<br>مِنْكَالٌ<br>مِنْكَالَةٌ        | مَأْكَلٌ<br>مَأْكِلٌ<br>مَأْكَلَةٌ | لَا تَأْكُلْ          | كُلْ            |
| Tool for eating                             | Time and Place of eating           | You (Male) don't eat! | You (Male) eat! |

Example of Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using س ء ل

2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is Hamza ء

|                   |        |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|

|   |                                    |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                                    |                            |                         |
| سَائِلٌ                                     | سُؤْلًا                            | يُسْأَلُ                   | سَأَلَ                  |
| The one who is asking                       | To ask                             | He is asking               | He asked                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                             | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَسْئُولٌ                                   | سُؤْلًا                            | يُسْأَلُ                   | سُئِلَ                  |
| The one that is asked                       | To ask                             | He is being asked          | He was asked            |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِسْأَلٌ<br>مِسْأَالٌ<br>مِسْأَلَةٌ         | مَسْأَلٌ<br>مَسْئِلٌ<br>مَسْأَلَةٌ | لا تَسْأَلْ                | سَلْ                    |

|                 |                          |                       |                 |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| Tool for asking | Time and Place of asking | You (Male) don't ask! | You (Male) ask! |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|

| Meaning    | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To read    | كِرَاءَةٌ | يَكْرَأُ      | كَرَأَ     |
| To take    | أَخَذَ    | يَأْخُذُ      | أَخَذَ     |
| To command | أَمَرَ    | يَأْمُرُ      | أَمَرَ     |
| To be safe | أَمِنَ    | يَأْمِنُ      | أَمِنَ     |
| To regret  | أَسَفًا   | يَأْسِفُ      | أَسِفَ     |
| To refuse  | إِبَاءً   | يَأْبَى       | أَبَى      |
| To see     | رَأَى     | يَرَى         | رَأَى      |
| To come    | إِتْيَانً | يَأْتِي       | أَتَى      |
| To will    | مَشِيئَةً | يَشَاءُ       | شَاءَ      |

|            |         |         |       |
|------------|---------|---------|-------|
| To be evil | سَوَّءَ | يَسُوءُ | سَاءَ |
| To come    | مَجِيءَ | يَجِيءُ | جَاءَ |

## مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Example using Sub Family 2: **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ** Using **و ز ر**

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is **و**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar              | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| وَازِرٌ                         | وِزْرًا<br>وِزْرَةً | يَزِرُ                     | وَزَرَ                  |
| The one who is carrying         | To carry            | He is carrying             | He carried              |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar              | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَوْزُورٌ                       | وِزْرًا             | يُوزَرُ                    | وُزِرَ                  |



|   |                                    |                         |                   |
|---|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
|   | وَزَرَةٌ                           |                         |                   |
| The thing that is carried                   | To carry                           | It is being carried     | It was carried    |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)       | Forbidding Form         | Command Form      |
| مِيزَرٌ<br>مِيزَارٌ<br>مِيزَرَةٌ            | مَوْزَرٌ<br>مَوْزِرٌ<br>مَوْزَرَةٌ | لا تَزِرْ               | زِرْ              |
| Tool for carrying                           | Time and Place of carrying         | You (Male) don't carry! | You (Male) carry! |

Example using Sub Family 4: فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ي ء س

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is ي

|                   |        |               |                 |
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|---------------|-----------------|

|   |                                     |                            |                         |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                                     | Fi'l                       |                         |
| يَائِسٌ                                     | يَأْسًا                             | يَيَاسُ                    | يَيْسَ                  |
| The one who is despairing                   | To despair                          | He is despairing           | He despaired            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                              | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَيُّوْسٌ                                   | يَأْسًا                             | يُؤَسُّ                    | يُيْسَ                  |
| The thing that is despaired                 | To despair                          | It is being despaired      | It was despaired of     |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)        | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِيَّاسٌ<br>مِيَّاسٌ<br>مِيَّاسَةٌ          | مَيَّاسٌ<br>مَيَّيْسٌ<br>مَيَّاسَةٌ | لا تَيَّاسُ                | إِيَّاسُ                |

|                     |                              |                           |                     |
|---------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
|                     |                              |                           |                     |
| Tool for despairing | Time and Place of despairing | You (Male) don't despair! | You (Male) despair! |

| Meaning           | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To leave behind   | وَذَّرَ   | يَذُرُ        | وَذَرَ     |
| To place/put down | وَضَعَ    | يَضَعُ        | وَضَعَ     |
| To befall/happen  | وَقُوعٌ   | يَقَعُ        | وَقَعَ     |
| To bestow         | وَهَبَ    | يَهَبُ        | وَهَبَ     |
| To find           | وَجُودٌ   | يَجِدُ        | وَجَدَ     |
| To inherit        | وَرَاثَةٌ | يَرِثُ        | وَرِثَ     |
| To describe       | وَصَفَ    | يَصِفُ        | وَصَفَ     |
| To promise        | وَعَدَ    | يَعِدُ        | وَعَدَ     |
| To protect        | وَقَايَةٌ | يَقِيْ        | وَقَى      |

|                               |           |          |          |
|-------------------------------|-----------|----------|----------|
| To be spacious                | سَعَةً    | يَسْعُ   | وَسِعَ   |
| To weigh                      | وَزَنًا   | يَزِنُ   | وَزَنَ   |
| To be scared                  | وَجَلًا   | يَوْجَلُ | وَجَلَ   |
| To despair                    | يَيْئَسًا | يَيْئَسُ | يَيْئَسَ |
| To stand                      | وُقُوفًا  | يَقِفُ   | وَقَفَ   |
| To carry a load               | وِزْرًا   | يَزِرُ   | وَزَرَ   |
| To be mandatory               | وُجُوبًا  | يَجِبُ   | وَجَبَ   |
| To reach/connect<br>To obtain | وُصُولًا  | يَصِلُ   | وَصَلَ   |
| To ignore/dismiss             | وَدْعًا   | يَدَعُ   | وَدَعَ   |

## أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Example using Sub Family 1: ذوق **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** Using

2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is **و**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ذَائِقٌ                         | ذُوقًا   | يَذُوقُ                    | ذَاقَ                   |
| The one who is tasting          | To taste | He is tasting              | He tasted               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَذُوقٌ                         | ذُوقًا   | يُذَاقُ                    | ذِيقَ                   |

|   |                              |                         |                   |
|---|------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
|   |                              |                         |                   |
| The thing that is tasted                    | To taste                     | It is being tasting     | It was tasted     |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form         | Command Form      |
| مِذْوَاقٌ                                   | مَذَاقٌ<br>مَذَاقَةٌ         | لَا تَذُقْ              | ذُقْ              |
| Tool for tasting                            | Time and Place of tasting    | You (Male) don't taste! | You (Male) taste! |

Example using Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ - Using ب ي ع

2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar  | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|-----------------|
| بَائِعٌ           | بَيْعًا | يَبِيعُ            | بَاعَ           |

|   |                              |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|   |                              |                            |                         |
| The one who is selling                      | To sell                      | He is selling              | He sold                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَبِيعٌ                                     | بَيْعًا                      | يُبَاعُ                    | بِيعَ                   |
| The thing that is sold                      | To sell                      | It is being sold           | It was sold             |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مَبِيعٌ                                     | مَبِيعٌ<br>مَبَاعَةٌ         | لَا تَبِعْ                 | بِعْ                    |
| Tool for selling                            | Time and Place of selling    | You (Male) don't sell!     | You (Male) sell!        |

Example using Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Using ن ي ل

2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| نَائِلٌ                                     | نَيْلًا                      | يَنَالُ                    | نَالَ                   |
| The one who is obtaining                    | To obtain                    | He is obtaining            | He obtained             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَنِيلٌ                                     | نَيْلًا                      | يُنَالُ                    | نِيلَ                   |
| The thing that is obtained                  | To obtain                    | It is being obtained       | It was obtained         |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِنْ نَيْلٍ                                 | مَنِيلٌ<br>مَنَالَةٌ         | لَا تَنْلَ                 | نَلْ                    |



|                    |                             |                          |                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
|                    |                             |                          |                    |
| Tool for obtaining | Time and Place of obtaining | You (Male) don't obtain! | You (Male) obtain! |

| Meaning          | Masdar   | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------------|----------|---------------|------------|
| To repent        | تَوْبَةً | يَتُوبُ       | تَابَ      |
| To succeed       | فَوْزٌ   | يَفُوزُ       | فَارَ      |
| To say           | قَوْلٌ   | يَقُولُ       | قَالَ      |
| To stand up      | قِيَامٌ  | يَقُومُ       | قَامَ      |
| To be            | كَوْنٌ   | يَكُونُ       | كَانَ      |
| To die           | مَوْتٌ   | يَمُوتُ       | مَاتَ      |
| To fear          | خَوْفٌ   | يَخَافُ       | خَافَ      |
| To almost happen | كَوْدٌ   | يَكَادُ       | كَادَ      |
| To plot          | كَيْدٌ   | يَكِيدُ       | كَادَ      |

|                    |       |         |           |
|--------------------|-------|---------|-----------|
| To increase        | زَادَ | يَزِيدُ | زِيَادَةٌ |
| To sleep           | نَامَ | يَنَامُ | نَوْمًا   |
| To come            | جَاءَ | يَجِيءُ | مَجِيءٌ   |
| To will            | شَاءَ | يَشَاءُ | مَشِيئَةً |
| To feel constraint | ضَاقَ | يَضِيقُ | ضَيْقًا   |
| To blame           | لَامَ | يَلُومُ | لَوْمًا   |
| To return          | عَادَ | يَعُودُ | مَعَادًا  |

## ناقصٌ - Naqisun

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Example using Sub Family 1: **تَلَوْ** Using **و** **ل** **ت** **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ**

3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is **و**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar    | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| تَالٍ                           | تِلَاوَةٌ | يَتْلُو                    | تَلَا                   |
| The one who is reciting         | To recite | He is reciting             | He recited/followed     |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar    | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَتْلُوءٌ                       | تِلَاوَةٌ | يُتْلَى                    | تُلِيَ                  |

|   |                              |                          |                    |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
|   |                              |                          |                    |
| The thing that is recited                   | To recite                    | It is being recited      | It was recited     |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form          | Command Form       |
| مِثْلَةٌ                                    | مَثَلِي                      | لَا تَتْلُ               | أَتْلُ             |
| Tool for reciting                           | Time and Place of reciting   | You (Male) don't recite! | You (Male) recite! |

Example using Sub Family 2: رَمَى فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ Using ر م ي

3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|----------|--------------------|-----------------|
| رَامٍ             | رَمْيَةً | يَرْمِي            | رَمَى           |

|   |                              |                            |                         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| The one who is throwing                     | To throw                     | He is throwing             | He threw                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَرْمِيٌّ                                   | رَمْيَةً                     | يُرْمَى                    | رُمِيَ                  |
| The thing that is thrown                    | To throw                     | It is being thrown         | It was thrown           |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِرْمَاةٌ                                   | مَرْمًى                      | لَا تَرْمِ                 | ارْمِ                   |
| Tool for throwing                           | Time and Place of throwing   | You (Male) don't throw!    | You (Male) throw!       |

Example using Sub Family 3: ط غ ي Using فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                          | Present Tense Fi'l           | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| طَاغٍ                                       | طُغْيَانًا                      | يُطْغِي                      | طَغَى                   |
| The one who is transgressing                | To transgress                   | He is transgressing          | He transgressed         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l   | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَطْغِيٌّ                                   | طُغْيَانًا                      | يُطْغَى                      | طُغِيَ                  |
| The thing that is transgressed              | To transgress                   | It is being transgressed     | It was transgressed     |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form              | Command Form            |
| مِطْغَاةٌ                                   | مَطْغًى                         | لَا تَطْغَ                   | إِطْغَ                  |
| Tool for transgressing                      | Time and Place of transgressing | You (Male) don't transgress! | You (Male) transgress!  |

Example using Sub Family 4: **ب ق ي** Using **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ**

3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                | Masdar               | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>بَاقٍ</b>                     | <b>بَقَاءٌ</b>       | <b>يَبْقَى</b>             | <b>بَقِيَ</b>           |
| The one who is remaining         | To remain            | He is remaining            | He remained             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)  | Masdar               | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| <b>مَبْقِيٌّ</b>                 | <b>بَقَاءٌ</b>       | <b>يُبْقَى</b>             | <b>بُقِيَ</b>           |
| The thing that is made to remain | To remain            | It is being made to remain | It was made to remain   |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the   | Zharf (Place/Time of | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |

| Action with)       | Action)                     |                          |                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| مَبَقَاةٌ          | مَبَقَى                     | لَا تَبَقْ               | إِبَقْ             |
| Tool for remaining | Time and Place of remaining | You (Male) don't remain! | You (Male) remain! |

| Meaning                  | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To supplicate            | دُعَاءٌ   | يَدْعُو       | دَعَا      |
| To overlook              | عَفْوٌ    | يَعْفُو       | عَفَا      |
| To want/seek             | بَغْيٌ    | يَبْغِي       | بَغَى      |
| To run/flow              | جَرَيَانٌ | يَجْرِي       | جَرَى      |
| To reward                | جَزَاءٌ   | يَجْزِي       | جَزَى      |
| To judge/decreed/fulfill | قَضَاءٌ   | يَقْضِي       | قَضَى      |
| To suffice               | كِفَايَةٌ | يَكْفِي       | كَفَا      |



|               |            |         |        |
|---------------|------------|---------|--------|
| To guide      | هُدًى      | يَهْدِي | هَدَى  |
| To fearful    | خَشِيَّةٌ  | يَخْشَى | خَشِيَ |
| To be pleased | رِضْوَانٌ  | يَرْضَى | رَضِيَ |
| To forget     | نِسْيَانٌ  | يُنْسَى | نَسِيَ |
| To see        | رَأْيٌ     | يَرَى   | رَأَى  |
| To transgress | طُغْيَانًا | يَطْغَى | طَغَى  |
| To disobey    | عِصْيَانًا | يَعْصِي | عَصَى  |
| To elapse     | مُضِيًّا   | يَمْضِي | مَضَى  |
| To remain     | بَقَاءٌ    | يَبْقَى | بَقِيَ |
| To be saved   | نَجَاةٌ    | يَنْجُو | نَجَا  |
| To recite     | تِلَاوَةٌ  | يَتْلُو | تَلَا  |
| To follow     |            |         |        |
| To refuse     | إِبَاءٌ    | يَأْبَى | أَبَى  |

|                |            |         |        |
|----------------|------------|---------|--------|
| To throw       | رَمَيْتَ   | يَرْمِي | رَمَى  |
| To walk        | مَشَيْتَ   | يَمْشِي | مَشَى  |
| To complain    | شَكَوْتَ   | يَشْكُو | شَكَا  |
| To cry         | بُكَاءً    | يَبْكِي | بَكَى  |
| To meet        | لِقَاءً    | يَلْقَى | لَقِيَ |
| To pass before | خَلَاءً    | يَخْلُو | خَلَا  |
| To give drink  | سَكَايَةً  | يَسْكِي | سَكَى  |
| To be hidden   | خَفِيَةً   | يَخْفَى | خَفِيَ |
| To come        | إِثْيَانًا | يَأْتِي | أَتَى  |
| To build       | بِنَاءً    | يَبْنِي | بَنَى  |
| To transgress  | عَدَاوَةً  | يَعْدُو | عَدَا  |

## لَفَيْفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

Example using Sub Family 2: فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ Using و ل ي

1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is و

3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| وَالٍ                           | وَلَايَةٌ   | يَلِي                      | وَلَّى                  |
| The one who is befriending      | To befriend | He is befriending          | He befriended           |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَوْلِيٌّ                       | وَلَايَةٌ   | يُؤَلَّى                   | وُلِيَ                  |

|   |                               |                            |                      |
|---|-------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
|   |                               |                            |                      |
| The one who is befriended                   | To befriend                   | He is being befriended     | He was befriended    |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)  | Forbidding Form            | Command Form         |
| مِيلَاةٌ                                    | مَوْلى                        | لَا تَلِ                   | لِ                   |
| Tool for befriending                        | Time and Place of befriending | You (Male) don't befriend! | You (Male) befriend! |

| Meaning                        | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To become weak                 | وُنْيَا   | يَنْي         | وَنَى      |
| To protect                     | وِقَايَةٌ | يَقِي         | وَقَى      |
| To befriend<br>To be in charge | وَلَايَةٌ | يَلِي         | وَلَى      |

## لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

Example using Sub Family 2: ك و ي Using فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is و

3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar  | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| كَوٍ                            | كَوًى   | يَكْوِي                    | كَوَى                   |
| The one who is ironing          | To iron | He is ironing              | He ironed               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar  | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|   |                              |                        |                  |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| مَكْوِيٌّ                                   | كَيَّا                       | يُكْوَى                | كُوِيَ           |
| The thing which is ironed                   | To iron                      | It is being ironed     | It was ironed    |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form        | Command Form     |
| مِكْوَاةٌ                                   | مَكْوًى                      | لَا تَكْوِ             | اِكْوِ           |
| Tool for ironing                            | Time and Place of ironing    | You (Male) don't iron! | You (Male) iron! |

Example using Sub Family 4: فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ع ي ي

2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي

3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is ي

|                   |        |                    |                 |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|

|   |                                      |                                   |                             |
|---|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| عَيَّ                                       | عَيَّا                               | يُعَيِّ                           | عَيَّ<br>عَيَّ              |
| The one who is incapable of                 | To be incapable of                   | He is incapable of                | He was incapable of         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                               | Passive Present Tense Fi'l        | Passive Past Tense Fi'l     |
| مَعْيُ                                      | عَيَّا                               | يُعَيِّ                           | عُيِّ                       |
| The one who is made incapable of            | To be incapable of                   | He is being made incapable of     | He was made incapable of    |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)         | Forbidding Form                   | Command Form                |
| مِعْيَاةٌ                                   | مَعْيًى                              | لَا تَعْيُ                        | إُعْيُ                      |
| Tool for being incapable of                 | Time and Place of being incapable of | You (Male) don't be incapable of! | You (Male) be incapable of! |

| Meaning        | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense    |
|----------------|-----------|---------------|---------------|
| To narrate     | رَوَايَةً | يَرْوِي       | رَوَى         |
| To live        | حَيَاةً   | يَحْيِي       | حَيَّ / حَيَّ |
| To fold        | طَيًّا    | يَطْوِي       | طَوَى         |
| To roast       | شَيًّا    | يَشْوِي       | شَوَى         |
| To take refuge | أَوِيًّا  | يَأْوِي       | أَوَى         |



## مُضَاعَفٌ - Moodaarefun

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

Example using Sub Family 1: فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using ظ ن ن

2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar    | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ظَانٌّ                          | ظَنًّا    | يُظَنُّ                    | ظَنَّ                   |
| The one who is assuming         | To assume | He is assuming             | He assumed              |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar    | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَظْنُونٌ                       | ظَنًّا    | يُظَنُّ                    | ظُنَّ                   |
| The thing that is               | To assume | It is being                | It was assumed          |

|   |                              |                          |                    |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| being assumed                               |                              | assumed                  |                    |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form          | Command Form       |
| مِظَنُّ                                     | مَظَنُّ                      | لَا تَظُنَّ              | ظُنَّ              |
| مِظَنَانُ                                   | مَظِنُّ                      | لَا تَظُنَّ              | ظُنَّ              |
| مِظَنَّةُ                                   | مَظَنَّةُ                    | لَا تَظُنُّ              | أَظُنُّ            |
| Tool for assuming                           | Time and Place of assuming   | You (Male) don't assume! | You (Male) assume! |

Example using Sub Family 2: ف ر ر Using فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

|                   |          |                    |                 |
|-------------------|----------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
| فَارٌّ            | فِرَارًا | يَفِرُّ            | فَرَّ           |

|   |                                 |   |                            |
|---|---------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
|   |                                 |   |                            |
| The one who is fleeing                      | To flee                         | He is fleeing                             | He fled                    |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                | Passive Past Tense Fi'l    |
| مَفْرُورٌ                                   | فِرَارًا                        | يُفَرُّ                                   | فُرِّ                      |
| The thing that is fled from                 | To flee                         | It is being fled from                     | It was fled from           |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form                           | Command Form               |
| مَقَرٌّ<br>مِفْرَارٌ<br>مِقْرَةٌ            | مَقَرٌّ<br>مَفِرٌّ<br>مَقَرَّةٌ | لَا تَفِرُّ<br>لَا تَفِرُّ<br>لَا تَفِرُّ | فِرِّ<br>فِرِّ<br>اِفْرِزْ |
| Tool for fleeing                            | Time and Place of fleeing       | You (Male) don't flee!                    | You (Male) flee!           |

Example using Sub Family 3: **فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ** Using **م س س**

2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                           | Masdar                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مَاسٌّ                                      | مَسًّا                       | يَمَسُّ                    | مَسَّ                   |
| The one who is touching                     | To touch                     | He is touching             | He touched              |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)             | Masdar                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مَمْسُوسٌ                                   | مَسًّا                       | يُمَسُّ                    | مُسَّ                   |
| The one who is touched                      | To touch                     | He is being touched        | He was touched          |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مِمَّسٍّ                                    | مَمَّسٍّ                     | لَا تَمَسَّ                | مَسَّ                   |

|                           |                            |                              |                     |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|
| مِمَّسَّاسٌ<br>مِمَّسَّةٌ | مَمِسٌّ<br>مَمَسَّةٌ       | لَا تَمَسُّ<br>لَا تَمَسِّنُ | مَسٌّ<br>إِمَّسِّنُ |
| Tool for touching         | Time and Place of touching | You (Male) don't touch!      | You (Male) touch!   |

Example using Sub Family 4: ظ ل ل Using فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ

2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar    | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ظَالٌّ                          | ظُلُوءًا  | يَظَلُّ                    | ظَلَّ                   |
| The one who is remaining        | To remain | He is remaining            | He remained             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar    | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|   |                              |  |                            |
|---|------------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| مَظْلُوءٌ                                   | ظَلُّوا                      | يُظَلُّ                                  | ظَلَّ                      |
| The one who is made to remain               | To remain                    | He is being made to remain               | He was made to remain      |
| Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with) | Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form                          | Command Form               |
| مِظْلٌ<br>مِظْلَالٌ<br>مِظْلَةٌ             | مَظْلٌ<br>مَظِلٌ<br>مَظْلَةٌ | لا تَظَلَّ<br>لا تَظَلَّ<br>لا تَظَلَّلْ | ظَلَّ<br>ظَلَّ<br>إِظْلَلْ |
| Tool for remaining                          | Time and Place of remaining  | You (Male) don't remain!                 | You (Male) remain!         |

| Meaning             | Masdar  | Present Tense | Past Tense    |
|---------------------|---------|---------------|---------------|
| To live             | حَيَاةً | يَحْيِي       | حَيَّ / حَيَّ |
| To return/give back | رَدَّ   | يُرَدُّ       | رَدَّ         |

|                      |         |         |       |
|----------------------|---------|---------|-------|
| To block/hinder      | صَدَّ   | يَصُدُّ | صَدَّ |
| To harm              | ضَرَّ   | يَضُرُّ | ضَرَّ |
| To go astray         | ضَلَّ   | يَضِلُّ | ضَلَّ |
| To count             | عَدَّ   | يَعُدُّ | عَدَّ |
| To deceive           | غُرِّرَ | يَغِرُّ | غَرَّ |
| To extend/spread out | مَدَّ   | يَمُدُّ | مَدَّ |
| To doubt             | شَكَّ   | يَشْكُ  | شَكَّ |
| To touch             | مَسَّ   | يَمَسُّ | مَسَّ |
| To settle            | قَرَّ   | يَقِرُّ | قَرَّ |
| To spread            | بَثَّ   | يَبِثُّ | بَثَّ |
| To pass              | مَرَّ   | يَمُرُّ | مَرَّ |
| To flee              | فَرَّ   | يَفِرُّ | فَرَّ |
| To assume            | ظَنَّ   | يَظُنُّ | ظَنَّ |
| To wish              | وَدَّ   | يَوَدُّ | وَدَّ |

## Big Families – Regular Verbs

### Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

For memorization the ل ف ع Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَعِّلٌ                       | تَفْعِيلًا | يُفَعِّلُ                  | فَعَّلَ                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَعَّلٌ                       | تَفْعِيلًا | يُفَعَّلُ                  | فُعِّلَ                 |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفَعِّلٌ                       |            | لَا تُفَعِّلُ              | فَعِّلْ                 |



|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|

| Meaning                         | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------------------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To change                       | تَبْدِيلٌ | يُبَدِّلُ     | بَدَّلَ    |
| To give good news               | تَبَشِيرٌ | يُبَشِّرُ     | بَشَّرَ    |
| To glorify                      | تَسْبِيحٌ | يُسَبِّحُ     | سَبَّحَ    |
| To bring under control          | تَسْخِيرٌ | يُسَخِّرُ     | سَخَّرَ    |
| To confirm something to be true | تَصْدِيقٌ | يُصَدِّقُ     | صَدَّقَ    |
| To punish                       | تَعْذِيبٌ | يُعَذِّبُ     | عَذَّبَ    |
| To teach                        | تَعْلِيمٌ | يُعَلِّمُ     | عَلَّمَ    |
| To send forward                 | تَقْدِيمٌ | يُقَدِّمُ     | قَدَّمَ    |
| To deny something               | تَكْذِيبٌ | يُكَذِّبُ     | كَذَّبَ    |
| To send down                    | تَنْزِيلٌ | يُنْزِلُ      | نَزَّلَ    |

|             |            |           |         |
|-------------|------------|-----------|---------|
| To remind   | تَذْكِرًا  | يُذَكِّرُ | ذَكَرَ  |
| To speak    | تَكْلِيمًا | يُكَلِّمُ | كَلَّمَ |
| To burn     | تَحْرِيقًا | يُحَرِّقُ | حَرَّقَ |
| To separate | تَفْرِيقًا | يُفَرِّقُ | فَرَّقَ |
| To prefer   | تَفْضِيلًا | يُفَضِّلُ | فَضَّلَ |

### فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ - Family 3

For memorization the **ل ف ع** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                  | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَاعِلٌ                       | فِعَالًا<br>مُفَاعَلَةً | يُفَاعِلُ                  | فَاعَلَ                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                  | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَاعَلٌ                       | فِعَالًا<br>مُفَاعَلَةً | يُفَاعَلُ                  | فُوعِلَ                 |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                         | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفَاعَلٌ                       |                         | لَا تُفَاعِلُ              | فَاعِلْ                 |

| Meaning                  | Masdar                  | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|------------|
| To strive                | جِهَادًا<br>مُجَاهَدَةً | يُجَاهِدُ     | جَاهَدَ    |
| To fight                 | قِتَالًا<br>مُقَاتَلَةً | يُقَاتِلُ     | قَاتَلَ    |
| To behave hypocritically | نِفَاقًا<br>مُنَافَقَةً | يُنَافِقُ     | نَافَقَ    |
| To migrate               | هِجَارًا<br>مُهَاجَرَةً | يُهَاجِرُ     | هَاجَرَ    |
| To argue                 | جِدَالًا<br>مُجَادَلَةً | يُجَادِلُ     | جَادَلَ    |
| To punish                | عِقَابًا<br>مُعَاقِبَةً | يُعَاقِبُ     | عَاقَبَ    |

|                  |                         |           |         |
|------------------|-------------------------|-----------|---------|
| To take a pledge | عِهَادًا<br>مُعَاهَدَةً | يُعَاهِدُ | عَاهَدَ |
| To take account  | حِسَابًا<br>مُحَاسَبَةً | يُحَاسِبُ | حَاسَبَ |

## أَفْعَلْ يُفْعِلُ - Family 4

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Isim Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْعِلٌ                         | إِفْعَالًا      | يُفْعِلُ                   | أَفْعَلَّ               |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْعَلٌ                         | إِفْعَالًا      | يُفْعَلُ                   | أُفْعِلَ                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)     | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُفْعَلٌ                         | لا تُفْعِلْ     |                            | أَفْعِلْ                |

| Meaning             | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To see              | إِبْصَارًا | يُبْصِرُ      | أَبْصَرَ   |
| To do good          | إِحْسَانًا | يُحْسِنُ      | أَحْسَنَ   |
| To expel/bring out  | إِخْرَاجًا | يُخْرِجُ      | أَخْرَجَ   |
| To make enter       | إِدْخَالًا | يُدْخِلُ      | أَدْخَلَ   |
| To send back        | إِرْجَاعًا | يُرْجِعُ      | أَرْجَعَ   |
| To send/dispatch    | إِرْسَالًا | يُرْسِلُ      | أَرْسَلَ   |
| To exceed           | إِسْرَافًا | يُسْرِفُ      | أَسْرَفَ   |
| To submit           | إِسْلَامًا | يُسْلِمُ      | أَسْلَمَ   |
| To exceed           | إِسْرَافًا | يُسْرِفُ      | أَسْرَفَ   |
| To associate        | إِشْرَاكًا | يُشْرِكُ      | أَشْرَكَ   |
| To become           | إِصْبَاحًا | يُصْبِحُ      | أَصْبَحَ   |
| To ignore/turn away | إِعْرَاضًا | يُعْرِضُ      | أَعْرَضَ   |
| To drown            | إِغْرَاقًا | يُغْرِقُ      | أَغْرَقَ   |

|                       |            |          |          |
|-----------------------|------------|----------|----------|
| To spread corruption  | إِفْسَادًا | يُفْسِدُ | أَفْسَدَ |
| To succeed            | إِفْلَاحًا | يُفْلِحُ | أَفْلَحَ |
| To make grow          | إِنْبَاتًا | يُنْبِتُ | أَنْبَتَ |
| To warn               | إِنذَارًا  | يُنذِرُ  | أَنذَرَ  |
| To send down          | إِنزَالًا  | يُنْزِلُ | أَنْزَلَ |
| To produce            | إِنشَاءً   | يُنشِئُ  | أَنْشَأَ |
| To favor              | إِنْعَامًا | يُنْعِمُ | أَنْعَمَ |
| To spend              | إِنْفَاقًا | يُنْفِقُ | أَنْفَقَ |
| To deny/not recognize | إِنْكَارًا | يُنْكِرُ | أَنْكَرَ |
| To destroy            | إِهْلَاقًا | يُهْلِكُ | أَهْلَكَ |
| To complete           | إِكْمَالًا | يُكْمِلُ | أَكْمَلَ |
| To impress            | إِعْجَابًا | يُعْجِبُ | أَعْجَبَ |
| To honour             | إِكْرَامًا | يُكْرِمُ | أَكْرَمَ |
| To feed               | إِطْعَامًا | يُطْعِمُ | أَطْعَمَ |



|             |            |          |          |
|-------------|------------|----------|----------|
| To prepare  | إِعْتَادًا | يُعْتَدُ | أَعْتَدَ |
| To announce | إِعْلَانًا | يُعْلِنُ | أَعْلَنَ |

## تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ - Family 5

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Isim Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَفَعَّلٌ                      | تَفَعُّلاً      | يَتَفَعَّلُ                | تَفَعَّلَ               |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَفَعَّلٌ                      | تَفَعُّلاً      | يُتَفَعَّلُ                | تُفَعِّلُ               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)     | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُتَفَعَّلٌ                      | لا تَتَفَعَّلُ  |                            | تَفَعَّلْ               |

| Meaning              | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|----------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To reflect/ponder    | تَفَكُّرًا | يَتَفَكَّرُ   | تَفَكَّرَ  |
| To remember/pay heed | تَذَكُّرًا | يَتَذَكَّرُ   | تَذَكَّرَ  |
| To become clear      | تَبَيُّنًا | يَتَبَيَّنُ   | تَبَيَّنَ  |
| To wait and watch    | تَرْبُّصًا | يَتَرَبَّصُ   | تَرَبَّصَ  |
| To learn             | تَعَلُّمًا | يَتَعَلَّمُ   | تَعَلَّمَ  |
| To speak/talk        | تَكَلُّمًا | يَتَكَلَّمُ   | تَكَلَّمَ  |
| To place trust       | تَوَكُّلًا | يَتَوَكَّلُ   | تَوَكَّلَ  |
| To accept            | تَقَبُّلًا | يَتَقَبَّلُ   | تَقَبَّلَ  |
| To become separate   | تَفَرُّقًا | يَتَفَرَّقُ   | تَفَرَّقَ  |
| To come down         | تَنْزُلًا  | يَتَنَزَّلُ   | تَنَزَّلَ  |
| To purify            | تَطَهُّرًا | يَتَطَهَّرُ   | تَطَهَّرَ  |
| To be arrogant       | تَكَبُّرًا | يَتَكَبَّرُ   | تَكَبَّرَ  |

## تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَفَاعِلٌ                     | تَفَاعُلًا      | يَتَفَاعَلُ                | تَفَاعَلَ               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَفَاعَلٌ                     | تَفَاعُلًا      | يُتَفَاعَلُ                | تُفَاعِلُ               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُتَفَاعَلٌ                     | لَا تَتَفَاعَلُ |                            | تَفَاعَلْ               |

| Meaning             | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To be blessed       | تَبَارُكًا | يَتَبَارَكُ   | تَبَارَكَ  |
| To face each other  | تَقَابُلًا | يَتَقَابَلُ   | تَقَابَلَ  |
| To show outwardly   | تَظَاهُرًا | يَتَظَاهَرُ   | تَظَاهَرَ  |
| To argue            | تَخَاصُمًا | يَتَخَاصِمُ   | تَخَاصَمَ  |
| To dispute/disagree | تَنَازُعًا | يَتَنَازَعُ   | تَنَازَعَ  |

## Family 7 - **إِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ**

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنْفَعِلٌ                      | إِنْفِعَالًا | يَنْفَعِلُ                 | إِنْفَعَلَ              |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A          | N/A                        | N/A                     |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |              | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُنْفَعَلٌ                      |              | لَا تَنْفَعِلُ             | إِنْفَعِلْ              |

| Meaning                  | Masdar       | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|
| To turn around/retreat   | إِنْقِلَابًا | يَنْقَلِبُ    | إِنْقَلَبَ |
| To gush out              | إِنْبِجَاسًا | يَنْبَجِسُ    | إِنْبَجَسَ |
| To be dispatched         | إِنْبِعَاثًا | يَنْبَعِثُ    | إِنْبَعَثَ |
| To be split              | إِنْفِطَارًا | يَنْفَطِرُ    | إِنْفَطَرَ |
| To be free               | إِنْطِلَاقًا | يَنْطَلِقُ    | إِنْطَلَقَ |
| To be turned<br>To leave | إِنْصِرَافًا | يَنْصَرِفُ    | إِنْصَرَفَ |
| To burst forth           | إِنْفِجَارًا | يَنْفَجِرُ    | إِنْفَجَرَ |
| To pour                  | إِنْهَمَارًا | يَنْهَمِرُ    | إِنْهَمَرَ |

## إِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ - Family 8

For memorization the **ل ف ع** Root Letters can be used

| Isim Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|----------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْتَعِلٌ                       | إِفْتِعَالًا | يَفْتَعِلُ                 | إِفْتَعَلَ              |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْتَعَلٌ                       | إِفْتِعَالًا | يُفْتَعَلُ                 | أُفْتَعِلَ              |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)     |              | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفْتَعَلٌ                       |              | لَا تَفْتَعِلُ             | إِفْتَعِلْ              |



| Meaning             | Masdar       | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|
| To differ           | اِخْتِلَافًا | يَخْتَلِفُ    | اِخْتَلَفَ |
| To come closer      | اِقْتِرَابًا | يَقْتَرِبُ    | اِقْتَرَبَ |
| To gather/meet      | اجْتِمَاعًا  | يَجْتَمِعُ    | اجْتَمَعَ  |
| To listen carefully | اِسْتِمَاعًا | يَسْتَمِعُ    | اِسْتَمَعَ |
| To wait             | اِنْتِظَارًا | يَنْتَظِرُ    | اِنْتَظَرَ |
| To dispute          | اِخْتِصَامًا | يَخْتَصِمُ    | اِخْتَصَمَ |
| To earn             | اِكْتِسَابًا | يَكْتَسِبُ    | اِكْتَسَبَ |
| To spread           | اِنْتِشَارًا | يَنْتَشِرُ    | اِنْتَشَرَ |
| To avoid            | اِجْتِنَابًا | يَجْتَنِبُ    | اِجْتَنَبَ |
| To fight each other | اِقْتِتَالًا | يَقْتَتِلُ    | اِقْتَتَلَ |

## Family 9 - اِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l                         | Past Tense Fi'l                   |
|---------------------------------|--------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| مُفْعَلُّ                       | اِفْعِلَالًا | يَفْعَلُّ                                  | اِفْعَلَّ                         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                 | Passive Past Tense Fi'l           |
| N/A                             | N/A          | N/A  | N/A                               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |              | Forbidding Form                            | Command Form                      |
| مُفْعَلُّ                       |              | لا تَفْعَلَّ<br>لا تَفْعَلْ<br>لا تَفْعَلِ | اِفْعَلَّ<br>اِفْعَلْ<br>اِفْعَلِ |

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|

| Meaning          | Masdar       | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|
| To become black  | إِسْوَدَادًا | يَسْوَدُّ     | إِسْوَدَّ  |
| To become white  | إِبْيَاضًا   | يَبْيِضُ      | إِبْيَضَّ  |
| To become yellow | إِصْفِرَارًا | يَصْفَرُّ     | إِصْفَرَّ  |
| To become green  | إِخْضِرَارًا | يَخْضَرُّ     | إِخْضَرَ   |

## إِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ - Family 10

For memorization the **ل ف ع** Root Letters can be used

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar         | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَفْعِلٌ                    | إِسْتِفْعَالًا | يَسْتَفْعِلُ               | إِسْتَفْعَلَ            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar         | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسْتَفْعَلٌ                    | إِسْتِفْعَالًا | يُسْتَفْعَلُ               | أُسْتَفْعِلَ            |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُسْتَفْعَلٌ                    |                | لَا تَسْتَفْعِلُ           | إِسْتَفْعِلْ            |

| Meaning              | Masdar         | Present Tense | Past Tense   |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|
| To seek to hasten    | إِسْتِعْجَالًا | يَسْتَعِجِلُ  | إِسْتَعَجَلَ |
| To seek forgiveness  | إِسْتِغْفَارًا | يَسْتَغْفِرُ  | إِسْتَغْفَرَ |
| To behave arrogantly | إِسْتِكْبَارًا | يَسْتَكْبِرُ  | إِسْتَكْبَرَ |
| To deem weak/oppress | إِسْتِضْعَافًا | يَسْتَضْعِفُ  | إِسْتَضْعَفَ |

## Big Families – Irregular Verbs

### Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

### Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

| Meaning                  | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To appoint a time        | تَأْجِيلًا | يُؤَجِّلُ     | أَجَّلَ    |
| To help                  | تَأْيِيدًا | يُؤَيِّدُ     | أَيَّدَ    |
| To provide accommodation | تَبْوِيئًا | يُبَوِّئُ     | بَوَّأَ    |
| To inform                | تَنْبِيئًا | يُنَبِّئُ     | نَبَّأَ    |

## مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is ي or و

| Meaning                  | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To make easy             | تَيْسِيرًا | يُيسِّرُ      | يَسَّرَ    |
| To respect               | تَوْقِيرًا | يُوقِّرُ      | وَقَّرَ    |
| To provide accommodation | تَبْوِيًّا | يُبَوِّئُ     | بَوَّأَ    |

## أجوف - Ajwafun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي or و

| Meaning     | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To clarify  | تَبْيِينٌ | يُبَيِّنُ     | بَيَّنَ    |
| To beautify | تَرْيِينٌ | يُرَيِّنُ     | رَيَّنَ    |

## ناقص - Naqisun

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَعِّع                        | تَفْعِيَّة | يُفَعِّعُ                  | فَعَّعَ                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَعِّعٌ                       | تَفْعِيَّة | يُفَعِّعُ                  | فُعِّعَ                 |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |



|           |           |       |
|-----------|-----------|-------|
| مُفَعِّىً | لا تَفْعُ | فَعَّ |
|-----------|-----------|-------|

| Meaning        | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|----------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To save        | تَنْجِيَةٌ | يُنَجِّى      | نَجَّى     |
| To name        | تَسْمِيَةٌ | يُسَمِّى      | سَمَّى     |
| To reward/give | تَلْقِيَةٌ | يُلْقِي       | لَقَّى     |
| To purify      | تَزْكِيَةٌ | يُزَكِّى      | زَكَّى     |

### لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are ي or و

| Meaning                      | Masdar      | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------------------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| To command                   | تَوْصِيَّةٌ | يُوصِّي       | وَصَّى     |
| To turn away                 | تَوَلَّى    | يُؤَلِّي      | وَلَّى     |
| To fulfill<br>To pay in full | تَوْفِيَّةٌ | يُؤَفِّي      | وَفَّى     |

### لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafefun Makrunun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

| Meaning                     | Masdar      | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-----------------------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| To greet                    | تَحِيَّةٌ   | يُحَيِّي      | حَيَّى     |
| To make equal<br>To fashion | تَسْوِيَّةٌ | يُسَوِّي      | سَوَّى     |

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

| Meaning    | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To lighten | تَخْفِيفًا | يُخَفِّفُ     | خَفَّفَ    |

## فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ - Family 3

### مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

1st Root Letter is Hamza ء

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l                   |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| مُؤَاعِلٌ                       | ءِ عَالًا<br>مُؤَاعَلَةٌ | يُؤَاعِلُ                  | ءَاعَلَ<br>or written as<br>آعَلَ |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l           |
| مُؤَاعِلٌ                       | ءِ عَالًا<br>مُؤَاعَلَةٌ | يُؤَاعَلُ                  | أُؤَاعِلَ                         |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |                          | Forbidding Form            | Command Form                      |

|           |               |         |
|-----------|---------------|---------|
| مُؤَاعَلٌ | لَا تُؤَاعِلُ | ءَاعِلٌ |
|-----------|---------------|---------|

| Meaning  | Masdar                  | Present Tense | Past Tense         |
|----------|-------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| To seize | إِخَاذًا<br>مُؤَاخَذَةً | يُؤَاخِذُ     | ءَاخَذَ /<br>آخَذَ |

### مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is ي or و

| Meaning             | Masdar                  | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---------------|------------|
| To exchange pledges | وِعَادًا<br>مُؤَاعَدَةً | يُؤَاعِدُ     | وَاعَدَ    |

## أَجَوْفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

| Meaning           | Masdar                  | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---------------|------------|
| To converse       | حِوَارًا<br>مُحَاوَرَةً | يُحَاوِرُ     | حَاوَرَ    |
| To overstep       | جِوَارًا<br>مُجَاوَرَةً | يُجَاوِرُ     | جَاوَرَ    |
| To pledge support | بِیَاعًا<br>مُبَايَعَةً | يُبَايِعُ     | بَايَعَ    |

## نَاقِصٌ - Naqisun

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَاعٍ                         | فِعَاءٌ<br>مُفَاعَاةٌ | يُفَاعِي                   | فَاعَى                  |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَاعِي                        | فِعَاءٌ<br>مُفَاعَاةٌ | يُفَاعَى                   | فُؤِعِيَ                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form       |                            | Command Form            |
| مُفَاعِي                        | لَا تُفَاعِ           |                            | فَاعِ                   |

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|

| Meaning       | Masdar                | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|------------|
| To call out   | نِدَاءٌ<br>مُنَادَاةٌ | يُنَادِي      | نَادَى     |
| To argue/deny | مِرَاءٌ<br>مُمَارَاةٌ | يُمَارِي      | مَارَى     |
| To meet       | لِقَاءٌ<br>مُلَاقَاةٌ | يُلَاقِي      | لَاقَى     |

لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafefun Mafrukun

When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are ي or و



| Meaning       | Masdar               | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------------|----------------------|---------------|------------|
| To sympathize | وِلَاءٌ<br>مَوْلَاةٌ | يُؤَالِي      | وَالَى     |

### لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar                | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُفَاوٍ           | فِوَاءٌ<br>مُفَاوَاةٌ | يُفَاوِي           | فَاوَى          |
| Ism Mafool (the)  | Masdar                | Passive Present    | Passive Past    |

| thing acted on)              |                       | Tense Fi'l      | Tense Fi'l   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مُفَاوًى                     | فِوَاءً<br>مُفَاوَاةً | يُفَاوًى        | فُؤَوِيَ     |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |                       | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
| مُفَاوًى                     |                       | لَا تُفَاوِ     | فَاوِ        |

| Meaning     | Masdar                | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-------------|-----------------------|---------------|------------|
| To equalize | سِوَاءً<br>مُسَاوَاةً | يُسَاوِي      | سَاوَى     |

## مُضَاعَفٌ - Moodaarefun

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفَاعِلٌ                       | فِلَالًا<br>مُفَالَّةً     | يُفَالُ                    | فَالَ                   |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَاعِلٌ                       | فِلَالًا<br>مُفَالَّةً     | يُفَالُ                    | فُؤِلَ                  |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form            |                            | Command Form            |
| مُفَاعِلٌ                       | لَا تُفَالُ<br>لَا تُفَالُ |                            | فَالَ<br>فَالَ          |

|  |         |              |  |
|--|---------|--------------|--|
|  | فَالِلٌ | لا تُفَالِلُ |  |
|--|---------|--------------|--|

| Meaning         | Masdar                 | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-----------------|------------------------|---------------|------------|
| To harm         | ضِرَارًا<br>مُضَارَّةً | يُضَارُّ      | ضَارَّ     |
| To dispute      | شِقَاقًا<br>مُشَاقَّةً | يُشَاقُّ      | شَاقَّ     |
| To argue/debate | حِجَاجًا<br>مُحَاجَّةً | يُحَاجُّ      | حَاجَّ     |
| To oppose       | حِدَادًا<br>مُحَادَّةً | يُحَادُّ      | حَادَّ     |

## أَفْعَلْ يُفْعِلُ - Family 4

### مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar    | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l                    |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| مُؤْعِلٌ                        | إِيعَالًا | يُؤْعِلُ                   | ءَاعَلَ<br>or written as<br>آَعَلَ |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar    | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l            |
| مُؤْعَلٌ                        | إِيعَالًا | يُؤْعَلُ                   | أُؤْعِلَ                           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |           | Forbidding Form            | Command Form                       |

|           |               |         |
|-----------|---------------|---------|
| مُؤَعِّلٌ | لَا تُؤَعِّلُ | ءَاعِلٌ |
|-----------|---------------|---------|

| Meaning     | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense         |
|-------------|-----------|---------------|--------------------|
| To prefer   | إِثَارًا  | يُؤَثِّرُ     | ءَاثَرَ /<br>آثَرَ |
| To believe  | إِيمَانًا | يُؤْمِنُ      | آمَنَ              |
| To perceive | إِنْسَاءً | يُؤْنِسُ      | آنَسَ              |
| To give     | إِيتَاءً  | يُؤْتِي       | آتَى               |
| To harm     | إِذَاءً   | يُؤْذِي       | آذَى               |

مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is و or ي

1st Root Letter is و

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar        | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُولِجٌ                         | إِيْلَاجًا    | يُؤَلِّجُ                  | أَوَّلَجَ               |
| The one who makes it enter      | To make enter | He is making it enter      | He made it enter        |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُولِجٌ                         | إِيْلَاجًا    | يُؤَلِّجُ                  | أُوِّلِجَ               |
| The thing which is entered      | To make enter | It is being entered into   | It was made to enter    |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |               | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُولِجٌ                         |               | لَا تُؤَلِّجُ              | أَوَّلِجْ               |

|                                   |                                 |                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Time and Place of making it enter | You (Male) don't make it enter! | You (Male) make it enter! |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|

1st Root Letter is ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُوقِنٌ                         | إِيقَانًا       | يُوقِنُ                    | أَيَّقَنَ               |
| The one who is certain          | To be certain   | He is certain              | He was certain          |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُوقِنٌ                         | إِيقَانًا       | يُوقِنُ                    | أُوقِنَ                 |
| The thing which is made certain | To be certain   | It is being made certain   | It was made certain     |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُوقِنٌ                         | لَا تُوقِنُ     |                            | أَيِّقِنْ               |



|                                 |                              |                        |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
|                                 |                              |                        |
| Time and Place of being certain | You (Male) don't be certain! | You (Male) be certain! |

| Meaning         | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-----------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To make inherit | إِيرَاثًا | يُورِثُ       | أُورِثَ    |
| To be fearful   | إِيجَاسًا | يُوجِسُ       | أُوجِسَ    |

أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is ي or و

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
|                   |        |                    |                 |

|                                 |                 |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْعِلٌ                        | إِفَالَةٌ       | يُفْعِلُ                   | أَفَالَ                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفَالٌ                         | إِفَالَةٌ       | يُفَالُ                    | أُفِيلَ                 |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form | Command Form               |                         |
| مُفَالٌ                         | لا تَفِلْ       | أَفِلْ                     |                         |

| Meaning          | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To make taste    | إِذَاقَةٌ | يُذِيقُ       | أَذَاقَ    |
| To intend        | إِرَادَةٌ | يُرِيدُ       | أَرَادَ    |
| To strike/befall | إِصَابَةٌ | يُصِيبُ       | أَصَابَ    |

|                         |           |         |         |
|-------------------------|-----------|---------|---------|
| To obey                 | إِطَاعَةٌ | يُطِيعُ | أَطَاعَ |
| To establish            | إِقَامَةٌ | يُقِيمُ | أَقَامَ |
| To make die             | إِمَاتَةٌ | يُمِيتُ | أَمَاتَ |
| To return               | إِعَادَةٌ | يُعِيدُ | أَعَادَ |
| To return in repentance | إِنَابَةٌ | يُنِيبُ | أَنَابَ |
| To reply                | إِجَابَةٌ | يُجِيبُ | أَجَابَ |
| To waste                | إِضَاعَةٌ | يُضِيعُ | أَضَاعَ |
| To humiliate            | إِهَانَةٌ | يُهِينُ | أَهَانَ |
| To surround             | إِحَاطَةٌ | يُحِيطُ | أَحَاطَ |

### ناقصٌ - Naqisun

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar    | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْعٍ                          | إِفْعَاءٌ | يُفْعِي                    | أَفْعَى                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar    | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْعًى                         | إِفْعَاءٌ | يُفْعَى                    | أُفْعِيَ                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |           | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفْعًى                         |           | لَا تُفْعِ                 | أَفْعِ                  |

| Meaning      | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To give life | إِحْيَاءٌ | يُحْيِي       | أَحْيَى    |

|                |           |         |         |
|----------------|-----------|---------|---------|
| To conceal     | إِخْفَاءٌ | يُخْفِي | أَخْفَى |
| To show        | إِرَاءَةٌ | يُرِي   | أَرَى   |
| To enrich      | إِغْنَاءٌ | يُغْنِي | أَغْنَى |
| To throw       | إِلْقَاءٌ | يُلْقِي | أَلْقَى |
| To save/rescue | إِنْجَاءٌ | يُنْجِي | أَنْجَى |
| To give        | إِيْتَاءٌ | يُؤْتِي | آتَى    |
| To harm        | إِيْذَاءٌ | يُؤْذِي | آذَى    |

### لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are **و** or **ي**

The 1<sup>st</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و**

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُوْعٍ                          | إِيعَاءٌ | يُوْعِي                    | أُوْعَى                 |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُوْعًى                         | إِيعَاءٌ | يُوْعَى                    | أُوْعِيَ                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |          | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُوْعًى                         |          | لَا تُوْعِ                 | أُوْعِ                  |

| Meaning | Masdar | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------|--------|---------------|------------|
|---------|--------|---------------|------------|

|                   |           |        |         |
|-------------------|-----------|--------|---------|
| To reveal/inspire | إِيْحَاءٌ | يُوحِي | أَوْحَى |
| To fulfill        | إِيْفَاءٌ | يُوفِي | أَوْفَى |
| To command        | إِيْصَاءٌ | يُوصِي | أَوْصَى |

### لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

### مُضَاعَفٌ - Moodaarefun

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                                   | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l                 |
|---------------------------------|--|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| مُفِلٌّ                         | إِفْلَآءٌ                                | يُفِلُّ                    | أَفْلَّ                         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                                   | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l         |
| مُفَلٌّ                         | إِفْلَآءٌ                                | يُفَلُّ                    | أُفِلَّ                         |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form                          |                            | Command Form                    |
| مُفَلٌّ                         | لا تُفِلُّ<br>لا تُفَلِّ<br>لا تُفِلِّلْ |                            | أَفِلَّ<br>أَفِلَّ<br>أَفِلِّلْ |



| Meaning                        | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To complete                    | إِثْمَامًا | يُتِمُّ       | أَتَمَّ    |
| To love                        | إِحْبَابًا | يُحِبُّ       | أَحَبَّ    |
| To make lawful/cause to settle | إِحْلَالًا | يُحِلُّ       | أَحَلَّ    |
| To conceal                     | إِسْرَارًا | يُسِرُّ       | أَسَرَّ    |
| To misguide                    | إِضْلَالًا | يُضِلُّ       | أَضَلَّ    |
| To prepare                     | إِعْدَادًا | يُعِدُّ       | أَعَدَّ    |
| To make slip                   | إِزْلَالًا | يُزِلُّ       | أَزَلَّ    |
| To help/supply<br>To extend    | إِمْدَادًا | يُمِدُّ       | أَمَدَّ    |

## تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ - Family 5

### مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

| Meaning             | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To settle in a home | تَبَوُّاءٌ | يَتَبَوَّاءُ  | تَبَوَّأَ  |
| To be late          | تَأَخَّرًا | يَتَأَخَّرُ   | تَأَخَّرَ  |

### مِثَالٌ - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is و or ي

| Meaning | Masdar | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------|--------|---------------|------------|
|---------|--------|---------------|------------|

|                         |            |             |           |
|-------------------------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| To face                 | تَوَجَّهَ  | يَتَوَجَّهُ | تَوَجَّهَ |
| To rely                 | تَوَكَّلَا | يَتَوَكَّلُ | تَوَكَّلَ |
| To make dry<br>ablution | تَيَمَّمَا | يَتَيَمَّمُ | تَيَمَّمَ |

### أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

| Meaning         | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-----------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To volunteer    | تَطَوُّعًا | يَتَطَوَّعُ   | تَطَوَّعَ  |
| To make up lies | تَقْوُلًا  | يَتَقَوَّلُ   | تَقَوَّلَ  |

## ناقص - Naqisun

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Isim Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَفَعٍّ                        | تَفَعُّيًا      | يَتَفَعَّى                 | تَفَعَّى                |
| Isim Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَفَعَّى                       | تَفَعُّيًا      | يُتَفَعَّى                 | تُفَعَّى                |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)     | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُتَفَعَّى                       | لا تَتَفَعَّ    |                            | تَفَعَّ                 |

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|

| Meaning                              | Masdar   | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------------------------------|----------|---------------|------------|
| To wished                            | تَمَنَّى | يَتَمَنَّى    | تَمَنَّى   |
| To purify oneself                    | تَزَكَّى | يَتَزَكَّى    | تَزَكَّى   |
| To come into contact                 | تَلَقَّى | يَتَلَقَّى    | تَلَقَّى   |
| To take pleasure<br>To be distracted | تَلَهَّى | يَتَلَهَّى    | تَلَهَّى   |

### لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

| Meaning                           | Masdar   | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-----------------------------------|----------|---------------|------------|
| To turn away<br>To befriend       | تَوَلَّى | يَتَوَلَّى    | تَوَلَّى   |
| To make die<br>To receive in full | تَوَفَّى | يَتَوَفَّى    | تَوَفَّى   |

### لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

### مُضَاعَفٌ - Moodaarefun

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

| Meaning                 | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-------------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To be split             | تَشَقُّقًا | يَتَشَقَّقُ   | تَشَقَّقَ  |
| To make dry<br>ablution | تَيَمُّمًا | يَتَيَمَّمُ   | تَيَمَّمَ  |

## تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

### مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

| Meaning           | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To ask each other | تَسَاءُلًا | يَتَسَاءَلُ   | تَسَاءَلَ  |

### مِثَالٌ - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is ي or و

### أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun



When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي

| Meaning      | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To cooperate | تَعَاوُنًا | يَتَعَاوَنُ   | تَعَاوَنَ  |

ناقصٌ - Naqisun

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُتَفَاعٍ         | تَفَاعِيًا | يَتَفَاعَى         | تَفَاعَى        |

| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَّفَاعِيٌّ                   | تَفَاعِيًّا     | يُتَّفَاعَى                | تُفْوَعِي               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form | Command Form               |                         |
| مُتَّفَاعِيٌّ                   | لَا تَتَّفَاعَ  | تَفَاعَ                    |                         |

| Meaning     | Masdar      | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| To withdraw | تَجَافِيًّا | يَتَجَافَى    | تَجَافَى   |
| To doubt    | تَمَارِيًّا | يَتَمَارَى    | تَمَارَى   |

لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafefun Mafrukun

When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

| Meaning         | Masdar     | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-----------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| To urge another | تَوَاصِيًا | يَتَوَاصَى    | تَوَاصَى   |

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ

When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar                                       | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l               |
|---------------------------------|--|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| مُتَفَالٌ                       | تَفَالًا                                     | يَتَفَالُ                  | تَفَالٌ                       |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar                                       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l       |
| مُتَفَالٌ                       | تَفَالًا                                     | يُتَفَالُ                  | تُفُولٌ                       |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form                              |                            | Command Form                  |
| مُتَفَالٌ                       | لا تَتَفَالُ<br>لا تَتَفَالُ<br>لا تَتَفَالُ |                            | تَفَالْ<br>تَفَالْ<br>تَفَالْ |

| Meaning  | Masdar  | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|----------|---------|---------------|------------|
| To touch | تَمَسَّ | يَتَمَسُّ     | تَمَسَّ    |

## Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

### Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

### Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

When 1st Root Letter is و or ي

### Ajwafun - أَجْوَفٌ

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar     | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنْفَالٌ                       | إِنْفِيلًا | يَنْفَالُ                  | إِنْفَالَ               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar     | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A        | N/A                        | N/A                     |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |            | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُنْفَالٌ                       |            | لَا تَنْفَلْ               | إِنْفَلْ                |

| Meaning          | Masdar       | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|
| To be demolished | إِنْهِيَارًا | يَنْهَارُ     | إِنْهَارَ  |

## ناقصٌ - Naqisun

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنْفَعٍ                        | إِنْفِعَاءٌ | يَنْفَعِي                  | إِنْفَعَى               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A         | N/A                        | N/A                     |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |             | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُنْفَعِي                       |             | لَا تَنْفَعِ               | إِنْفَعِ                |



|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|

| Meaning           | Masdar      | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-------------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| To be appropriate | إِنْبَغَاءٌ | يَنْبَغِي     | إِنْبَغَى  |
| To refrain/end    | إِنْتِهَاءٌ | يَنْتَهِي     | إِنْتَهَى  |

### لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are **و** or **ي**

### لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are **و** or **ي**

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُنْقَلٌ                        | إِنْفِلَآءٌ | يَنْقَلُ                   | إِنْقَلَ                |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| N/A                             | N/A         | N/A                        | N/A                     |

| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مُنْفَلٌ                     | لا تَنْفَلْ     | اِنْفَلْ     |
|                              | لا تَنْفَلْ     | اِنْفَلْ     |
|                              | لا تَنْفِلْ     | اِنْفِلْ     |

| Meaning       | Masdar       | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|------------|
| To be dropped | اِنْقِضَا    | يَنْقُضُ      | اِنْقَضَ   |
| To be split   | اِنْشِقَاقًا | يَنْشِقُ      | اِنْشَقَّ  |

## إِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ - Family 8

### مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

The 1st Root Letter is Hamza ء

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَّعِلٌ                       | إِتِّعَالًا | يُتَّعِلُ                  | إِتَّعَلَ               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَّعَلٌ                       | إِتِّعَالًا | يُتَّعَلُ                  | أُتِّعِلَ               |

| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مُتَّعِلٌ                    | لَا تَتَّعِلْ   | اتَّعِلْ     |

| Meaning            | Masdar      | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|--------------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| To take            | اِتِّخَاذًا | يَتَّخِذُ     | اِتَّخَذَ  |
| To follow          | اِتِّبَاءً  | يَتَّبِعُ     | اِتَّبَعَ  |
| To gather and plot | اِتِّمَارًا | يَأْتِمِرُ    | اِئْتَمَرَ |

### مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is ي or و

Example of Family 8 – Using و ح د

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar      | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُتَّحِدٌ                       | اِتِّحَادًا | يَتَّحِدُ                  | اِتَّحَدَ               |
| The one who is uniting          | To unite    | He is uniting              | He united               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar      | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُتَّحَدٌ                       | اِتِّحَادًا | يُتَّحَدُ                  | اُتِّحِدَ               |
| The one who is united           | To unite    | He is being united         | He was united           |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |             | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُتَّحَدٌ                       |             | لَا تَتَّحِدُ              | اِتَّحِدْ               |
| Time and Place of uniting       |             | You (Male) don't unite!    | You (Male) unite!       |

| Meaning    | Masdar      | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| To lean on | إِتِّكَاءٌ  | يَتَّكِيُ     | إِتَّكَأَ  |
| To unite   | إِتِّحَادًا | يَتَّحِدُ     | إِتَّحَدَ  |

### أَجْوَافُن - أَجْوَفُ

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُفْتَالٌ         | إِفْتِيَالًا | يَفْتَالُ          | إِفْتَالَ       |

| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْتَالٌ                       | إِفْتِيَالًا | يُفْتَالُ                  | أُفْتِيلَ               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |              | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُفْتَالٌ                       |              | لَا تَفْتَلْ               | إِفْتَلْ                |

| Meaning   | Masdar       | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-----------|--------------|---------------|------------|
| To choose | إِخْتِيَارًا | يَخْتَارُ     | إِخْتَارَ  |

ناقص - Naqisun



When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is و or ي

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُفْتَعٍ                        | إِفْتِعَاءً     | يُفْتَعِي                  | إِفْتَعَى               |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُفْتَعًى                       | إِفْتِعَاءً     | يُفْتَعَى                  | أُفْتَعِيَ              |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُفْتَعًى                       | لَا تَفْتَعِ    |                            | إِفْتَعِ                |

| Meaning                     | Masdar      | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|-----------------------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| To meet                     | اِلْتِقَاءٌ | يَلْتَقِي     | اِلْتَقَى  |
| To forge a lie              | اِفْتِرَاءٌ | يَفْتَرِي     | اِفْتَرَى  |
| To be committed to guidance | اِهْتِدَاءٌ | يَهْتَدِي     | اِهْتَدَى  |
| To seek                     | اِبْتِغَاءٌ | يَبْتَغِي     | اِبْتَغَى  |
| To claim                    | اِدِّعَاءٌ  | يَدَّعِي      | اِدَّعَى   |
| To end                      | اِنْتِهَاءٌ | يَنْتَهِي     | اِنْتَهَى  |
| To test                     | اِبْتِلَاءٌ | يَبْتَلِي     | اِبْتَلَى  |
| To buy/sell                 | اِشْتِرَاءٌ | يَشْتَرِي     | اِشْتَرَى  |

### لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are **و** or **ي**

| Meaning                | Masdar    | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|------------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| To protect/be on guard | إِتْقَاءٌ | يَتَّقِي      | إِتَّقَى   |

### لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are ي or و

### مُضَاعَفٌ - Moodaarefun

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar       | Present Tense Fi'l                          | Past Tense Fi'l                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| مُفْتَلٌ                        | إِفْتِلَالًا | يُفْتَلُّ                                   | إِفْتُتِلَّ                          |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar       | Passive Present Tense Fi'l                  | Passive Past Tense Fi'l              |
| مُفْتَلٌ                        | إِفْتِلَالًا | يُفْتَلُّ                                   | أُفْتُتِلَّ                          |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |              | Forbidding Form                             | Command Form                         |
| مُفْتَلٌ                        |              | لا تَفْتَلْ<br>لا تَفُتَلْ<br>لا تَفْتَلِلْ | إِفْتُتِلْ<br>إِفُتَلْ<br>إِفْتَلِلْ |

| Meaning | Masdar | Present Tense | Past Tense |
|---------|--------|---------------|------------|
|---------|--------|---------------|------------|

|              |              |           |           |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| To turn back | إِرْتَدَادًا | يَرْتَدُّ | إِرْتَدَّ |
| To force     | إِضْطِرَارًا | يَضْطَرُّ | إِضْطَرَّ |
| To intensify | إِشْتِدَادًا | يَشْتَدُّ | إِشْتَدَّ |
| To shake     | إِهْتِرَازًا | يَهْتَرُّ | إِهْتَرَّ |

## Family 9 - اِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ

No irregular verbs

## Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

### مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

| Meaning            | Masdar         | Present Tense | Past Tense   |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|
| To mock            | اِسْتِهْزَاءٌ  | يَسْتَهْزِئُ  | اِسْتَهْزَأَ |
| To seek permission | اِسْتِئْذَانًا | يَسْتَأْذِنُ  | اِسْتَأْذَنَ |

### مِثَالٌ - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is ي or و

Example of Family 10 – Using وق د

| Ism Far'il (Doer)                 | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l             | Past Tense Fi'l          |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| مُسْتَوْقِدٌ                      | إِسْتِيقَادًا   | يَسْتَوْقِدُ                   | إِسْتَوْقَدَ             |
| The one who is lighting a fire    | To light a fire | He is lighting a fire          | He lit a fire            |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)   | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l     | Passive Past Tense Fi'l  |
| مُسْتَوْقَدٌ                      | إِسْتِيقَادًا   | يُسْتَوْقَدُ                   | أُسْتُوقِدَ              |
| The thing that is lit             | To light a fire | It is being lit                | It was lit               |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)      |                 | Forbidding Form                | Command Form             |
| مُسْتَوْقَدٌ                      |                 | لَا تَسْتَوْقِدُ               | إِسْتَوْقِدْ             |
| Time and Place of lighting a fire |                 | You (Male) don't light a fire! | You (Male) light a fire! |



| Meaning                | Masdar         | Present Tense | Past Tense   |
|------------------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|
| To be certain          | إِسْتَيْقَانًا | يَسْتَيْقِنُ  | إِسْتَيْقَنَ |
| To try to light a fire | إِسْتِيقَادًا  | يَسْتَوْقِدُ  | إِسْتَوْقَدَ |

### أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 2<sup>nd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer) | Masdar        | Present Tense Fi'l | Past Tense Fi'l |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| مُسْتَفِيلٌ       | إِسْتِفَالَةٌ | يَسْتَفِيلُ        | إِسْتَفَالَ     |

|                                 |               |                            |                         |
|---------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                 |               |                            |                         |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسْتَقَالٌ                     | إِسْتِقَالَةٌ | يُسْتَقَالُ                | أُسْتُفِيلَ             |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    |               | Forbidding Form            | Command Form            |
| مُسْتَقَالٌ                     |               | لَا تَسْتَفِلْ             | إِسْتَفِلْ              |

| Meaning                   | Masdar        | Present Tense | Past Tense  |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| To respond                | إِسْتِجَابَةٌ | يَسْتَجِيبُ   | إِسْتَجَابَ |
| To be able                | إِسْتِطَاعَةٌ | يَسْتَطِيعُ   | إِسْتَطَاعَ |
| To establish/act straight | إِسْتِقَامَةٌ | يَسْتَقِيمُ   | إِسْتَقَامَ |
| To seek protection        | إِسْتِعَاذَةٌ | يَسْتَعِذُّ   | إِسْتَعَاذَ |

|               |               |             |             |
|---------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| To seek help  | إِسْتَعَانَةً | يَسْتَعِينُ | إِسْتَعَانَ |
| To seek water | إِسْتِغَاثَةً | يَسْتَغِيثُ | إِسْتَغَاثَ |

### ناقص - Naqisun

When 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar        | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَفْعٍ                      | إِسْتِفْعَاءً | يَسْتَفْعِي                | إِسْتَفْعَى             |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar        | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |

|                              |               |                 |              |
|------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| مُسْتَفْعِي                  | إِسْتِفْعَاءً | يُسْتَفْعَى     | أُسْتُفْعِي  |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action) |               | Forbidding Form | Command Form |
| مُسْتَفْعِي                  |               | لَا تَسْتَفْعِ  | إِسْتَفْعِ   |

| Meaning         | Masdar        | Present Tense | Past Tense  |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| To rise         | إِسْتِعْلَاءً | يَسْتَعْلِي   | إِسْتَعْلَى |
| To seek counsel | إِسْتِثْقَاءً | يَسْتَثْقِي   | إِسْتَثَقَى |
| To seek drink   | إِسْتِسْقَاءً | يَسْتَسْقِي   | إِسْتَسَقَى |
| To hide         | إِسْتِخْفَاءً | يَسْتَخْفِي   | إِسْتَخْفَى |

لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ - Lafefun Mafrukun

When 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

| Meaning             | Masdar       | Present Tense | Past Tense  |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| To demand one's due | إِسْتِيفَاءٌ | يَسْتَوْفِي   | إِسْتَوْفَى |

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

When 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are و or ي

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

When the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are the same

The 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

| Ism Far'il (Doer)               | Masdar          | Present Tense Fi'l         | Past Tense Fi'l         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| مُسْتَفِلٌّ                     | إِسْتِفْلًا     | يُسْتَفِلُّ                | إِسْتَفَلَ              |
| Ism Mafool (the thing acted on) | Masdar          | Passive Present Tense Fi'l | Passive Past Tense Fi'l |
| مُسْتَفَلٌّ                     | إِسْتِفْلًا     | يُسْتَفَلُّ                | أُسْتَفِلَّ             |
| Zharf (Place/Time of Action)    | Forbidding Form |                            | Command Form            |
| مُسْتَفَلٌّ                     | لا تَسْتَفِلَّ  |                            | إِسْتَفِلَّ             |
|                                 | لا تَسْتَفِلْ   |                            | إِسْتَفِلْ              |
|                                 | لا تَسْتَفِلْهُ |                            | إِسْتَفِلْهُ            |

| Meaning          | Masdar       | Present Tense | Past Tense  |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| To cause to slip | إِسْتِزْلَاً | يَسْتِزِلُ    | إِسْتَزَلَ  |
| To scorn         | إِسْتِخْفَاً | يَسْتَخِفُّ   | إِسْتَخَفَّ |

## Verbs and Prepositions

Some prepositions (Harf) that come with certain Fi'ls/Verbs can slightly change the meaning

| Fi'l   | Meaning     | Fi'l + Preposition | Meaning                 |
|--------|-------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| ضَرَبَ | To strike   | فِي + ضَرَبَ       | To go forth in the land |
| ضَرَبَ | To strike   | لِ + ضَرَبَ        | To mention something    |
| ضَرَبَ | To strike   | عَلَى + ضَرَبَ     | To be overshadowed      |
| ضَرَبَ | To strike   | مَثَلًا + ضَرَبَ   | To give an example      |
| قَضَى  | To decree   | بَيْنَ + قَضَى     | To judge between        |
| قَضَى  | To decree   | عَلَى + قَضَى      | To kill                 |
| وَضَعَ | To put down | عَنْ + قَضَى       | To remove               |
| أَتَى  | To come     | بِ + أَتَى         | To bring                |



|        |               |               |                      |
|--------|---------------|---------------|----------------------|
| بَغَى  | To seek       | عَلَى + بَغَى | To oppress           |
| تَابَ  | To repent     | عَلَى + تَابَ | To accept repentance |
| جَاءَ  | To come       | بِ + جَاءَ    | To bring             |
| ذَهَبَ | To go         | بِ + ذَهَبَ   | To take away         |
| ذَهَبَ | To go         | عَنْ + ذَهَبَ | To remove from       |
| رَضِيَ | To be contend | عَنْ + رَضِيَ | To be pleased with   |

## Incomplete Verbs which make Noun Sentences

### Common Incomplete Verbs (Fi'l Naqis)

| Incomplete Verb   | Meaning  |
|---|--|
| <p>Past Tense: كَانَ</p> <p>Present/Future Tense: يَكُونُ</p>     | <p>It was</p> <p>With a Present Tense Fi'l – indicates a continuous past tense action</p> <p>With a Past Tense Fi'l – indicates a single past event</p> <p>It is</p> |
| <p>Past Tense: أَصْبَحَ</p> <p>Present/Future Tense: يُصْبِحُ</p> | <p>To become</p> <p>Became</p>   |
| <p>Past Tense: ظَلَّ</p> <p>Present/Future Tense: يَظَلُّ</p>     | <p>He/it Remained</p> <p>He/it Remains</p>   |
| <p>Past Tense: مَا زَالَ</p>                                      | <p>He/It continued – (if the مَا is removed it means “to desist” but with the مَا it means “to not desist” which means “to continue”)</p>                            |

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Present/Future Tense: مَا يَزَالُ | He/It continues  |
| Past Tense: مَا دَامَ             | As long as (Past Tense translated in the Present Tense)          |
| Past Tense: لَيْسَ                | He is not/it is not (Past Tense translated in the Present Tense) |

## Some Fi'l Shuruee

| Fi'l            | Meaning  |
|-----------------|--|
| طَفِقَ يَطْفِقُ | To begin quickly   |
| بَدَأَ يَبْدَأُ | To begin   |
| جَعَلَ يَجْعَلُ | To begin – when used as a Fi'l Shuruee<br>To make – when used normally       |
| أَخَذَ يَأْخُذُ | To begin – when used as a Fi'l Shuruee<br>To take/seize – when used normally |

## Some Fi'ls that use a Tamyeez

| Fi'l      | Meaning                          |
|-----------|----------------------------------|
| مَلَأَ    | To fill                          |
| زَادَ     | To increase something or someone |
| إِزْدَادَ | To increase oneself              |
| كَفَى     | To be sufficient                 |
| سَاءَ     | To be terrible                   |
| حَسُنَ    | To be good                       |

## **Conclusion**

By this point it is hoped that the two main aims of this book and curriculum which were discussed in the Introduction to this book have been achieved:

1. Learning the foundations of Arabic grammar so that one can easily recite the Holy Quran and read the Hadiths of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, in Arabic and with understanding, with the hope this leads to acting on these two sources of guidance.
2. Taking a first strong step in understanding Arabic grammar so that one can study Arabic texts, such as interpretations of the Holy Quran and the Hadiths of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him.

We highly recommend every student to continue reviewing the contents of this curriculum and to seek further Islamic knowledge with the sole intention

of increasing one's sincere obedience to Allah, the Exalted, which involves using the blessings one has been granted in ways pleasing to Allah, the Exalted, as outlined in the Holy Quran and the traditions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, so that they obtain peace of mind and success in both worlds. Chapter 16 An Nahl, verse 97:

*"Whoever does righteousness, whether male or female, while he is a believer - We will surely cause him to live a good life, and We will surely give them their reward [in the Hereafter] according to the best of what they used to do."*

One must respect their teachers but their loyalty must always be to Allah, the Exalted, and not to their teachers or school of thought. Therefore, they must accept and act on whatever they learn from the Holy Quran and the traditions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, irrespective of if it lines up with their teacher's or their school of thought's opinion or not. Chapter 39 Az Zumar, verse 11:

*"Say, "Indeed, I have been commanded to worship Allāh, [being] sincere to Him in religion.""*

## Over 400 Free eBooks on Good Character

Over 400 Free eBooks: <https://shaykhpod.com/books/>

Backup Sites for eBooks: <https://shaykhpodbooks.wordpress.com/books/>

<https://shaykhpodbooks.wixsite.com/books>

<https://archive.org/details/@shaykhpod>

PDFs of All English Books & Backup Links/ جميع الكتب / সব বই / تمام كتابين /  
Semua Buku / Todos Los Libros:

<https://shaykhpod.com/wp-content/uploads/2024/08/all-master-link.pdf>

<https://spurdu.wordpress.com/wp-content/uploads/2024/08/all-master-link.pdf>

[https://c6f97428-aa9d-46f8-8352-c67abd2419bf.usrfiles.com/ugd/c6f974\\_a42ab24eb8c7405286bff57a0a670049.pdf](https://c6f97428-aa9d-46f8-8352-c67abd2419bf.usrfiles.com/ugd/c6f974_a42ab24eb8c7405286bff57a0a670049.pdf)

<https://archive.org/download/ShaykhPod-books/all-master-link.pdf>



## Other ShaykhPod Media

AudioBooks: <https://shaykhpod.com/books/#audio>

Daily Blogs: <https://shaykhpod.com/blogs/>

Pics: <https://shaykhpod.com/pics/>

General Podcasts: <https://shaykhpod.com/general-podcasts/>

PodWoman: <https://shaykhpod.com/podwoman/>

PodKid: <https://shaykhpod.com/podkid/>

Urdu Podcasts: <https://shaykhpod.com/urdu-podcasts/>

Live Podcasts: <https://shaykhpod.com/live/>

Anonymously Follow WhatsApp Channel for Daily Blogs, eBooks, Pics and Podcasts:

<https://whatsapp.com/channel/0029VaDDhdwJ93wYa8dgJY1t>

Subscribe to Receive Daily Blogs & Updates Via Email:

<http://shaykhpod.com/subscribe>

